



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

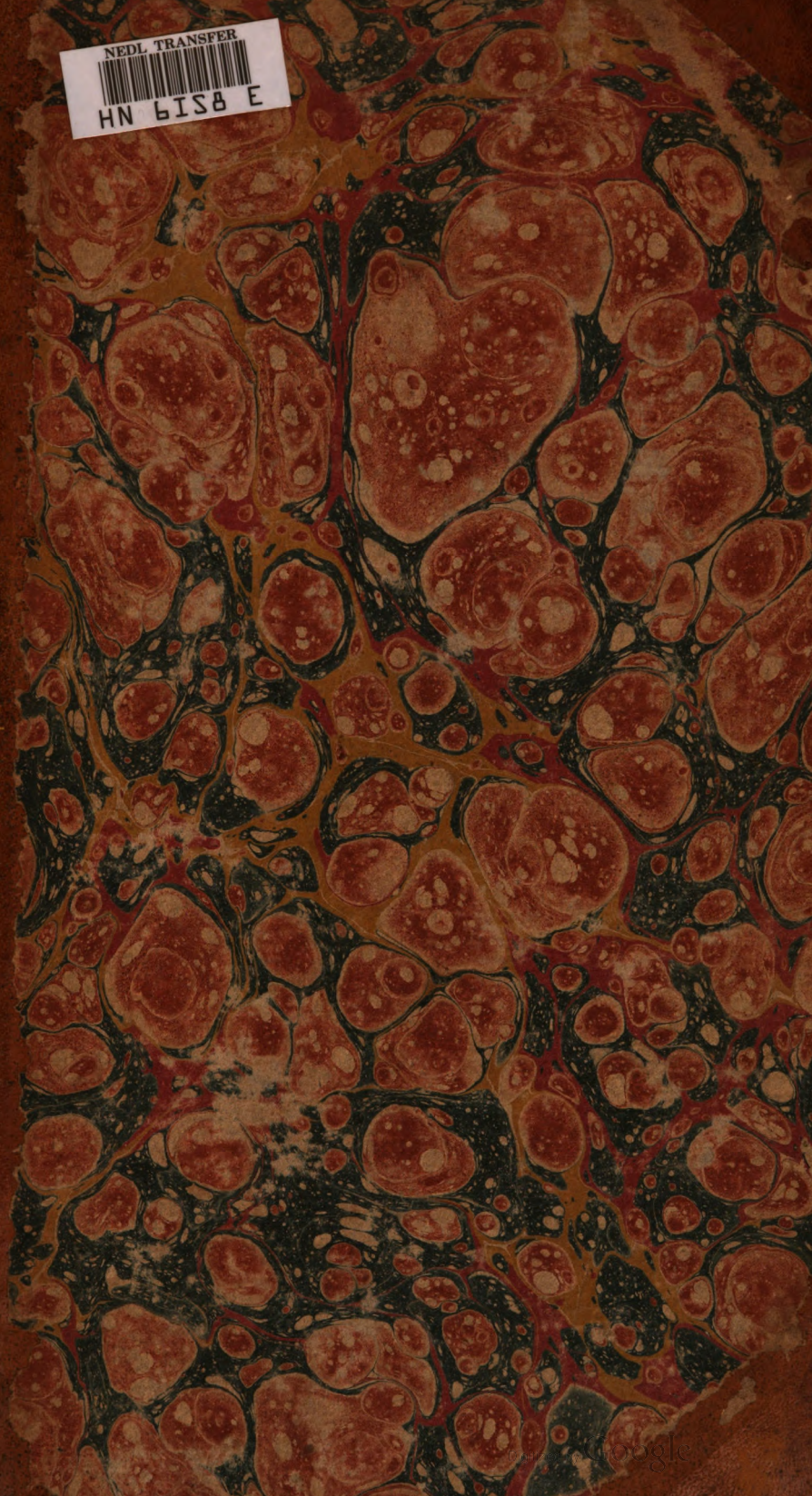
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NEDL TRANSFER
HN 6138 E



KF 8299





ADAM'S
LATIN GRAMMAR;
SIMPLIFIED,

BY MEANS OF AN
INTRODUCTION
DESIGNED TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF
Latin Grammar,

BY SPREADING BEFORE THE STUDENT

IN THE COMPASS OF A FEW PAGES, WHAT IS MOST ESSENTIALLY NECESSARY TO BE
REMEMBERED :

WITH APPROPRIATE EXERCISES,
TO IMPRESS ON THE MEMORY THE DECLENSIONS AND INFLECTIONS
OF THE
PARTS OF SPEECH.
AND
TO EXEMPLIFY AND ILLUSTRATE
THE
RULES OF SYNTAX.

BY ALLEN FISK.

_____ irritant animos _____
_____ quæ sunt oculis subjecta fidelibus, et quæ
Ipse sibi tradit spectator. Hor.

NEW-YORK:
PUBLISHED AND SOLD BY CHARLES STARR:
SOLD ALSO BY THE PRINCIPAL BOOKSELLERS THROUGHOUT
THE UNITED STATES.

STEREOTYPED BY A. CHANDLER.

D. Fanshaw, Printer, 20 Sloté-Lane.

.....
1822.



SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW-YORK, ss.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the 12th day of April, in the forty-sixth year of the (L. S.) Independence of the United States of America, CHARLES STARR, of the said District, hath deposited in this office the title of a Book, the right whereof he claims as proprietor, in the words following, to wit:

Adam's Latin Grammar ; Simplified, by means of an Introduction : designed to facilitate the study of Latin Grammar, by spreading before the student, in the compass of a few pages, what is most essentially necessary to be remembered : with appropriate exercises to impress on the memory the declensions and inflections of the Parts of Speech, and to exemplify and illustrate the Rules of Syntax. By Allen Fisk.

———— irritant animos ————
 ———— quæ sunt oculis subjecta fidelibus, et quæ
 Ipse sibi tradit spectator. HOR.

In conformity to the Act of Congress of the United States, entitled "An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the time therein mentioned." And also to an Act, entitled "an Act, supplementary to an Act, entitled an Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

JAMES DILL,
 Clerk of the Southern District of New-York.

PREFACE.

THE Grammar of ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D. Rector of the High School in Edinburgh, first published in 1772, is too well known, and too generally approved, to need, at the present day, either advertisement or encomium. In 1799, it was adopted by the University at Cambridge, (Mass.) and publickly recommended to be used by those intended for that Seminary, "as a book singularly calculated for the improvement of students in the Latin Language." It has passed through numerous editions, both in Europe and in this country; and is, unquestionably, the most complete Grammar of the Latin tongue, especially in its Syntax, that has ever yet been published. The great variety of notes and observations annexed to the Rules, the frequent and comprehensive lists of exceptions, and the numerous explications of anomalous and intricate constructions, discover an intimate acquaintance with the Latin classics, and give a clue to the resolution of the most difficult passages.

But, as an elementary school-book, the Grammar of Dr. Adam has one fault; a fault, however, by no means peculiar, but common, it is believed, to all the Latin Grammars hitherto published. Its arrangement is better suited to a book of reference, for the use of those who have already studied the language, than for the inexperienced tyro, who knows nothing of the subject. The student is obliged to commit his whole book to memory, or at least the principal parts, Etymology and Syntax, before he understands a word of it. This, at best, is a most odious and disgusting task. To crowd the memory with page after page of unintelligible matter, to wade through a whole volume without any apparent design or utility, and be required to repeat a multitude of rules and definitions of no obvious meaning or application, blunts the curiosity of youth, disheartens their ambition, and not unfrequently leads to fatal discouragement. Nor are the difficulties of the student at an end when he has got through his Grammar. To prove his skill and try the fidelity of his memory, he is then set to parsing in promiscuous exercises, in long and intricate sentences, to resolve which requires a knowledge of the Grammar and of the idioms of the language, to be acquired only by practical illustration and patient research. However apt, therefore, he may have been in conning by rote, when the learner comes to apply the rules and definitions promiscuously, he finds himself in a labyrinth; his judgment is bewildered; his memory, in many instances, fails him; and thus he is often compelled to begin with his Grammar anew.

To remedy these inconveniences, to relieve the student from the irksome and unprofitable task of committing to memory what he does not understand, and to furnish easy exercises adapted to the illustration of the several parts of speech and rules of syntax, in progressive detail; presenting, at one view, the example of declension, the lesson for parsing, and the appropriate rules, to the eye of the student, have been the Compiler's aim in this publication. And these facilities he has endeavoured to afford with as little innovation upon the usual arrangement of the several parts of Grammar as was deemed consistent with the design of the undertaking, and the nature of the subject; thus attempting to render the book suitable for the young beginner, without rendering it inconvenient for the more advanced scholars. In conformity with these views, Dr. Adam's Grammar has, in general, been left unaltered; and an introduction, containing examples of the various declensions and conjugations of the Parts of Speech, and the Rules of Syntax, with appropriate exercises successively adapted to those rules and examples, has been prefixed to his work. In a few instances, indeed, the order and phraseology of the rules have been altered, with a view to render them more convenient for parsing, and more conformable with the arrangement of the introduction; and that part of Dr. Adam's work, relating exclusively to English Grammar, has been entirely omitted, as being superseded by later and more popular treatises; and, (if it were not) as being generally useless to scholars, in this country at least, on account of their having studied English Grammar before they commence the study of the Latin.

This work, in its present arrangement, will be found to combine the following advantages :

1. Exclusive of the Introduction, and considered merely as a book of reference, it is indisputably superior to any preceding edition of Adam's Latin Grammar, on account of its typographical neatness and accuracy. The Publisher, Mr. STARR, has spared neither pains nor expense to render the work correct, and worthy of general patronage.

2. The Exercises and Excerpta Latine, in the Introduction, will supersede the necessity of purchasing, and putting into the hands of boys, larger and more expensive books. To the student the Exercises will serve as an introduction to the Grammar, and the Excerpta as an introduction to the classics. To render these the more valuable, examples of all the different kinds of verse have been selected from Horace, and the *scanning* marked according to the best authorities.

3. The Introduction will enable the student to commence his task with parsing, and thus lead him to understand the definitions of Etymology and the Rules of Syntax, previous to his committing them to memory. These parts of Grammar should always be studied simultaneously, because they mutually explain and illustrate each other ; and parsing, which exemplifies the meaning and application of the definitions and rules, is an exercise of the utmost importance to the pupil, and should accompany, *pari passu*, his progress through Etymology and Syntax. The declensions of Adjectives, Nouns, and Pronouns, the conjugation of Verbs, the nature and use of Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, are more easily learned and more readily understood by parsing, than by committing to memory the various rules and explications of the Parts of Speech. The best method, for instance, to make the pupil understand, and consequently remember, the declensions of Adjectives and Substantives, is to place before him an example of those declensions, and set him to parsing Adjectives and Substantives. He will then readily see the distinctive properties of these two parts of speech, and also the meaning of the rule, "Adjectives agree with their Substantives in number, case, and gender." It is *parsing*, therefore, which illustrates Etymology and Syntax, and which indelibly impresses these two parts of Grammar on the memory of the pupil ; and, consequently, the sooner he begins parsing, the easier will his task be, and the more profitable his labours.

4. By means of the Introduction, not only the understanding, but the *eye* also, is rendered subservient to the memory. It is undoubtedly true, that we commit to memory with more facility, and retain, for a greater length of time, what we understand, than what we do not understand ; and it is equally true, that impressions received through the eye are more vivid and permanent than any others.

—— irritant animos ——
—— quæ sunt oculis subjecta fidelibus, et quæ
Ipse sibi teadit spectator. HORACE.

"Those things forcibly affect the mind which are submitted to the faithful eyes, and which the spectator delivers to, or teaches himself." This doctrine will hardly be questioned by any one who has ever studied geography, and observed how much brighter and more durable are the impressions of what he learned from the map, than of what he learned from the book. The comparative size, course, situation, and importance of the principal rivers, lakes, mountains, and cities, are remembered, and easily called to mind long after the description and account of those rivers, lakes, mountains, and cities are totally obliterated from the memory. To take advantage of this hint, and yet not render the size of the book unwieldy, the octavo form has been preferred, as combining the greatest utility with the least inconvenience. Page 10th presents a *map* of all the regular declensions of Substantives, and page 11th of the declension and comparison of Adjectives. The declensions of Pronouns, and the conjugations of Verbs, are exhibited in the same manner in subsequent pages. All the principal rules are placed on the margin, in a body by themselves ; and, after they have been once exhibited in detached views, they are repeatedly exhibited at a single view, in order to make the impression more distinct and connected.

ADVERTISEMENT.

IN September last, I announced to the publick my expectation of publishing, in November following, a new work, entitled "Adam's Latin Grammar Simplified, by Allen Fisk, Esq." but, owing to a combination of unforeseen circumstances, its publication has been unavoidably delayed until the present time, to the no small detriment of my reputation for punctuality, and to the disappointment and vexation of the numerous applicants for the work; who, being acquainted with the important improvements making in the various departments of the arts and sciences, and with their advance, consequent upon such improvements, towards perfection, are anxious to avail themselves of such helps as may be afforded in teaching youth the important science of Latin Grammar.

In presenting the "Latin Grammar Simplified" to the world, after so long a delay in its publication, I owe it to my disappointed patrons, and to my own reputation as publisher, to mention some of the causes which have operated to effect this unhappy delay.

Owing to the carelessness or ignorance of printers and proof-readers, in copying, in each succeeding edition, the errors of its predecessor, and adding thereto a long catalogue of new ones, there could not be found a copy of Adam's Latin Grammar sufficiently correct to print from. It became necessary, therefore, to employ a person, (Mr. Fisk being out of the city,) of sufficient leisure and ability, to undertake its correction, in order to render it deserving of publick patronage, and a credit to myself as publisher. For this purpose, Mr. Joseph Osborn, of this city, a gentleman well known as combining in himself, with a cultivated classical education, the advantages of many years' experience in proof-reading, was engaged; and to him the publick, in a good degree, is indebted for a tolerably correct copy of a Latin Grammar. In addition to the delay occasioned by the want of this corrected copy of Adam's Latin Grammar, a still farther delay has been occasioned by sending the proof sheets, after being read and corrected by Mr. Osborn, to the author at Troy, to be read and revised by him, which was done in order to divest the work, if possible, of every error, even the most trifling. To secure for the succeeding editions the corrections thus obtained, by this immense labour, and at this great expense; and, in order to provide for the correction of any errors which may yet be discovered, without the possibility of creating new ones, it was found necessary to stereotype the work. These, with several other causes too numerous and trifling to mention, have combined to prevent the prompt publication of the work at the time proposed. With this development of the causes which have effected this unhappy delay, I trust that I shall be exempted from censure; and that, by possessing a Latin Grammar comparatively correct, and that can easily be read, instead of one so erroneously and slovenly printed, as to be scarcely legible to the young and vigorous eye, whose every nerve must be strained to its utmost powers, to store the mind with erroneous words and sentences, the publick will be amply remunerated for the heavy taxes which have unavoidably been levied on their patience.

How far the author may have succeeded in facilitating the attainment of the highly important and ornamental branch of a refined education, designed to be taught by the use of this work, and in rendering the study pleasing and interesting to the pupil, I am not prepared to say, never having witnessed it in operation; but, judging from the effects produced by the use of "Greenleaf's [*English*] Grammar Simplified," to which, in a considerable degree, it is conformed in its arrangement, I cannot but entertain very sanguine hopes of its ultimate success in the hands of judicious and able instructors. One thing, however, is certain; viz. that nothing will be lost by giving it a trial; for, should the introductory part fail of accomplishing the object contemplated by the author, the purchaser will still have by far the best copy of Adam's Latin Grammar,

(commencing at folio 67) extant; one that can be read with ease, and that is tolerably correct; which cannot be said of any other edition now offered to the publick.

In addition to the satisfaction to be enjoyed by possessing a well printed and correct copy of Adam's Latin Grammar, there is another advantage to be gained by the purchase of this edition, and that is on the score of economy. The numerous extracts from the Latin Classics will supersede the necessity of purchasing several books to be used for exercises, which will effect a very considerable saving of expense in the purchase of books.

Should the "Latin Grammar Simplified" prove successful in aiding and assisting the teacher in imparting, and the pupil in obtaining, a knowledge of the important science of which it treats, my satisfaction will not arise solely from the prospect of receiving a pecuniary compensation for my labour and expense, but it will be a source of gratification to reflect on my being, in any way, instrumental in accomplishing so desirable an object as that contemplated in the publication of this work: but, should my hopes and expectations prove abortive, by its failure of success, I shall console myself under the disappointment, and endeavour to bear my loss with a degree of cheerfulness, from the reflection, that its failure cannot be attributed to the want of exertion, on my part, to render it deserving of publick patronage, and that the discerning will know how to appreciate the well-meant services of a member of this enlightened republic, although the contemplated object should not be attained.

That this work should meet with the unqualified approbation of the whole community, especially as it is of American origin, is not at all to be expected; nor can it be supposed that open enemies will not be found. Fulton, and his apparatus for steam-boat navigation, have their enemies; and the same may be said of all the plans which have ever been divulged for the moral, intellectual, or political improvement of mankind, in all ages; particularly when such improvements are calculated to interfere with the interest of the individual whose prosperity depends on the destruction of such improvements.

With these few observations, which the long delay in the publication of this work, and its peculiar nature and importance seemed to require, the "Latin Grammar Simplified" is cheerfully submitted to an enlightened publick, for their approbation and patronage, or condemnation and rejection, by the

PUBLISHER.

New-York, 16th April, 1822.

Contents.

PART I.

Inflections of the Parts of Speech.

	Page		Page
Declension of Substantives	10	Second Conjugation, Active Voice	18
and Comparison of Adjectives	11	Passive Voice	19
of Pronouns	12	Third Conjugation, Active Voice	20
Conjugation of the Verb Sum	13	Passive Voice	21
of Regular Verbs	16—23	Fourth Conjugation, Active Voice	22
First Conjugation, Active Voice	16	Passive Voice	23
Passive Voice	17		

Rules and Exercises.

Rule 1, and Exercises	10, 11	Rules 31 to 54 inclusive, and Exercises	24, 25
Rules, from 2 to 6 inclusive, and Exercises 12, 13		55 to 69 inclusive, and Exercises	26, 27
7 to 30 inclusive, and Exercises 14, 15		Condensed Views of all the Rules	28—44
Exercises adapted to the Conj. of R. Verbs 16—23			

Excerpta Latine.

De Viris Illustribus Urbis Romæ	28—44	De Viris Julius Cæsar	36
Regulus	28	Cato Uticensis	36
Fabius Maximus	28	Cicero	38
Scipio Africanus	30	Cæsar Augustus	38—44
Scipio Nasica	32	Sallustii Catilina	44
Paulus Æmilius	32	E. Ciceronis Orationibus	45—60
Tiberius Gracchus and Caius		Ex Ovidii Operibus	51, 52
Gracchus	32	Virgillii Operibus	53—59
Lucius Lucullus	34	Horatii Operibus	59—65
Pompeius Magnus	34		

PART II.

1. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Of Letters	67	Of Diphthongs	67
Vowels	67	Syllables	68
Consonants	67	Words	68

2. ETYMOLOGY.

Of the Parts of Speech	68	Of Pronouns	95
Of Nouns or Substantives	69	Of Simple Pronouns	95
Declension of Nouns	69	Compound Pronouns	96
Gender of Nouns	70	Of Verbs	97
First Declension	72	Conjugation of Verbs	98
Second Declension	73	Formation of Verbs	100
Third Declension	74	Signification of the different Tenses	100
Fourth Declension	84	First Conjugation	102
Fifth Declension	85	Second Conjugation	103
Irregular Nouns	85	Third Conjugation	105
Variable Nouns	85	Fourth Conjugation	111
Defective Nouns	85	Deponent and Common Verbs	111
Redundant Nouns	88	Irregular Verbs	114
Division of Nouns according to their		Defective Verbs	117
signification and derivation	89	Impersonal Verbs	117
Of Adjectives	89	Redundant Verbs	118
Declension of Adjectives	90	Obsolete Conjugation	119
Numeral Adjectives	92	Derivation and Composition of Verbs	120
Comparison of Adjectives	94		

CONTENTS.

	Page		Page
Of Participles	120	Of Prepositions	124
Gerunds and Supines	121	Of Interjections	125
Of Adverbs	121	Of Conjunctions	125
Derivation, Comparison & Composition of do.	122		

3. SYNTAX.

Of Sentences, simple and compound	126	Of the construction of Conjunctions	140
Of Concord or Agreement	127	Of two or more nouns singular connected by a Conjunction	140
Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive	127	Of Conjunctions governing the subjunctive mood	141
of a Verb with a Nominative	127	Of Verbs governing one case	142
of a Relative with the Antecedent	128	the Accusative	142
Construction of Relatives	128	the Genitive	142
same Case after a Verb as before it	129	the Dative	143
Agreement of one Substantive with another	130	the Ablative	144
Of Government	130	the Accusative or Genitive	144
Government of Substantives	130	Of a Verb compounded with a Preposition	145
one Substantive governing another	130	Of the Construction of the Infinitive	145
latter of two Substantives	131	Accusative before the Infinitive	145
Adjectives taken as Substantives	131	Of the Construction of Participles	146
<i>Opus</i> and <i>Unus</i> signifying <i>need</i>	131	of Gerunds	146
Of the Government of Adjectives	132	of Supines	147
Adjectives governing the Genitive	132	of Circumstances	148
the Dative	133	Of Verbs governing two cases	149
the Ablative	134	the Accusative and Genitive	149
the Genitive or Ablative	134	the Accusative and Dative	150
Of the Government of Verbs	134	two Accusatives	150
Government of the Verb, Sum	134	the Accusative and Ablative	151
Sum, signifying possession, property, &c.	134	Of the Construction of Passive Verbs	151
taken for <i>Habeo</i>	135	of Impersonal Verbs	152
taken for <i>Offero</i>	135	of the Names of Places	153
Compounds of Sum	135	Of the Ablative Case Absolute	154
Of the Construction of Comparatives, when <i>quam</i> is omitted	135		
Construction of Adverbs	136		
Government of Adverbs	137		
Of the Construction of Prepositions	137		
Prepositions governing the Accusative	137		
governing the Ablative	138		
governing the Accusative or Ablative	139		
Of the Construction of Interjections	140		

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

Various Signification and Construction of Verbs	156
Figures of Syntax	166
Analysis and Translation	168
Different kinds of Style	169
Figures of Rhetoric	170

4. PROSODY.

Of the Quantity of Syllables	175	Of the Different kinds of Verse	183
of first and middle Syllables	176	Figures in Scanning	185
of Final Syllables	179	Different kinds of Poems	186
of Derivatives and Compounds	181	Combination of Verses in Poems	187
Of Accent	182	Of the different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan	187
Of Verse	182		
measuring Verses by Scanning	183	APPENDIX.	
		Punctuation, Capitals, &c.	189

TO INSTRUCTORS.

THE principal design of prefixing these introductory exercises to the Grammar is to relieve the student from the irksome and unprofitable task of committing to memory what he does not understand ; to impress the inflections of the parts of speech and the rules of syntax clearly and forcibly on his memory, by exhibiting them in condensed views ; and, by furnishing easy exercises adapted to those inflections and rules in detail, to facilitate the labour of translating and parsing.

The following plan of instruction is in conformity with this design.

Commence at page 10th, and read over the declensions of substantives and adjectives, explaining to the pupil the distinctive marks of the different declensions, and the manner in which an adjective agrees with a substantive. Then practise him a short time in translating and parsing a few of the examples under "Exercises" on page 10th, declining the adjective and substantive, first separately, and then conjointly. This will prepare him to understand, and consequently to commit to memory with facility and pleasure, the general rules relating to the declensions of substantives and adjectives, as contained in the grammar, commencing at page 69. By proceeding in this manner, illustrating each part of speech, and practising the student in parsing it, *before* he is called upon to commit to memory its Etymology and Syntax, his progress through the grammar will be rendered both pleasing and profitable. His task will be much lighter, and the impression on his memory more permanent, than if he had proceeded in the inverted order, committing what he could not understand, and deferring the exercise of parsing till he had gone through the grammar.

RULE.

1.

The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.

• EXERCISES.

Bona Musa. Bonus puer. Bonum donum. Unus liber. Felix dominus. Lenis sermo. Lenior puer. Tenerum caput. Pulcher currus. Pulchra res. Pulchrum cornu. Felix facies. Felix iter. Tenerum cornu. Tenera res. Bonus sermo. Bona res. Bonum sedile. Lenis dominus. Lene iter. Pulcher liber. Pulchra facies. Pulchrum caput. Lenior dominus. Lenior res. Lenius iter. Unus puer. Una rupe. Unum donum. Duo libri. Dux Musæ. Duo cornua. Tres libri. Tres sermones. Tria capita. Tres rupes. Unus lapis. Tres lapides. Duo currus. Dux facies. Duo sedilia. Altus currus. Durus lapis. Durior rupe. Altior currus. Altius cornu. Durius caput. Felicius puer. Felicius iter. Pulchrior lapis. Pulchrius caput. Tenerior Musa. Tenerius cornu. Facilius iter. Melior puer. Melius donum. Pejor dominus. Pejus donum. Major liber. Majus sedile. Minor rupe. Minus cornu. Altissima rupe. Durissimus lapis. Felicissimus puer. Optimus dominus. Optima Musa. Optimum donum. Parvus puer. Malus liber. Magnus currus. Magna rupe. Magnum caput. Parvum sedile. Minus sedile. Minimum sedile. Facilis Musa. Facilior Musa. Facillima Musa. Tener dominus. Tenerior dominus. Tenerimus dominus. Leniora itinera.

FIRST DECLENSION

Musâ, a song, feminine-gender.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Nominative,</i>	Musâ, a song,	<i>Nominative,</i>	Musæ. songs,
<i>Genitive,</i>	Musæ, of a song,	<i>Genitive,</i>	Musarum, of songs,
<i>Dative,</i>	Musæ, to, or for a song,	<i>Dative,</i>	Musis, to, or for songs,
<i>Accusative,</i>	Musam, a song,	<i>Accusative,</i>	Musas, songs,
<i>Vocative,</i>	Musâ, O song,	<i>Vocative,</i>	Musæ, O songs,
<i>Ablative,</i>	Musâ; with, &c. a song;	<i>Ablative,</i>	Musis; with, &c. songs.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Puer, a boy, masc.		Libër, a book, masc.	
Singular.		Singular.	
<i>N.</i> Puer,	<i>N.</i> Puëri,	<i>N.</i> Libër,	<i>N.</i> Libri,
<i>G.</i> Puëri,	<i>G.</i> Puërorum,	<i>G.</i> Libri,	<i>G.</i> Librorum,
<i>D.</i> Puëro,	<i>D.</i> Puëris,	<i>D.</i> Librò,	<i>D.</i> Libris,
<i>A.</i> Puërum,	<i>A.</i> Puëros,	<i>A.</i> Librum,	<i>A.</i> Libros,
<i>V.</i> Puë,	<i>V.</i> Puëri,	<i>V.</i> Libër,	<i>V.</i> Libri,
<i>A.</i> Puëro;	<i>A.</i> Puëris.	<i>A.</i> Librò;	<i>A.</i> Libris.
Dòminûs, a master, masc.		Dònum, a gift, neut.	
<i>N.</i> Dòminûs,	<i>N.</i> Dòmini,	<i>N.</i> Dònum,	<i>N.</i> Dòna,
<i>G.</i> Dòmini,	<i>G.</i> Dòmìnorum,	<i>G.</i> Dòni,	<i>G.</i> Dònòrum,
<i>D.</i> Dòminò,	<i>D.</i> Dòminis,	<i>D.</i> Dòno,	<i>D.</i> Dònis,
<i>A.</i> Dòminum,	<i>A.</i> Dòminos,	<i>A.</i> Dònum,	<i>A.</i> Dòna,
<i>V.</i> Dòminè,	<i>V.</i> Dòmini,	<i>V.</i> Dònum,	<i>V.</i> Dòna,
<i>A.</i> Dòminò;	<i>A.</i> Dòminis.	<i>A.</i> Dòno;	<i>A.</i> Dònis.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Sërmo, a speech, masc.		Cápüt, the head, neut.	
<i>N.</i> Sërmo,	<i>N.</i> Sërmónes,	<i>N.</i> Cápüt,	<i>N.</i> Cápità,
<i>G.</i> Sërmónis,	<i>G.</i> Sërmónium,	<i>G.</i> Cápitis,	<i>G.</i> Cápitiùm,
<i>D.</i> Sërmóni,	<i>D.</i> Sërmónibûs,	<i>D.</i> Cápiti,	<i>D.</i> Cápitiûs,
<i>A.</i> Sërmónem,	<i>A.</i> Sërmónes,	<i>A.</i> Cápüt,	<i>A.</i> Cápità,
<i>V.</i> Sërmo,	<i>V.</i> Sërmónes,	<i>V.</i> Cápüt,	<i>V.</i> Cápità,
<i>A.</i> Sërmónè;	<i>A.</i> Sërmónibûs.	<i>A.</i> Cápité;	<i>A.</i> Cápitiûs.
Rápës, a rock, fem.		Sedilë, a seat, neut.	
<i>N.</i> Rápës,	<i>N.</i> Rápës,	<i>N.</i> Sedilë,	<i>N.</i> Sedilä,
<i>G.</i> Rápës,	<i>G.</i> Rápëum,	<i>G.</i> Sedilis,	<i>G.</i> Sediliùm,
<i>D.</i> Rápì,	<i>D.</i> Rápibûs,	<i>D.</i> Sedili,	<i>D.</i> Sedilibûs,
<i>A.</i> Rápëm,	<i>A.</i> Rápës,	<i>A.</i> Sedilë,	<i>A.</i> Sedilä,
<i>V.</i> Rápës,	<i>V.</i> Rápës,	<i>V.</i> Sedilë,	<i>V.</i> Sedilä,
<i>A.</i> Rápè;	<i>A.</i> Rápibûs.	<i>A.</i> Sedili;	<i>A.</i> Sedilibûs.
Lápìs, a stone, masc.		Itër, a journey, neut.	
<i>N.</i> Lápìs,	<i>N.</i> Lápìdës,	<i>N.</i> Itër,	<i>N.</i> Itinèrë,
<i>G.</i> Lápìdis,	<i>G.</i> Lápìdum,	<i>G.</i> Itinèris,	<i>G.</i> Itinèrium,
<i>D.</i> Lápìdi,	<i>D.</i> Lápìdibûs,	<i>D.</i> Itinèri,	<i>D.</i> Itinèribûs,
<i>A.</i> Lápìdèm,	<i>A.</i> Lápìdës,	<i>A.</i> Itër,	<i>A.</i> Itinèrë,
<i>V.</i> Lápìs,	<i>V.</i> Lápìdës,	<i>V.</i> Itër,	<i>V.</i> Itinèrë,
<i>A.</i> Lápìdè;	<i>A.</i> Lápìdibûs.	<i>A.</i> Itinèrè;	<i>A.</i> Itinèribûs.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Cùrrûs, a chariot, masc.		Còrnû, a horn, neut.	
<i>N.</i> Cùrrûs,	<i>N.</i> Currûs,	<i>N.</i> Còrnû,	<i>N.</i> Cornûä,
<i>G.</i> Currûs,	<i>G.</i> Currûum,	<i>G.</i> Cornu,	<i>G.</i> Cornûum,
<i>D.</i> Currûi,	<i>D.</i> Currûbûs,	<i>D.</i> Cornu,	<i>D.</i> Cornûbûs,
<i>A.</i> Currûm,	<i>A.</i> Currûs,	<i>A.</i> Cornu,	<i>A.</i> Cornûä,
<i>V.</i> Currûs,	<i>V.</i> Currûs,	<i>V.</i> Còrnû,	<i>V.</i> Cornûä,
<i>A.</i> Currû;	<i>A.</i> Currûbûs.	<i>A.</i> Còrnû;	<i>A.</i> Cornûbûs.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Rës, a thing, fem.		Faciës, a fact, fem.	
<i>N.</i> Rës,	<i>N.</i> Rës,	<i>N.</i> Faciës,	<i>N.</i> Fáciës,
<i>G.</i> Rëi,	<i>G.</i> Rërum,	<i>G.</i> Fácië,	<i>G.</i> Fáciërum,
<i>D.</i> Rëi,	<i>D.</i> Rëbûs,	<i>D.</i> Fáciëi,	<i>D.</i> Fáciëbus,
<i>A.</i> Rëm,	<i>A.</i> Rës,	<i>A.</i> Fáciem,	<i>A.</i> Fáciës,
<i>V.</i> Rës,	<i>V.</i> Rës,	<i>V.</i> Fáciës,	<i>V.</i> Fáciës,
<i>A.</i> Rè;	<i>A.</i> Rëbûs.	<i>A.</i> Fácië;	<i>A.</i> Fáciëbus.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Bónus, boná, bonum, good.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>mas.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>mas.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
N. Bónus,	boná,	bónum,	N. Bóni,	bonæ,	bóna,
G. Boni,	bonæ,	boni,	G. Bonórum,	bonárum,	bonórum,
D. Bonó,	bonæ,	bonó,	D. Bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
A. Bonum,	bonum,	bonum,	A. Bonas,	bonas,	bona,
V. Boné,	boná,	bonum,	V. Boni,	bonæ,	boná,
A. Bonó,	boná,	bonó;	A. Bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

Ténér, ténérá, ténérum, tender.

N. Ténér,	ténérá,	ténérum,	N. Ténéri,	ténéræ,	ténérá,
G. Teneri,	teneræ,	teneri,	G. Tenerórum,	—árúm,	—órúm,
D. Ténéró,	teneræ,	teneró,	D. Ténéris,	teneris,	teneris,
A. Tenerum,	tenerum,	tenerum,	A. Tenerós,	tenerás,	tenerá,
V. Tenér,	tenerá,	tenerum,	V. Teneri,	teneræ,	tenerá,
A. Teneró,	tenerá,	teneró;	A. Ténéris,	teneris,	teneris.

Pulchér, pulchrá, pulchrum, fair.

N. Pulchér,	pulchrá,	pulchrum,	N. Pulchri,	pulchræ,	pulchrá,
G. Pulchri,	pulchræ,	pulchri,	G. Pulchrórum,	—árúm,	—órúm,
D. Pulchró,	pulchræ,	pulchró,	D. Pulchris,	pulchris,	pulchris,
A. Pulchrum,	pulchrum,	pulchrum,	A. Pulchrós,	pulchrás,	pulchrá,
V. Pulchér,	pulchrá,	pulchrum,	V. Pulchri,	pulchræ,	pulchrá,
A. Pulchró,	pulchrá,	pulchró;	A. Pulchris,	pulchris,	pulchris.

Unús, uná, unum, one.

N. Unús,	uná,	unum,	N. Uni,	unæ,	uná,
G. Unús,	unús,	unús,	G. Unórum,	unárum,	unórum,
D. Uni,	uni,	uni,	D. Unis,	unis,	unis,
A. Unum,	unum,	unum,	A. Unós,	unás,	uná,
V. Uné,	uná,	unum,	V. Uni,	unæ,	uná,
A. Unó,	uná,	unó;	A. Unis,	unis,	unis.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Félix, felix, felix, happy.

N. Félix,	félix,	félix,	N. Felícés,	felícés,	feliciá,
G. Felícis,	felícis,	felícis,	G. Feliciúm,	feliciúm,	feliciúm,
D. Felici,	felici,	felici,	D. Felicibús,	felicibús,	feliciá,
A. Felicem,	felicem,	felix,	A. Felicés,	felícés,	feliciá,
V. Félix,	felix,	felix,	V. Felícés,	felícés,	feliciá,
A. Felicé, v.	felici, &c.		A. Felicibús,	felicibús,	felicibús.

Lénis, lenis, lené, mild.

N. Lénis,	lénis,	lené,	N. Lenés,	lenés,	leniá,
G. Lenis,	lenis,	lené,	G. Leniúm,	leniúm,	leniúm,
D. Leni,	leni,	leni,	D. Lenibús,	lenibús,	lenibús,
A. Lenem,	lenem,	lené,	A. Lenés,	lenés,	leniá,
V. Lenis,	lenis,	lené,	V. Lenés,	lenés,	leniá,
A. Leni,	leni,	leni;	A. Lenibús,	lenibús,	lenibús.

Lénior, lenior, leniús, milder.

N. Lénior,	lenior,	leniús,	N. Leniórés,	leniórés,	lenióriá,
G. Lenióri,	lenióri,	lenióri,	G. Lenióriúm,	lenióriúm,	lenióriúm,
D. Lenióri,	lenióri,	lenióri,	D. Lenióriúbús,	lenióriúbús,	lenióriúbús,
A. Leniorem,	leniorem,	leniús,	A. Leniórés,	leniórés,	lenióriá,
V. Leniór,	lenior,	leniús,	V. Leniórés,	leniórés,	lenióriá,
A. Lenióre, v.	lenióri, &c.		A. Lenióriúbús,	lenióriúbús,	lenióriúbús.

Duo, two, & Tres, three, arithus declined.

N. Duo,	dúe,	dúo,	N. Tres,	trés,	triá,
G. Duórum,	duárum,	duórum,	G. Triúm,	triúm,	triúm,
D. Duóbús,	duábús,	duóbús,	D. Triúbús,	triúbús,	triúbús,
A. Duos, v. dúo,	duás,	dúo,	A. Trés,	trés,	triá,
V. Duo,	dúe,	dúo,	V. Trés,	trés,	triá,
A. Duábús,	duábús,	duóbús.	A. Triúbús,	triúbús,	triúbús.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Com.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Com.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Altus, high,	altior,	altissimus.	Bonus, good,	melior,	optimus.
Durus, hard,	durior,	durissimus.	Malus, bad,	pejor,	pestissimus.
Felix, happy,	felicior,	felicissimus.	Magnus, great,	major,	maximus.
Lenis, mild,	lenior,	lenissimus.	Parvus, small,	minor,	minimus.
Tener, tender,	tenerior,	tenerrimus.	Multus, much,	plus, n.	plurimus.
Facilis, easy,	facilior,	facillimus.	Dexter, right,	dexterior,	dexterior.

EXERCISES.

Benignus gener. Liberalis socer. Formosa filia. Fortis filius. Amabilis puella. Mitis vir. Una hora. Mitis aura. Atra cura. Magna stella. Mite pomum. Hilaris femina. Bonum exemplum. Difficile principium. Doctus vir. Carus socius. Magna prudentia. Pretiosa gemma. Utilis poeta. Fidus amicus. Pauper homo. Dives stultus. Perniciosa lex. Medicabilis amor. Bonus animus. Fulvus ager. Casta femina. Vaser vulpes. Assidua apis. Multus honor. Parvum agmen. Clamosus risus. Nigra felis. Miser bufo. Misera ovis. Ruber draco. Prospera vitis. Verus honor. Rigidus Aquilo. Pallidus timor. Falsum omen. Purum ebur. Obtusum telum. Acidum vinum. Horrida bella. Tumidum flumen. Raucus fluctus. Claudus manus. Dulce pomum. Maturus fructus. Ferox latro. Grandis aula. Brevis vita. Fragile flum. Velox cervus. Subtilis ratio. Terrestris res. Pernix ala. Immanis lacus. Sagax vultus. Ignobile nomen. Terribilis lues. Turpe crimen. Triste negotium. Viridis vitis. Exsanguis manus. Inanes spes. Ingens veru. Exilis cervus. Sagax equus. Deformis lups. Vile regnum. Sapientis homo. Amabilis mulier. Hilaris puella. Docilis puer. Canina rabies. Malum consilium. Magnum concilium. Dulcis libertas. Candidus ursus. Alta domus. Longus dies. Magna salus. Divinus amor. Matutinum canticum. Publicus vicus. Suprema dies. Dulcia oscula. Novi fluctus. Timidus navita. Quotile genus. Oriens Sol. Sedens luna. Julium sidus. Densa silva.

RULES.

2.

The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.

3.

The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

4.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.

5.

Any verb may have the same case *after*, as *before* it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.

6.

Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.

EXERCISES.

Ego sum. Tu es. Ille est. Nos sumus. Vos estis. Illi sunt.—Ego eram. Tu eras. Ille erat. Nos eramus. Vos eratis. Illi erant.—Ego fui. Tu fuisti. Ille fuit. Nos fuimus. Vos fuistis. Illi fuerunt.—Ego fueram. Tu fueras. Ille fuerat. Nos fueramus. Vos fueratis. Illi fuerant. Ego ero. Tu eris. Ille erit. Nos erimus. Vos eritis. Illi erunt.—Ego sim. Tu sis. Ille sit. Nos simus. Vos sitis. Illi sint.—Ego essem. Tu esses. Ille esset. Nos essemus. Vos essetis. Illi essent.—Ego fuero. Tu fueris. Ille fuerit. Nos fuerimus. Vos fueritis. Illi fuerint.—Ego fuisset. Tu fuisses. Ille fuisset. Nos fuissetus. Vos fuissetis. Illi fuissent.—Ego fuero.

Singular.

N. Ego, I,
G. Mei, of me,
D. Mihi, to me,
A. Mē, me,
V. —
A. Mē, with me ;

N. Tu, thou, or you,
G. Tui, of thee, or you,
D. Tibi, to thee, or you,
A. Tē, thee, or you,
V. Tū, O thou, or you,
A. Te, with thee, or you ;

N. —
G. Sui, of himself, &c.
D. Sibi, to himself, &c.
A. Sē, himself, &c.
V. —
A. Sē, with himself, &c.

N. Illē, illū,
G. Illius, illius,
D. Illi, illi,
A. Illūm, illūm,
V. Illē, illū,
A. Illō, illā, illō ;

N. Ipsē, ipsū,
G. Ipsius, ipsius,
D. Ipsi, ipsi,
A. Ipsūm, ipsūm,
V. Ipse, ipsa,
A. Ipso, ipsa, ipso ;

N. Hic, hūc,
G. Huius, huius,
D. Huic, huic,
A. Hunc, hunc,
V. Hic, hūc,
A. Hoc, hūc ;

N. Is, eū,
G. Ejus, ejus,
D. Ei, ei,
A. Eūm, eūm,
V. —
A. Eō, eū, eō ;

N. Quis, quē,
G. Cujus, cujus,
D. Cui, cui,
A. Quē, quam,
V. —
A. Quō, quā, quō ;

N. Qui, quē,
G. Cujus, cujus,
D. Cui, cui,
A. Quē, quā,
V. —
A. Quō, quā, quō ;

Ego, I.

Plural.

N. Nos, we,
G. Nostrum, v. nostri, of us,
D. Nobis, to us.
A. Nos, us,
V. —
A. Nobis, with us.

Tu, thou.

N. Vos, ye, or you,
G. Vestrum, v. vestri, of you,
D. Vobis, to you,
A. Vos, you,
V. Vos, O ye, or you,
A. Vobis, with you.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

N. —
G. Sui, of themselves,
D. Sibi, to themselves,
A. Sē, themselves,
V. —
A. Sē, with themselves.

Ille, illa, illud, he, she, it, or that.

N. Illi, illū,
G. Illorum, illarum,
D. Illi, illi,
A. Illōs, illās, illā,
V. Illi, illā,
A. Illis, illis, illis.

In the same manner decline iste, ista, istud, that

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, himself, herself, itself.

N. Ipsē, ipsū,
G. Ipsorum, ipsarum,
D. Ipsi, ipsi,
A. Ipsūm, ipsūm,
V. Ipsi, ipsa,
A. Ipsis, ipsa, ipsa.

Hic, hæc, this.

N. Hi, hæ,
G. Horum, harum,
D. His, his,
A. Hos, hæ,
V. Hi, hæ,
A. His, his, his.

Is, eū, id, he, she, it, or that.

N. Is, eū,
G. Eorum, earum,
D. Is, v. eis, &c.
A. Eos, eas, eū,
V. —
A. Is, v. eis, &c.

Quis, quæ, quod, v. quid, who ? which ? what ?

N. Qui, quæ,
G. Quorum, quarum,
D. Quis, v. quibus, &c.
A. Quos, quas, quæ,
V. —
A. Quis, v. quibus, &c.

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that.

N. Qui, quæ,
G. Quorum, quarum,
D. Quis, v. quibus, &c.
A. Quos, quas, quæ,
V. —
A. Quis, v. quibus, &c.

SUM, an irregular neuter verb, is thus CONJUGATED.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infm.</i>	<i>Part. Fut.</i>
<i>Sum,</i>	<i>fui,</i>	<i>esse,</i>	<i>futurus, To be.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Sum, I am,</i>	<i>Sūmus, we are,</i>
2. <i>Es, thou art,</i>	<i>Estis, ye are,</i>
3. <i>Est, he is ;</i>	<i>Sunt, they are.</i>

Imperfect, *was.*

1. <i>Eram, I was,</i>	<i>Erāmus, we were,</i>
2. <i>Eras, thou wast,</i>	<i>Erātis, ye were,</i>
3. <i>Erāt, he was ;</i>	<i>Erānt they were.</i>

Perfect, *have been.*

1. <i>Fui, I have been,</i>	<i>Fuīmus, we have been,</i>
2. <i>Fuisti, thou hast been,</i>	<i>Fuistis, ye have been,</i>
3. <i>Fuit, he has been ;</i>	<i>Fuerunt v. fuere, they have been.</i>

Pluperfect, *had been.*

1. <i>Fuērām, I had been,</i>	<i>Fuērāmus, we had been,</i>
2. <i>Fuērās, thou hadst been,</i>	<i>Fuērātis, ye had been,</i>
3. <i>Fuērāt, he had been ;</i>	<i>Fuērānt, they had been.</i>

Future, *shall, or will be.*

1. <i>Ero, I shall be,</i>	<i>Erīmus, we shall be,</i>
2. <i>Eris, thou shalt be,</i>	<i>Erītis, ye shall be,</i>
3. <i>Erīt, he shall be ;</i>	<i>Erānt, they shall be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may, or can be.*

1. <i>Sim, I may be,</i>	<i>Sīmus, we may be,</i>
2. <i>Sis, thou mayest be,</i>	<i>Sītis, ye may be,</i>
3. <i>Sit, he may be ;</i>	<i>Sint, they may be.</i>

Imperfect, *might, could, would, or should be.*

1. <i>Essem, I might be,</i>	<i>Essemus, we might be,</i>
2. <i>Esēs, thou mightest be,</i>	<i>Sītis, ye might be,</i>
3. <i>Esēt, he might be ;</i>	<i>Essent, they might be.</i>

Perfect, *may have been.*

1. <i>Fuērīm, I may have been,</i>	<i>Fuērīmus, we may have been,</i>
2. <i>Fueris, thou mightest have been,</i>	<i>Fueritis, ye may have been,</i>
3. <i>Fuerit, he might have been ;</i>	<i>Fuerint, they may have been.</i>

Pluperfect, *might, could, would, or should have been.*

1. <i>Fuissem, I might have been,</i>	<i>Fuissemus, we might have been,</i>
2. <i>Fuissēs, thou mightest have been,</i>	<i>Fuissētis, ye might have been,</i>
3. <i>Fuisset, he might have been ;</i>	<i>Fuissent, they might have been.</i>

Future, *shall have been.*

1. <i>Fuēro, I shall have been,</i>	<i>Fuērīmus, we shall have been,</i>
2. <i>Fuēris, thou shall have been,</i>	<i>Fuēritis, ye shall have been,</i>
3. <i>Fuērit, he shall have been ;</i>	<i>Fuērint, they shall have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. <i>Es, v. esto, Be thou,</i>	<i>Estē, v. estōtē, Be ye,</i>
3. <i>Esto, Let him be ;</i>	<i>Sunto, Let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Esse, To be.</i>
<i>Perf</i>	<i>Fuisse, To have been.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Esse futūrus, a, um, To be about to be.</i>
	<i>Fuisse futūrus, a, um, To have been about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Future. *Futūrus, a, um, About to be.*

EXERCISES.

Tu fueris. Ille fuerit. Nos fuerimus. Vos fueritis. Illi fuerint.—Es, v. esto tu. Esto ille. Este, v. estote vos. Sunt illi.—Esto illa. Illa sit. Ego sum discipulus. Tu es bonus puer. Ille est vir. Pax est jucunda. Divitiæ sunt perniciose. Veritas est magna. Charitas est benigna. Virtus est pretiosa gemma. Principium est difficile. Nos omnes essemus meliores. Nulla potentia est longa. Senes sunt cauti. Cives sunt candidi. Boni homines erunt beati. Improbi viri essent miseri. Pueri sint callidi. Esto perpetua. Hoc est pulchrum facinus. Puer, qui est studiosus, erit doctus. Puella quæ est amabilis, erit amata. Pueri, qui sunt studiosi, erant docti. Puellæ, quæ sunt amabiles, erunt amatae. Illi sunt boni homines, qui sunt justi, probi, clementes, pii, benigni, sobrii. Hic est manus, qui fuit victus. Hæc est domus, quæ fuit deserta. Hoc est negotium, quod fuit perfectum. Vir, cujus opus est. Viri, quorum opus est. Is est vir honestus. Ea est mulier pulcherrima. Hæc puellæ sunt formosæ ; illæ sint amabiles. Hic vir est amatus. Iste vir est exosus. Homo es. Homines sumus. Vita est brevis. Mors est certa. Quis musicus est hic ? Quæ mulier est ea ? Quid negotium est illud ? Cujus opus est id ? Hoc est opus. America est mea patria. Georgius est meus carus amicus. Petrus est docilis. Johannes fuit juvenis. Cicero, orator, fuit consul. Horatius, homo ingeniosus, fuit poeta. Si Washington, dux, fuisset rex. Virgilius, poeta, fuit verecundus.

RULES.

7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.

8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.

9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.

10. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative.

11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.

12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.

13. Adjectives signifying *profit* or *disprofit*, *likeness* or *unlikeness*, &c. govern the dative.

14. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.

15. Adjectives, signifying *plenty*, or *want*, govern the genitive, or ablative.

16. *Sum*, when it signifies *possession*, *property*, or *duty*, governs the genitive.

17. *Sum*, taken for *habeo*, (*to have*), governs the dative of a person.

18. *Sum*, taken for *Affero*, (*to bring*), governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

Jesus Christus, filius Dei, est Salvator mundi. Cicero, orator, fuit consul Romæ. Numa Pompilius erat rex secundus Romanorum. Ille fuit vir magnæ prudentiæ. Ego sum publicus nuncius populi Romani; verbis meis fides sit. Ancus Marcius erat nepos Numæ Pompilii, similis avo æquitate et religione. Augustus est puer probâ indole. Petrus est vir minimi pretii. Est homo nullius stipendii. Est ager trium jugerum. Es bono animo. Capite aperto est. Cervice obvoluta est. Johannes est adolescens eximia spe, summæ virtutis. Paulus est vir præstantis ingenii—præstanti ingenio—præstans ingenio—præstans ingenii. Os humerosque deo similis sit. Esto forti animo. Vox populi est vox Dei. Hæc est domus Cæsaris. Facilis est descensus Averni. Multum pecuniæ est illi. Plus eloquentiæ est tibi. Est nobis minus sapientiæ. Est vobis nihil sinceri. Quid rei est illis? Quicquid ingenii sit mihi. Per hoc noctis. Ad hoc ætatis. Circum id loci. Libri permulti sunt mihi. Eadem mens est mihi, eadem tibi. Nobis est opus pecuniâ. Vobis est usus viribus. Dux nobis opus sit. Nobis exempla opus sunt. Est regis. Pecus est Melibœi. Hæc sunt hominis. Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis. Tuum est. Meum fuisset. Suum sit. Vestrum fuerit. Nostrum erit. Est regium. Est humanum. Lex naturæ est universalis. Illi est summa prudentia juris. Quorum magna pars fui. Liber mei est novus. Liber tui est novellus. Salus populi est suprema lex. Hoc est tuum munus. Hoc est tui muneris. Liber deest mihi. Libri desunt mihi. Præfuit exercitui. Adfuit precibus. Mali nec prosunt sibi, nec aliis. Est mihi voluptati. Est tibi exemplo. Horatius fuit cupidus pacis. Cato fuit tenax propositi. Cicero fuit amans patriæ. Cæsar fuit peritus literarum. Petrus est memor beneficiorum. Petrus est avidus gloriæ. Paulus est ignarus fraudis. Memor esto brevis ævi. Catilina fuit audax ingenii. Est sapientis esse contentum sua sorte. Hic est assuetus labore in omnia. Nos sumus insueti moribus Romanis. Fœminæ sunt desuetæ bello, et triumphis. Una sororum fuit pulchra. Ille est aliquis philosophorum. Uterque nostrum fuit ibi. Quis vestrum est senior fratrum? Cicero fuit optimus consulum. Sunt lecti juvenum. O sancte deorum. Ille est vir præstantissimus nostræ civitatis. Poeta est utilis urbi. Hic puer est similis suo patri. Lex fuit perniciose Reipublicæ. Censura est facilis cuivis. Hoc est commune mihi tecum. Mens est mihi sibi conscia recti. Regis dicto audiens erat. Superbia est aliena dignitatis. Nemo est immunis vitio. Omnes sunt proni ad vitium. Hic puer est dignus laude. Sapiens est contentus sua sorte. Dux est præditus virtute. Stultus est captus mente. Homo superbus sapientiâ est stultissimus. Æneas fuit ortus Anchise. Omnia plena sunt Dei. Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus. Lentulus non est verbis inops. Omnium consiliorum ejus, participes fuimus. Quando erimus vacui molestiâ? Nihil insidiis est vacuum.

Ille est doctus grammaticæ. Hic est patiens aliorum. Sapientia est melior gemmis. Nihil est dulcius libertate. Nihil fuit facundius Cicerone. Tu es nihilo melior alio. Amor non est medicabilis herbis. Via lethi est calcanda semel omnibus. Hic liber est mei fratris. Hæc toga erat tua. Jacobus et Johannes, qui sunt mortui, fuerunt fratres. Jupiter est omnibus idem. Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici. Est animus erga te idem ac fuit. Res est solliciti plena timoris amor. Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis. Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus. Anna est amanda omnibus. Mors est terribilis malis. Pax est optabilis omnibus. Adhibenda est nobis diligentia. Bella matribus detestata sunt. Deus est venerandus et colendus à nobis. Mors Crassi est à multis defleta. Pedibus longè melior fuit Lycus. Dum anima est, spes est. Donec eris felix, sunt tibi multi amici. Fuit olim quasi ego sum, senex. Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus. En hostis. Ecce signum. Ecce miserum hominem. Ecce duas aras tibi, Daphni. O vir bone! O vir fortis atque amicus! Heu me miserum! Heu vanitas humana! Hei mihi! Væ vobis! Proh hominum fidem! Proh Sancte Jupiter! Et ego sum in culpa, et tu. Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt. Mens, ratio, et consilium in senibus sunt. Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus. Non bonus est somnus de prandio. Ah virgo infelix! O crudelis Alexi! Es penes te? Lentæ adversus imperia aures fuerunt. Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit. Timor Domini est initium sapientiæ. Facies rerum est mutata. Quantum nummi sit ubivis, tantum fidei est etiam ibidem. Ubi plurimum est studii, ibi est minimum strepitus. O, Fons Blandusiæ, splendidior vitro. Nil mortalibus arduum est. Sine amore jocisque nil est jucundum. O cives, querenda pecunia est primum, Virtus post. nummos. Sapientissimus philosophorum est aliquando deceptus. Heliodorus fuit longè doctissimus Græcorum. Stertinius, octavus sapientium, erat Stoicus. Satis est verborum ubique gentium, ergo virtutis. Rex, Solomon, fuit sapientior omnibus. Pax est melior bello. Cicero fuit candidior Cæsare. Dux est major milite. Cortex Peruvianus est efficax contra febrim. Fuit Ciceroni mentis ad omnia capacitas. Sunt ebrii omnes ad unum. In vino est veritas. Tu es homo ad unguem factus. Hæc sunt herbæ ad lunam messæ. Ira est brevis, et ad tempus. Nebula erat ad multum diei. Est mihi fides apud illum. Adversus infimos justitia est servanda. Sunt clamosi ab ovo usque ad mala. Est calor à sole. Fuissent omissiores de re. Erat Caio Mario ingenuarum artium et liberalium studiorum contemptor animus. Lucius Cornelius Scylla, patricio genere natus, bello Jugurthino quaestor Marii fuit; vir ingentis animi, cupidus voluptatum, sed gloriæ cupidior; literis Græcis atque Latinis eruditus, et virorum literatorum multum amans. Est mihi nomen Alexandro. Ducitur honori tibi. Id vertitur mihi vitio. Petrus et Johannes, qui sunt docti, fuerunt studiosi.

RULES.

19. The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative.

20. Words of the comparative-degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin.

21. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.

22. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

23. The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative.

24. The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative.

25. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

26. The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.

27. The interjections *hi* and *væ*, govern the dative.

28. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes.

29. Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.

30. The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, &c. govern the subjunctive mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
<i>Amo.</i>	<i>amāvi,</i>	<i>amātum,</i>	<i>amāre, To love.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *love, do love, or am loving.**Singular.*

1. *Amo, I love,*
2. *Amas, thou lovest,*
3. *Amat, he loves;*

Plural.

- Amāmus, we love,*
Amatis, ye love,
Amant, they love.

Imperfect, *loved, did love, or was loving.*

1. *Amābam, I loved,*
2. *Amabas, thou lovedst,*
3. *Amabat, he loves;*

- Amābamus, we loved,*
Amabatis, ye loved,
Amabant, they loved.

Perfect, *loved, have loved, or did love.*

1. *Amāvi, I have loved,*
2. *Amavisti, thou hast loved,*
3. *Amavit, he has loved;*

- Amāvīmus, we have loved,*
Amavistis, ye have loved,
Amāverunt, v.—ēre, they have loved.

Pluperfect, *had loved.*

1. *Amāveram, I had loved,*
2. *Amaveras, thou hadst loved,*
3. *Amaverat, he had loved;*

- Amāveramus, we had loved,*
Amaveratis, ye had loved,
Amāverant, they had loved.

Future, *shall, or will love.*

1. *Amābo, I shall love,*
2. *Amabis, thou shalt love,*
3. *Amabit, he shall love;*

- Amābīmus, we shall love,*
Amabitis, ye shall love,
Amābunt, they shall love.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may, or can love.*

1. *Amem, I may love,*
2. *Ames, thou mayest love,*
3. *Amet, he may love;*

- Amēmus, we may love,*
Ametis, ye may love,
Ament, they may love.

Imperfect, *might, would, could, or should love.*

1. *Amārem, I might love,*
2. *Amares, thou mightest love,*
3. *Amaret, he might love;*

- Amārēmus, we might love,*
Amaretis, ye might love,
Amarent, they might love.

Perfect, *may have loved.*

1. *Amāverim, I may have loved,*
2. *Amaveris, thou mayest have loved,*
3. *Amaverit, he may have loved;*

- Amāverīmus, we may have loved,*
Amaveritis, ye may have loved,
Amāverint, they may have loved.

Pluperfect, *might, would, could, or should have loved.*

1. *Amāvīsem, I might have loved,*
2. *Amāvisses, thou mightest have loved,*
3. *Amāvisset, he might have loved;*

- Amāvīsemus, we might have loved,*
Amāvissetis, ye might have loved,
Amāvissent, they might have loved.

Future, *shall have loved.*

1. *Amāverō, I shall have loved,*
2. *Amaveris, thou shalt have loved,*
3. *Amaverit, he shall have loved;*

- Amāverīmus, we shall have loved,*
Amaveritis, ye shall have loved,
Amāverint, they shall have loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. *Ama, v. amāto, love thou,*
3. *Amāto, let him love;*

- Amāte v. amatote, love ye,*
Amanto, let them love.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. Amāre, to love. Perf. Amavisse, to have loved.**Fut. Esse amaturus, to be about to love, Fuisse amaturus, to have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Amans, loving. Fut. Amaturus, about to love.

GERUNDS.

Aman-dum-di-do-dum-do, loving, of loving, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. Amātum, to love. Latter. Amatu, to love, or to be loved.

Accuso, to accuse.
 Adumbro, to shade.
 Edifico, to build.
 Estimo, to value.
 Animo, to encourage.
 Appello, to call.
 Apto, to fit.
 Assevero, to affirm.
 Bello, to war.
 Beo, to bless.
 Calco, to tread.
 Castigo, to chastise.
 Celo, to conceal.
 Clamo, to cry.
 Cogito, to think.
 Comparo, to compare.
 Considero, to consider.
 Contamino, to pollute.
 Creo, to create.
 Curo, to care.
 Damno, to condemn.
 Declaro, to declare.
 Decoro, to adorn.
 Dedico, to dedicate.
 Desolo, to lay waste.
 Dono, to present.
 Educo, to bring up.
 Emendo, to amend.
 Erro, to wander.
 Exploro, to search.
 Extrico, to disentangle.
 Fabrico, to frame.
 Fascino, to bewitch.
 Fatigo, to weary.
 Festino, to hasten.
 Flagito, to dun.
 Flo, to blow.
 Frio, to crumble.
 Fugo, to put to flight.
 Guberno, to govern.
 Gusto, to taste.
 Honoro, to honour.
 Jacto, to boast.
 Immolo, to sacrifice.
 Impero, to command.
 Inchōo, to begin.
 Indico, to show.
 Instigo, to push on.
 Intro, to enter.
 Invito, to invite.
 Jubilo, to shout for joy.
 Juro, to swear.
 Laboro, to labour.
 Lacero, to tear.
 Latro, to bark.
 Lego, to send an embassy.
 Libo, to taste.
 Libero, to free.
 Ligo, to bind.
 Mando, to command.
 Meneoro, to tell.
 Migro, to remove.
 Muto, to change.
 Narro, to relate.
 Navigo, to sail.
 Nego, to deny.
 Nomino, to name.
 Nudo, to make bare.
 Numero, to count.
 Obsecro, to beseech.
 Odore, to perfume.
 Onero, to load.
 Opto, to wish.

FIRST CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
Amor,	Amátus,	Amári, to be loved.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, am loved.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Amor,	Amamur,
2. Amáris, <i>v.</i> Amáre,	Amamini,
3. Amatur;	Amantur.

Imperfect, was loved.

1. Amábar,	Amabamur,
2. Amabáris, <i>v.</i> Amabáre,	Amabamini,
3. Amabatur;	Amabantur.

Perfect, have been loved.

1. Amatus sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	Amati sumus, <i>v.</i> fuimus,
2. Amatus es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	Amati estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,
3. Amatus est, <i>v.</i> fuit;	Amati sunt, <i>v.</i> fuerunt, <i>v.</i> fuere.

Pluperfect, had been loved.

1. Amatus eram, <i>v.</i> fueram,	Amati eramus, <i>v.</i> fueramus,
2. Amatus eras, <i>v.</i> fueras,	Amati eratis, <i>v.</i> fueratis,
3. Amatus erat, <i>v.</i> fuerat;	Amati erant, <i>v.</i> fuerant.

Future, shall, or will be loved.

1. Amábor,	Amábimur,
2. Amáberis, <i>v.</i> Amábère,	Amabimini,
3. Amábitor;	Amabuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, may, or can be loved.

1. Amer,	Amémur,
2. Améris, <i>v.</i> Amére,	Amemini,
3. Ametur;	Amentur.

Imperfect, might, could, would, or should be loved.

1. Amárer,	Amárémur,
2. Amaréris, <i>v.</i> Amarére,	Amaremini,
3. Amaretur;	Amarentur.

Perfect, may have been loved.

1. Amatus sim, <i>v.</i> fuerim,	Amati simus, <i>v.</i> fuerimus,
2. Amatus sis, <i>v.</i> fueris,	Amati sitis, <i>v.</i> fueritis,
3. Amatus sit, <i>v.</i> fuerit;	Amati sint, <i>v.</i> fuerint.

Pluperfect, might, would, could, or should have been loved.

1. Amatus essem, <i>v.</i> fuissem,	Amati essemus, <i>v.</i> fuissemus,
2. Amatus esses, <i>v.</i> fuisses,	Amati essetis, <i>v.</i> fuissetis,
3. Amatus esset, <i>v.</i> fuisset;	Amati essent, <i>v.</i> fuissent.

Future, shall have been loved.

1. Amatus fuéro,	Amati fuérimus,
2. Amatus fueris,	Amati fueritis,
3. Amatus fuerit;	Amati fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Amáre, <i>v.</i> ator, <i>be thou loved,</i>	Amamini, <i>be ye loved,</i>
3. Amátor, <i>let him be loved;</i>	Amantor, <i>let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Amári, <i>to be loved.</i>	
<i>Perf.</i> Esse, <i>v.</i> fuisse amatus-a-um, <i>to have been loved.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> Amátum iri, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> Amatus-a-um, <i>loved.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> Amandus-a-um, <i>to be loved.</i>	

B

EXERCISES.

Orno, to deck.
Oro, to beg.
Paco, to subdue.
Paro, to prepare.
Pecco, to sin.
Pio, to expiate.
Placo, to appease.
Porto, to carry.
Privo, to deprive.
Probo, to approve.
Pugno, to fight.
Puto, to think.
Rogo, to ask.
Saluto, to salute.
Sano, to heal.
Sedo, to allay.
Sibilo, to hiss.
Simulo, to pretend.
Specto, to behold.
Spero, to hope.
Susurro, to whisper.
Tolero, to bear.
Turbo, to disturb.
Velo, to cover.
Vigilo, to watch.
Violo, to violate.
Voco, to call.
Vulgo, to spread abroad.
Vulnero, to wound

EXCEPTIONS

Do, to give.
Sto, to stand.
Lavo, to wash.
Poto, to drink.
Juvo, to help.
Cubo, to lie.
Domo, to subdue.
Sono, to sound.
Tono, to thunder.
Veto, to forbid.
Crepro, to make a noise.
Frico, to rub.
Seco, to cut.
Neco, to kill.
Mico, to glitter.

DEPONENT

AND COMMON VERBS.

Abominor, to abhor.
Adulor, to flatter.
Arbitror, to think.
Bacchor, to revel.
Conor, to endeavour.
Criminor, to blame.
Cunctor, to delay.
Dominor, to rule.
Epulor, to feast.
Frustror, to disappoint.
Glorior, to boast.
Hortor, to encourage.
Imitor, to imitate.
Luctor, to wrestle.
Machinor, to contrive.
Minor, to threaten.
Opinor, to think.
Osculor, to kiss.
Precor, to pray.
Recordor, to remember.
Suspisor, to suspect.
Testor, to witness.
Veneror, to worship.
Venor, to hunt.

EXERCISES.

Censeo, to judge.
 Misceo, to mix
 Sorbeo, to sup.
 Teneo, to hold.
 Torreo, to roast.

UI and IROM.

Habeo, to have.
 Adhibeo, to admit.
 Cohibeo, to restrain.
 Exhibeo, to exhibit.
 Perhibeo, to give out.
 Prohibeo, to hinder.
 Posthabeo, to value less.
 Redhibeo, to return a thing.
 Debeo, to owe.
 Mereo, to deserve.
 Moneo, to admonish.
 Præbeo, to afford.
 Caleo, to be warm.
 Careo, to want.
 Jaceo, to lie.
 Doleo, to be grieved.
 Liceo, to be lawful.
 Noceo, to hurt.
 Pareo, to appear.
 Placeo, to please.
 Taceo, to be silent.
 vi, sup. caret.
 Albeo, to be white.
 Calleo, to be hard.
 Caneo, to be hoary.
 Egeo, to want.

Emineo, to be eminent.
 Floreo, to flourish.
 Frendeo, to gnash the teeth.
 Frondeo, to bear leaves.
 Horreo, to be rough.
 Humeo, to be wet.
 Immineo, to hang over.
 Languéo, to languish.
 Liqueo, to melt.
 Maceo, to be lean.
 Niteo, to shine.
 Palleo, to be pale.
 Pateo, to be open.
 Putreo, to rot.
 Rigeo, to be stiff.
 Rubeo, to be red.
 Studeo, to favour.
 Stupeo, to be amazed.
 Splendeo, to shine.
 Tepeo, to be warm.
 Torpeo, to be benumbed.
 Tumeo, to swell.
 Arceo, to drive away.
 Sileo, to conceal.
 Timeo, to fear.

BRO and CRO.

Jubeo, to order.
 Mulceo, to soothe.
 Luceo, to shine.

DEO.

Prædeo, to dine.
 Video, to see.
 Sedeo, to sit.
 Strideo, to make a noise.
 Mordeo, to bite.
 Pendeo, to hang.
 Spondeo, to promise.
 Tondeo, to clip.
 Remordeo, to bite again.

SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	Perf. Indic.	Supine.	Pres. Infm.
Dūceo,	Dūcui,	Dūctūm,	Dūcēre, to teach.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, teach, or am teaching.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Dūceo, I teach,	Dūcēmus, we teach,
2. Dūces, thou teachest,	Dūcētis, ye teach,
3. Dūcet, he teaches;	Dūcent, they teach.

Imperfect, taught.

1. Dūcēbam, I taught,	Dūcēbāmus, we taught,
2. Dūcebas, thou taughtest,	Dūcēbātis, ye taught,
3. Dūcebat, he taught;	Dūcebant, they taught.

Perfect, have taught.

1. Dūcui, I have taught,	Dūcīmus, we have taught,
2. Dūcuisti, thou hast taught,	Dūcistis, ye have taught,
3. Dūcuit, he has taught;	Dūcērunt, v. ēre, they have taught.

Pluperfect, had taught.

1. Dūcēram, I had taught,	Dūcērāmus, we had taught,
2. Dūceras, thou hadst taught,	Dūcerātis, ye had taught,
3. Dūcerat, he had taught;	Dūcerant, they had taught.

Future, shall, or will teach.

1. Dūcēbo, I shall teach,	Dūcēbimus, we shall teach,
2. Dūcebis, thou shalt teach,	Dūcebitis, ye shall teach,
3. Dūcebit, he shall teach;	Dūcebunt, they shall teach.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, may, or can teach.

1. Dūceam, I may teach,	Dūcēāmus, we may teach,
2. Dūceas, thou mayest teach,	Dūceātis, ye may teach,
3. Dūceat, he may teach;	Dūceant, they may teach.

Imperfect, might, could, would, or should teach.

1. Dūcērem, I might teach,	Dūcērēmus, we might teach,
2. Dūceres, thou mightest teach,	Dūcerētis, ye might teach,
3. Dūceret, he might teach;	Dūcerent, they might teach.

Perfect, may have taught.

1. Dūcērim, I may have taught,	Dūcērīmus, we may have taught,
2. Dūceris, thou mayest have taught,	Dūceritis, ye may have taught,
3. Dūcerit, he may have taught;	Dūcerint, they may have taught.

Pluperfect, might, would, could, or should have taught.

1. Dūcīssē, I might have taught,	Dūcīssēmus, we might have taught,
2. Dūcīssēs, thou mightest have taught,	Dūcīssētis, ye might have taught,
3. Dūcīssēt, he might have taught;	Dūcīssētent, they might have taught.

Future, shall have taught.

1. Dūcēro, I shall have taught,	Dūcērīmus, we shall have taught,
2. Dūceris, thou shalt have taught,	Dūceritis, ye shall have taught,
3. Dūcerit, he shall have taught;	Dūcerint, they shall have taught.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Dūce, v. dūcēto, teach thou,	Dūcēte, v. dūcetote, teach ye,
3. Dūceto, let him teach;	Dūcento, let them teach.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Dūcēre, to teach.	Perf. Dūcisse, to have taught.
Fut. Esse docturus, to be about to teach.	Fuisse docturus, to have been about to teach.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Docens, teaching.	Fut. Doctūrus, about to teach.
-------------------------	--------------------------------

GERUNDS.

Docendum-di-do-dum-do, teaching, of teaching, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. Doctum, to teach. Latter. Doctu, to teach, or to be taught.

SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Infm.</i>
<i>Dōcēor,</i>	<i>Dōctūs,</i>	<i>Dōcēri, to be taught.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am taught.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Doceor,</i>	<i>Docemur,</i>
2. <i>Docēris, v. docēre,</i>	<i>Docemini,</i>
3. <i>Docetur;</i>	<i>Docentur.</i>

Imperfect, *was taught.*

1. <i>Docēbar,</i>	<i>Docēbamur,</i>
2. <i>Docēbāris, v. docebāre,</i>	<i>Docēbamini,</i>
3. <i>Docebatur;</i>	<i>Docēbantur.</i>

Perfect, *have been taught.*

1. <i>Doctus sum, v. fui,</i>	<i>Docti sumus, v. fuimus,</i>
2. <i>Doctus es, v. fuisti,</i>	<i>Docti estis, v. fuistis,</i>
3. <i>Doctus est, v. fuit;</i>	<i>Docti sunt, v. fuerunt v. fuēre.</i>

Pluperfect, *had been taught.*

1. <i>Doctus eram, v. fueram,</i>	<i>Docti eramus, v. fueramus,</i>
2. <i>Doctus eras, v. fueras,</i>	<i>Docti eratis, v. fueratis,</i>
3. <i>Doctus erat, v. fuerat;</i>	<i>Docti erant, v. fuerant.</i>

Future, *shall, or will be taught.*

1. <i>Docēbor,</i>	<i>Docēbimur,</i>
2. <i>Docēberis, v. docebere,</i>	<i>Docēbimini,</i>
3. <i>Docēbitur;</i>	<i>Docēbuntur.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may, or can be taught.*

1. <i>Docear,</i>	<i>Doceamur,</i>
2. <i>Docēāris, v. doceāre,</i>	<i>Doceāmini,</i>
3. <i>Doceatur;</i>	<i>Doceantur.</i>

Imperfect, *might, &c. be taught.*

1. <i>Docerer,</i>	<i>Doceremur,</i>
2. <i>Docerēris, v. docerēre,</i>	<i>Docerēmini,</i>
3. <i>Doceretur;</i>	<i>Docerentur.</i>

Perfect, *may have been taught.*

1. <i>Doctus sim, v. fuerim,</i>	<i>Docti simus, v. fuerimus,</i>
2. <i>Doctus sis, v. fueris,</i>	<i>Docti sitis, v. fueritis,</i>
3. <i>Doctus sit, v. fuerit;</i>	<i>Docti sint, v. fuerint.</i>

Pluperfect, *might, &c. have been taught.*

1. <i>Doctus essem, v. fuisset,</i>	<i>Docti essemus, v. fuissetus,</i>
2. <i>Doctus esses, v. fuisses,</i>	<i>Docti essetis, v. fuissetis,</i>
3. <i>Doctus esset, v. fuisset;</i>	<i>Docti essent, v. fuissent.</i>

Future, *shall have been taught.*

1. <i>Doctus fuero,</i>	<i>Docti fuerimus,</i>
2. <i>Doctus fueris,</i>	<i>Docti fueritis,</i>
3. <i>Doctus fuerit;</i>	<i>Docti fuerint.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. <i>Docēre, v. ētor, be thou taught,</i>	<i>Docemini, be ye taught,</i>
3. <i>Docetor, let him be taught;</i>	<i>Docentor, let them be taught.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Docēri, to be taught.</i>
<i>Perf. Esse, v. fuisse doctus-a-um, to have been taught.</i>
<i>Fut. Doctum iri, to be about to be taught.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf. Doctus-a-um, taught.</i>
<i>Fut. Docendus-a-um, to be taught.</i>

EXERCISES.

GEO.

Augeo, to increase.
Algeo, to be cold.
Fulgeo, to shine.
Frigeo, to be cold.
Indulgeo, to indulge.
Lugeo, to mourn.
Mulgeo, to milk.
Tergeo, to wipe.
Turgeo, to swell.
Urgeo, to press.

LEO.

Compleo, to fill.
Deleo, to blot out.
Fleo, to weep.
Adoleo, to grow up.
Aboleo, to abolish.
Absoleo, to grow out of use.
Insoleo, to grow into use.
Exleo, to fade.

NEO QUEO REO.

Maneo, to stay.
Neo, to spin.
Hæreo, to stick.
Adhæreo, to adhere.
Detorqueo, to wrest.

VEO.

Foveo, to cherish.
Moveo, to move.
Voveo, to vow.
Deveo, to devote.
Faveo, to favour.
Caveo, to beware of.
Ferveo, to be hot.
Conniveo, to wink.

DEPONENTS.

Mereor, to deserve.
Polliceor, to promise.
Tueor, to defend.
Reor, to think.
Misereor, to pity.
Fateor, to confess.
Profiteor, to profess.
Confiteor, to confess.

Ego doceo. Ego doceor
Docti sumus. Doceat ille.
Doceremur. Tu doctus es.
Illi docebantur. Nos docuimus. Docenda est.
Petrus docebitur. Ille doctus fuerit. Doceamur nos. Ille docebat. Illa docebit. Docti fuerint. Docetor. Docentor. Doctus. Docebaris. Tu docebare. Doce. Ego docerer. Vos doceremini. Docerere. Tu amas. Tu docendus es. Docebitis. Amabitis. Nos amemur. Vos docemini. Amator. Docemini. Illa est amanda. Amer. Ego amabor. Tu amaris. Illi amati sint. Docear. Amantor. Nos amabimur.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

EXERCISES.

THIRD CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

Io.

Facio, to do, to make.

Jacio, to throw.

Allicio, to allure.

Elicio, to draw out.

Fodio, to dig.

Fugio, to fly.

Capio, to take.

Rapio, to snatch.

Cupio, to desire.

Pario, to bring forth.

Quatio, to shake.

Uo.

Arguo, to argue.

Batuo, to beat.

Induo, to put on clothes.

Exuo, to put off clothes.

Minuo, to lessen.

Spuo, to spit.

Statuo, to ordain.

Sternuo, to meese.

Suo, to stich.

Tribuo, to give, to divide.

Fluo, to flow.

Bo.

Bibo, to drink.

Scribo, to write.

Nubo, to be married.

Accumbo, to recline at table.

Co.

Dico, to say.

Duco, to lead.

Vincio, to conquer.

Parco, to spare.

Ico, to strike.

Sco.

Nosco, to know.

Dignosco, to distinguish.

Ignosco, to pardon.

Cresco, to grow.

Quiesco, to rest.

Scisco, to ordain.

Suesco, to be accustomed.

Agnosco, to own.

Cognosco, to know.

Recognosco, to review.

Pasco, to feed.

Disco, to learn.

Do.

Scando, to climb.

Edo, to eat.

Ascendo, to mount.

Accendo, to kindle.

Descendo, to go down.

Defendo, to defend.

Offendo, to strike against.

Mando, to chew.

Divido, to divide.

Rado, to shave.

Claudo, to close.

Claudo, to clap hands for [joy.

Ludo, to play.

Trudo, to thrust.

Lædo, to hurt.

Rodo, to gnaw.

Go.

Rego, to rule, to govern.

Porrigio, to stretch out.

Cingo, to bind.

Fligo, to dash upon.

Jungo, to join.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.

Lêgo,

Perf. Indic.

Legi,

Supine.

Lectum,

Pres. Infin.

Lêgere, to read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, read, or am reading.

Singular.

1. Lego, I read,
2. Legis, thou readest,
3. Legit, he reads;

Plural.

- Legimus, we read,
- Legitis, ye read,
- Legunt, they read.

Imperfect, read, or did read.

1. Legēbam, I read, or did read,
2. Legēbas, thou didst read,
3. Legēbat, he read, or did read;

- Legēbamus, we did read,
- Legēbatis, ye did read,
- Legēbant, they did read.

Perfect, have read.

1. Lēgi, I have read,
2. Legisti, thou hast read,
3. Legit, he has read;

- Legimus, we have read,
- Legistis, ye have read,
- Legerunt, v. ēre, they have read.

Pluperfect, had read.

1. Legēram, I had read,
2. Legeras, thou hadst read,
3. Legerat, he had read;

- Legeramus, we had read,
- Legeratis, ye had read,
- Legerant, they had read.

Future, shall, or will read.

1. Lēgam, I shall read,
2. Leges, thou shalt read,
3. Leget, he shall read;

- Legēmus, we shall read,
- Legetis, ye shall read,
- Legent, they shall read.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, may, or can read.

1. Legam, I may read,
2. Legas, thou mayst read,
3. Legat, he may read;

- Legamus, we may read,
- Legatis, ye may read,
- Legant, they may read.

Imperfect, might, &c. read.

1. Lēgērem, I might read,
2. Legeres, thou mightest read,
3. Legeret, he might read;

- Lēgēremus, we might read,
- Legeretis, ye might read,
- Legerent, they might read.

Perfect, may have read.

1. Lēgerim, I may have read,
2. Legeris, thou mayst have read,
3. Legerit, he may have read;

- Legerimus, we may have read,
- Legeritis, ye may have read,
- Legerint, they may have read.

Pluperfect, might, &c. have read.

1. Lēgissem, I might have read,
2. Legisses, thou mightest have read,
3. Legisset, he might have read;

- Legissemus, we might have read,
- Legissetis, ye might have read,
- Legissent, they might have read.

Future, shall have read.

1. Legero, I shall have read,
2. Legeris, thou shalt have read.
3. Legerit, he shall have read;

- Legerimus, we shall have read,
- Legeritis, ye shall have read,
- Legerint, they shall have read.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Lege, v. legito, read thou,
3. Legito, let him read;

- Legito, v. legitote, read ye,
- Legunto, let them read.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Legere, to read. Perf. Legisse, to have read.

Fut. Esse lecturus, to be about to read. Fuisse lecturus, to have been about to read.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Legens, reading. Fut. Lecturus, about to read.

GERUNDS.

Legendum-di-do-dum-do, reading, of reading, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. Lectum, to read. Latter. Lectu, to read, or to be read.

THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
<i>Lēgor,</i>	<i>Lectus,</i>	<i>Lēgi, to be read.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *am read.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Lēgor, I am read,</i>	<i>Legimur,</i>
2. <i>Lēgeris, v. legere, thou art read,</i>	<i>Legimini,</i>
3. <i>Legitur, he is read ;</i>	<i>Leguntur.</i>

Imperfect, *was read.*

1. <i>Legebar,</i>	<i>Legebamur,</i>
2. <i>Legebaris, v. legebare,</i>	<i>Legebamini,</i>
3. <i>Legebatur ;</i>	<i>Legebantur.</i>

Perfect, *have been read.*

1. <i>Lectus sum, v. fui,</i>	<i>Lecti sumus, v. fuimus,</i>
2. <i>Lectus es, v. fuisti,</i>	<i>Lecti estis, v. fuistis,</i>
3. <i>Lectus est, v. fuit ;</i>	<i>Lecti sunt, v. fuerunt, v. fuere.</i>

Pluperfect, *had been read.*

1. <i>Lectus eram, v. fueram,</i>	<i>Lecti eramus, v. fueramus,</i>
2. <i>Lectus eras, v. fueras,</i>	<i>Lecti eratis, v. fueratis,</i>
3. <i>Lectus erat, v. fuerat ;</i>	<i>Lecti erant, v. fuerant.</i>

Future, *shall be read.*

1. <i>Lēgar,</i>	<i>Legemur,</i>
2. <i>Lēgeris, v. legere,</i>	<i>Legimini,</i>
3. <i>Legetur ;</i>	<i>Legentur.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, *may, or can be read.*

1. <i>Lēgar,</i>	<i>Legamur,</i>
2. <i>Lēgaris, v. legere,</i>	<i>Legamini,</i>
3. <i>Legatur ;</i>	<i>Legantur.</i>

Imperfect, *might, &c. be read.*

1. <i>Lēgerer,</i>	<i>Legeremur,</i>
2. <i>Lēgereris, v. legere,</i>	<i>Legeremini,</i>
3. <i>Lēgeretur,</i>	<i>Legerentur.</i>

Perfect, *may have been read.*

1. <i>Lectus sim, v. fuerim,</i>	<i>Lecti simus, v. fuerimus,</i>
2. <i>Lectus sis, v. fueris,</i>	<i>Lecti sitis, v. fueritis,</i>
3. <i>Lectus sit, v. fuerit ;</i>	<i>Lecti sint, v. fuerint.</i>

Pluperfect, *might, &c. have been read.*

1. <i>Lectus essem, v. fuisset,</i>	<i>Lecti essemus, v. fuissetus,</i>
2. <i>Lectus esses, v. fuissetis,</i>	<i>Lecti essetis, v. fuissetis,</i>
3. <i>Lectus esset, v. fuisset ;</i>	<i>Lecti essent, v. fuissent.</i>

Future, *shall have been read.*

1. <i>Lectus fuero,</i>	<i>Lecti fuerimus,</i>
2. <i>Lectus fueris,</i>	<i>Lecti fueritis,</i>
3. <i>Lectus fuerit ;</i>	<i>Lecti fuerint.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. <i>Legere, v. itor, be thou read,</i>	<i>Legimini, be ye read,</i>
3. <i>Legitor, let him be read ;</i>	<i>Leguntor, let them be read.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Legi, to be read.</i>
<i>Perf. Esse, v. fuisse lectus-a-um, to have been read.</i>
<i>Fut. Lectum iri, to be about to be read.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf. Lectus-a-um, read.</i>
<i>Fut. Legendus-a-um, to be read.</i>

EXERCISES.

<i>Mungo, to wipe the nose.</i>
<i>Tego, to cover.</i>
<i>Ungo, to anoint.</i>
<i>Surgo, to rise.</i>
<i>Pergo, to go forward.</i>
<i>Fingo, to feign.</i>
<i>Pingo, to paint.</i>
<i>Stringo, to bind.</i>
<i>Frango, to break.</i>
<i>Ago, to do.</i>
<i>Diligo, to love.</i>
<i>Tango, to touch.</i>
<i>Pungo, to prick, or sting.</i>
<i>Pango, to fix, to compose.</i>
<i>Spargo, to spread.</i>
<i>Mergo, to dip, or plunge.</i>
<i>Ho.</i>
<i>Traho, to draw.</i>
<i>Veho, to carry.</i>
<i>Lo.</i>
<i>Colo, to adorn, to inhabit.</i>
<i>Allo, to nourish.</i>
<i>Molo, to grind.</i>
<i>Pello, to thrust.</i>
<i>Fallo, to deceive.</i>
<i>Tollo, to take away.</i>
<i>Mo.</i>
<i>Gemo, to groan.</i>
<i>Fremo, to rage, or roar.</i>
<i>Vomo, to vomit.</i>
<i>Demo, to take away.</i>
<i>Promo, to bring out.</i>
<i>Sumo, to take.</i>
<i>Como, to deck, to dress.</i>
<i>Emo, to buy.</i>
<i>No.</i>
<i>Pono, to put, to place.</i>
<i>Gigno, to beget.</i>
<i>Cano, to sing.</i>
<i>Sperno, to disdain, or slight.</i>
<i>Sino, to permit.</i>
<i>Sterno, to lay flat.</i>
<i>Po.</i>
<i>Carpo, to pluck.</i>
<i>Clepo, to steal.</i>
<i>Repo, to creep.</i>
<i>Rumpo, to break.</i>
<i>Ro.</i>
<i>Quæro, to seek.</i>
<i>Tero, to wear, to bruise.</i>
<i>Verro, to sweep.</i>
<i>Uro, to burn.</i>
<i>Gero, to carry.</i>
<i>Curro, to run.</i>
<i>Sero, to sow.</i>
<i>So.</i>
<i>Arcesso, to call, or send for.</i>
<i>Capesso, to take.</i>
<i>Facesso, to do, to go away.</i>
<i>Lacesso, to provoke.</i>
<i>To.</i>
<i>Flecto, to bow.</i>
<i>Plecto, to plait,</i>
<i>Necto, to knit.</i>
<i>Meto, to reap, or mow.</i>
<i>Peto, to seek, pursue.</i>
<i>Mitto, to send.</i>
<i>Vo.</i>
<i>Vivo, to live.</i>
<i>Solvo, to loose.</i>
<i>Volvo, to roll.</i>

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

EXERCISES.

Balbutio, to stammer.
 Custodio, to keep.
 Dormio, to sleep.
 Erudio, to instruct.
 Grunnio, to grunt.
 Hinnio, to neigh.
 Impedio, to hinder.
 Lippio, to be dim sighted.
 Mugio, to bellow.
 Munio, to fortify.
 Nutrio, to nourish.
 Obedio, to obey.
 Punio, to punish.
 Rugio, to roar like a lion.
 Sævio, to rage.
 Nescio, not to know.
 Servio, to serve.
 Tussio, to cough.
 Vestio, to clothe.

EXCEPTIONS.

Singultio, to sob.
 Sepelio, to bury.
 Venio, to come.
 Veneo, to be sold.
 Salio, to leap.

Amicio, to cover.
 Vincio, to tie.
 Sancio, to ratify.

Cambio, to change money.
 Sepio, to hedge.
 Haurio, to draw out.
 Sentio, to perceive.
 Raucio, to be hoarse.
 Sarcio, to mend.
 Farcio, to cram.
 Fulcio, to prop.

Cæcutio, to be dim sighted.
 Gestio, to leap for joy.
 Glocio, to cluck as a hen.
 Dementio, to be mad.
 Ineptio, to play the fool.
 Prosilio, to leap forth.
 Ferocio, to be fierce.

DEPONENTS,

of the 4th. Conjugation.
 Blandior, to flatter.
 Largior, to give liberally.
 Mentior, to lie.
 Molior, to attempt something difficult.
 Partior, to divide.
 Potior, to enjoy.
 Sortior, to cast lots.
 Metior, to measure.
 Ordior, to begin.
 Exuperior, to try.
 Opperior, to wait for one.

DEPONENTS,

of the 3d. Conjugation.
 Vescor, to feed.
 Medeor, to heal.
 Reminiscor, to remember.
 Irascor, to be angry.
 Ringor, to grin.
 Divortor, to turn aside.
 Prævertor, to get before.
 Diffiteor, to deny.
 Defetiscor, to be weary.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Indic.	Perf. Indic.	Supine.	Pres. Infin.
Audio,	Audivi,	Auditum,	Audire, to hear.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense, hear, or am hearing.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Audio, I hear,	Audimus we hear,
2. Audis, thou hearest,	Auditis, ye hear,
3. Audit, he hears;	Audiant, they hear.

Imperfect, heard, or was hearing.

1. Audiēbam, I heard,	Audiebamus, we heard,
2. Audiebas, thou didst hear,	Audiebatis, ye heard,
3. Audiebat, he heard;	Audiebant, they heard.

Perfect, have heard.

1. Audivi, I have heard,	Audivimus, we have heard,
2. Audivisti, thou hast heard,	Audivistis, ye have heard,
3. Audivit, he has heard;	Audiverunt, v. ivēre, they have heard.

Pluperfect, had heard.

1. Audivēram, I had heard,	Audiveramus, we had heard,
2. Audiveras, thou hadst heard,	Audiveratis, ye had heard,
3. Audiverat, he had heard;	Audiverant, they had heard.

Future, shall, or will hear.

1. Audiam, I shall hear,	Audiemus, we shall hear,
2. Audies, thou shalt hear,	Audietis, ye shall hear,
3. Audiet, he shall hear;	Audient, they shall hear.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, may, or can hear.

1. Audiam, I may hear,	Audiamus, we may hear,
2. Audias, thou mayest hear,	Audiat, ye may hear,
3. Audiat, he may hear;	Audiant, they may hear.

Imperfect, might, &c. hear.

1. Audirem, I might hear,	Audirēmus, we might hear,
2. Audires, thou mightest hear,	Audiretis, ye might hear,
3. Audiret, he might hear;	Audirent, they might hear.

Perfect, may, or can have heard.

1. Audiverim, I may have heard,	Audiverimus, we may have heard,
2. Audiveris, thou mayest have heard,	Audiveritis, ye may have heard,
3. Audiverit, he may have heard;	Audiverint, they may have heard.

Pluperfect, might, &c. have heard.

1. Audivissem, I might have heard,	Audivissemus, we might have heard,
2. Audivisses, thou mightest have heard,	Audivissetis, ye might have heard,
3. Audivisset, he might have heard;	Audivissent, they might have heard.

Future, shall have heard.

1. Audivero, I shall have heard,	Audiverimus, we shall have heard,
2. Audiveris, thou shalt have heard,	Audiveritis, ye shall have heard,
3. Audiverit, he shall have heard;	Audiverint, they shall have heard.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. Audi, v. audito, hear thou,	Audite, v. auditote, hear ye,
3. Audito, let him hear;	Audiunto, let them hear.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Audire, to hear.	Perf. Audivisse, to have heard.
Fut. Esse auditurus, to be about to hear.	Fuisse auditurus, to have been about to hear.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Audiens, hearing.	Fut. Auditurus, about to hear.
-------------------------	--------------------------------

GERUNDS.

Audiendum—di—do—dum—do, hearing, of hearing, &c.

SUPINES.

Former. Auditum, to hear. Latter. Auditui, to hear, or to be heard.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
Audior,	Auditus,	Audiri, to be heard.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, am heard.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Audior,	Audimur,
2. Audiris, v. audire,	Audimini,
3. Auditar ;	Audiantur.

Imperfect, was heard.

1. Audiēbar,	Audiēbamur,
2. Audiēbaris, v. audiēbare,	Audiēbamini,
3. Audiēbatur ;	Audiēbantur.

Perfect, have been heard.

1. Auditus sum, v. fui,	Auditi sumus, v. fuimus,
2. Auditus es, v. fuisti,	Auditi estis, v. fuistis,
3. Auditus est, v. fuit ;	Auditi sunt, v. fuerunt, v. fuere.

Pluperfect, had been heard.

1. Auditus eram, v. fueram,	Auditi eramus, v. fueramus,
2. Auditus eras, v. fueras,	Auditi eratis, v. fueratis,
3. Auditus erat, v. fuerat ;	Auditi erant, v. fuerant.

Future, shall be heard.

1. Audiar,	Audiēmur,
2. Audieris, v. audiere,	Audiemini,
3. Audietur ;	Audiantur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense, may, or can be heard.

1. Audiar,	Audiāmur,
2. Audiāris, v. audiāre,	Audiāmini,
3. Audiatur ;	Audiantur.

Imperfect, might, &c. be heard.

1. Audirer,	Audirēmur,
2. Audireris, v. audirere,	Audiremini,
3. Audiretur ;	Audirentur.

Perfect, may have been heard.

1. Auditus sim, v. fuerim,	Auditi simus, v. fuerimus,
2. Auditus sis, v. fueris,	Auditi sitis, v. fueritis,
3. Auditus sit, v. fuerit ;	Auditi sint, v. fuerint.

Pluperfect, might, &c. have been heard.

1. Auditus essem, v. fuisset,	Auditi essemus, v. fuissetus,
2. Auditus esses, v. fuissetis,	Auditi essetis, v. fuissetis,
3. Auditus esset, v. fuisset ;	Auditi essent, v. fuissent.

Future, shall have been heard.

1. Auditus fuero,	Auditi fuerimus,
2. Auditus fueris,	Auditi fueritis,
3. Auditus fuerit ;	Auditi fuerint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

2. Audire, v. auditor, be thou heard,	Audimini, be ye heard,
3. Auditor, let him be heard ;	Audiantur, let them be heard.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	Audiri, to be heard.
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse, v. fuisse auditus—a—um, to have been heard.
<i>Fut.</i>	Auditum iri, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i>	Auditus—a—um, heard.
<i>Fut.</i>	Audiendus—a—um, to be heard.

EXERCISES.

Amplector, to embrace.
Fungor, to discharge an
Revertor, to return. [office.

Labor, to slide.
Ulcisor, to revenge.
Utor, to use.
Loquor, to speak.
Sequor, to follow.
Queror, to complain.
Nitor, to endeavour.
Pacisor, to bargain.
Grador, to go.
Proficisor, to go a journey.
Nancisor, to get.
Pator, to suffer.
Apisor, to get.
Comminisor, to devise.
Fruor, to enjoy.
Oblivisor, to forget.
Expergisor, to awake.
Morior, to die.
Nascor, to be born.
Orior, to rise.

Ego lego, legebam, legi,
legam, legeram. Nos legi-
mus, legebamus, legimus,
legeramus, legemus. Ego
legam, legerem, legerim,
legeres, legissem, legero.
Nos legamus, legeremus,
legerimus, legissemus, le-
gissetis. Ego audio, audie-
bam, audivi, audive-
ram, audiam. Nos audi-
mus, audiebamus, audivi-
mus, audiveramus, audie-
mus. Ego audiam, audi-
rem, audiverim, audivis-
sem, audivero. Nos audi-
amus, audiremus, audive-
rimus, audivissemus, audi-
verimus, audi, audite, au-
diens, audito, audiant,
auditum. Lege, legite,
lecturus. Legito, legunto,
lectu. Legens, legendum,
lectum. Ego legor, lege-
bar, lectus sum, lectus
eram, legar. Nos legimur,
legebamur, lecti sumus,
lecti eramus, legemur.
Ego legar, legerer, lectus
sim, lectus essem, lectus
fuero. Nos legamur, lege-
remur, lecti simus, lecti
essemus, lecti fuerimus.
Legere tu. Legimini vos.
Legitor. Leguntor. Ego
audior, audiebar, auditus
sum, auditus eram, audiar.

RULES.

31. Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.

32. *Misereor, miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive.

33. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English.

34. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene*, and *male*, govern the dative.

35. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, super*, govern the dative.

36. Verbs, signifying *to profit, hurt, favour, assist, command, obey, serve, resist, trust, threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

37. *Recordor, meminî, reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive.

38. Verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.

39. *Utor, abutor, fungor, fruor, potior, vescor*, and some others, govern the ablative.

40. A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.

41. The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.

42. When *quod, quin, ut, or ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.

Ama Deum. Amo te. Amas me. Bonus amat omnes. Reverere parentes. Amor tegit crimina. Superbia comitatur honores. Pastor, Corydon, ardebat Alexin, delicias. Mars posuit illum custodem ostii. Vivunt vitam. Rufilius olet pastillos. Xerxes maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset. Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi. Mens lætatur turbidum. Ebruius fere rubet faciem. Vulneratur caput. Recordor lectionem. Obliviscor injuriæ. Cujus supra memini. De quo supra meminimus. Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. Crassus abundabat divitiis. Natura tantum eget paucis. Insanus eget custodis. Alter indiget alterius. Implentur veteris Bacchi. Caret omni culpâ. Non tam artis indigent, quàm laboris. Utitur fraude. Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientiâ nostrâ? Debemus uti diligentîâ. Non debemus abuti tempore, nam fruimur brevi tempore. Ego fungar vice cotis. Nec me tali dignor honore. Paternum servum sui participat consilii. Potior rerum. Depascitur artus. Miserere civium tuorum. Satagit rerum suarum. Desine querelarum. Regnavit populorum. Finis venit imperio. Animus redit hostibus. Tibi seris, tibi metis. Seges crescit hominibus. Laus debetur virtuti. Liberi laborant sibi. Præcepta dantur tibi. Non nobis solum nati sumus. Multa malè eveniunt bonis. Sol lucet etiam sceleratis. Hæret lateri lethalis arundo. Nec vox hominem sonat, O Dea! certè. Pulchrum est benefacere reipublicæ. Præfer virtutem divitiis. Fortuna favet bonis. Adeamus scholam. Exeamus scholâ. Pecunia nescit mutare naturam. Ille est cupidus scire causam. Vidi hostem tentantem fugere. Nunc tempus est abire. Tempus est equum fumantia solvere colla. Omnes invidere mihi. Mene incepto desistere victam? Horatius est dignus legi. Homines venerunt pascere oves. Gaudeo te valere. Audio præsidem venire. Credo bonos remuneratum iri. Dicit me scribere. Dixit me scribere. Multitudo stat. Pars erant cæsi. Magna pars raptæ. Tu vocaris Johannes. Illa incedit regina. Scio illum haberi sapientem. Scio vos esse discipulos. Dos est decem talenta. Omnia pontus erant. Amantium iræ, amoris integratio est. Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia. Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda. Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest. Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cuiusque suum maxime. Cato interfecit se. Miles defendit suam vitam. Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus. Mirâ sum alacritate ad litigandum. Multum auri aestimatur. Quid rei tractatur? Aliud mercedis dabitur. Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci. Quis vestrum ignorat? Quis nostrum ignorat. Dices nummos mihi opus esse. Hector ivit obvius hosti. Difficultates superandæ sunt studio et labore. Est hominis rare. Est stulti dicere, non putaveram. Est præceptorum curare. Militum est suo duci parere. Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat. Pauperis est numerare pecus. Et facere et pati fortia Romanum est.

Nauta, tenens gubernaculum, regit navim. Exercitus, sequens hostem, pugnat sagittis. Mors est anteposenda dedecori. Pii sunt fructuri aeterna vita in caelis. Occulta, et maribus non invisae solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra. Tu es invisus mihi. Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat. Vivendum est mihi illic. Scio vivendum esse mihi illic. Morendum est omnibus. Scio moriendum esse omnibus. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel. Cicero dixit optime omnium. Poeta agit utiliter urbi. Poeta agit inutiliter sibi. Hector exivit obviam hosti. Hic laudat mercedes plenius aequo. Nemo dicitur locutus fuisse distinctius Demosthene. Nullos his mallet ludos spectatasse. Mallet granum hordei omnibus gemmis. Consuetudo disputandi est impia. Omnes sunt cupidi vivendi beate. Tempus abunde est. Ille est peritus cantandi. Charta est utilis scribendo. Non est solvendo. Epidicum quaerendo operam dabo. Aptat habendo ense. Tu es promptus ad audiendum. Ille est attentus inter docendum. Poena absterret a peccando. Memoria augetur excolendo. Defessus sum ambulando. Ignavi a discendo cito deterrentur. Non ibo servitum Graiis matribus. Venientes spectatum, cupiunt spectari. Cur is te perditum? It venatum. Hoc est mirabile dictum. Nihil dictum foedum visuque haec limina tanget, intra quae puer est. Difficilis est inventu verus amicus. Palleo metu. Fecit hoc suo more. Juvenes saltabant gaudio. Ille est pallidus metu. Homo capitur voluptate. Georgius scribit pennam. Laus paranda virtute. Mons est candidus nive. Clypeus fabricatus aere. Est aeger pedibus. Murus est decem pedes altus. Urbs distat triginta millibus passuum. Philadelphia ferè distat centum milliaribus a Novo Eboraco. Non discedam pedem a te. Sol est multis partibus major terris. Quanto diutius Simonides Dei naturam consideravit, tanto obscurior res visa est ei. Toto vertice supra est. Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Venit hora tertia. Mansit paucos dies. Sex mensibus abfuit. Convenimus secundam horam. Saturnus regnavit aurea aetate. Mansisti mecum unam noctem. Emi librum tribus solidis. Demosthenes docuit talento. Perfusus vendit patriam auro. Illa juvant quae pluris emuntur. Nulla res constat patri minoris. Vendam librum tanti quanti valet. Vendidit librum tanti quantum valebat. Librum emam tanto pretio quanto valet. Quanti constitit? Asse et pluris. Per magno constitit. Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret. Venit pridie illius diei. Deus laudatur ubique gentium. Catilina habuit satis eloquentiae. Meus pater venit ad templum. Meus pater venit ex templo. Puer ambulat in templo. Servus ambulavit sub scalis. Turris incedit super agmina. Puer ambulat in templo. Daphnis consedit sub ilice. Ferus leo cucurrit in sylvis. Aves super arbore sidunt. Alii super alios trucidantur. Nos autem, viri fortes, satisfacere reipublicae videmur, si istius furorem ac tela vitamus.

RULES.

43. Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case, as the words from which they are derived.

44. The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative.

45. The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.

46. The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying *usefulness*, or *fitness*, &c.

47. The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter ante*, *propter*.

48. The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*.

49. The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion.

50. The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective.

51. Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative.

52. Nouns, signifying the *instrument*, *cause*, *means*, or *manner*, are put in the ablative.

53. Nouns, signifying *measure*, or *distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

54. Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.

RULES.

55. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, admonishing, and acquitting*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

56. Verbs of *esteeming*, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive of the value.

57. Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away*, govern the accusative and dative.

58. Verbs of *asking, and teaching*, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

59. Verbs of *loading, binding, clothing, depriving*, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.

60. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.

61. Impersonal verbs govern the dative.

62. *Interest and refert* require the genitive.

63. *Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.

64. *Decet, delectat, juvat, and oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.

Cicero accusavit Verrem furti. Postulavit Milonem majestatis. Damnabit illum sceleris. Absolvit vos criminis. **Morbus** monet nos mortis. Arguit me furti. Me ipsum inertise condemno. Illum homicidii absolvunt. Monet me officii. De vi condemnati sunt. Erroris te moneo. Absolvo me peccato. Punit illum capite. Æstimo te magni. Sapiens æstimat voluptatem parvi. Facio te æqui. Consulo tuum monitum boni. Æstimo te pro nihilo. Comparo Virgilium Homero. Dedit homini sublime os. Dicam tibi totam rem. Eripuit me morti. Ignosce mihi hanc culpam. Minatus est mihi mortem. Suum cuique tribuito. Narras fabulam surdo. Educa hunc puerum mihi. Recita mihi sententiam. Doce puellam mihi. Emam tibi libros. Præfecit Sextum classi. Præfero vim opibus. Gloriosum est iram mutare amicitiam. Legam lectionem tibi. Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominibus. Interdixit Galliam Romanis. Ad prætorem hominem traxit. Pacem te poscimus omnes. Egestas docet nos temperantiam. Cela hanc rem servos. Moneo te officium. Institue hunc puerum Græcis litteris. Omnes poscimus pacem à te. Docuit me grammaticam. Celavit me hanc rem. Celavit hanc rem mihi. Onerat naves auro. Induit se calceos. Induit se calceis. Deum posce veniam. Ea me ne celet. Verres accusabatur furti. Virgilius comparatur Homero. Ego eripior morti. Deus rogatur salutem. Nos docemur temperantiam. Hæc res celatur servos. Sæpe monemur mortis. Doceor grammaticam. Navis oneratur auro. Scio homines accusatum iri furti. Habetur ludibrio iis. Tu laudaris à me. Virtus diligit à nobis. Mare à sole collucet. Phalaris non à paucis interit. Per me defensa est respublica. Neque cernitur ulli. Vix audior ulli. Honestà bonis viris queruntur. Nulla tuarum audita mihi neque visa sororum. Provisum est nobis optimè à Deo. Reclamatum est ab omnibus. Contigit mihi esse illîc. Expedit reipublicæ. Licet nemini peccare. Libet mihi expatiari. Pertinet ad te tacere. Favetur mihi. Mihi non potest noceri. Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute. Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi et gloriæ invideri solet. Refert patris. Interest omnium. Non mea refert. Refert militum. Cuius refert. Hoc parvi refert. Illud mea magni interest. Faciam quod maximè reipublicæ interesse judicabo. Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quàm qui sim, magis referat? Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas. Miseret me infelicium civium. Semper pœnitet bonos peccati. Non pudet malos superbix. Tædet te citò tui officii. Piget infelices duræ sortis. Miseret me tui. Pœnitet me peccati. Tædet me vitæ. Pudet me culpæ. Pœnitet me peccasse. Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum. Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest. Decet te esse æquum. Delectat pueros ludere. Juvat te manere domi. Oportet te studere diligentèr.

Delectat me studere. Non decet te rixari. Parvum parva decent. Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat. Sibi quisque consulet oportet. Vixit Romæ. Mortuus est Londini. Quid Romæ faciam? Habitat Carthagine. Studuit Parisiis. Horatius vixit Tibure et Athenis. Venit Romam. Profectus est Athenas. Regulus rediit Carthaginem. Carthagini nuncios mittam. Regulus rediit Carthagine. Venit Aberdoniâ. Fecit iter Philadelphîâ. Discedit Corintho. Laodiceâ iter faciebat. Per Thebas iter fecit. Quid faciam domi? Horatius vixit rure. Regulus non rediit domum. Petrus abiit rus nuper. Non ibo domo. Manet domi. Domum revertitur. Domo accersitus sum. Vivit ruri. Jacet humi. Ubi vir natus fuit? In Italia. Quo abiit? In Italiam. Unde rediit? Ab Italia. Quâ transivit? Per Italiam. Deo volente, omnia cedent benè. Opere peracto, ludemus. Soleoriente, fugiunt tenebræ. Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus. Nihil amicitîâ præstabilius est, exceptâ virtute. Oppressâ libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius. Cicero, locutus hæc, consedit. Romani, libertate adeptâ, floruerunt. Nihil autem magis cavendum est senectuti, quàm ne languori se desidæque dedat.

Deus, quem pii colunt, cujus munere vivunt, cujus sunt cupididi, cui parent et placent, quo fruuntur, est æternus. Spectatum admissi, risum teneatis, amici? Pictoribus atque poëtis quidlibet audendi semper fuit æqua potestas. Serpit humi, tutus nimium, timidusque procellæ. In vitium ducit culpæ fuga, si caret arte. Sumite materiam vestris, qui scribitis, æquam viribus. Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi. Iratum vultum plena minarum verba decent. Et sibi constat. Nec deus intersit, nisi dignus vindice nodus inciderit. Graiis ingenium, Graiis dedit ore rotundo, musa loqui, præter laudem nullius avaris. Omne tulit punctum, qui miscuit utile dulci, lectorem delectando, pariterque monendo. Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero pulsanda tellus. Quibus pepercit aris? Quid intactum nefasti liquimus? Serves iturum Cæsarem in ultimos orbis Britannos. Valet ima summis mutare Deus. Nec tibi somnos adimunt. Multis ille quidem flebilis occidit; nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili. Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus, non eget Mauri jaculis neque arcu. O mater, pulchrâ filiâ pulchrior. Nil pictis timidus navita puppibus fidit. Nunc vino pellite curas; cras ingens iterabimus æquor. Ac neque jam stabulis gaudet pecus, aut arator igni. Recepto dulce mihi furere est amico. Foliis viduantur orni. Desine mollium tandem querelarum. Post equitem sedet atra cura. Eheu ne rudis agminum sponsus lacessat regius asperum tactu leonem. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. Justum et tenacem propositi virum non vultus instantis tyranni mente quatit solidâ. Hac arte Pollux et vagus Hercules innixus, arces attingit igneas. Primâ nocte domum claude, neque in vias sub cantu querulæ despicie tibiæ; et te sæpè vocanti duram, difficilis mane. Donec gratus eram tibi, Persarum vigui rege beator. Tecum vivere amem, tecum obeam libens. Instar veris enim vultus ubi tuus affulsit, populo gratior it dies, et soles melius nitent. Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori. Nunc juvat nos levare diris pectora solitudinibus. Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi. Namque neglectis urenda filix innascitur agris. Egressum magnâ, me accepit Aricia, Româ.

RULES.

65. The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.

66. The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative.

67. The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative.

68. *Domus* and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns.

69. A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.

RULES.

1. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender.

2. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person.

3. The relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

4. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb; or some other word in the sentence.

5. Any verb may have the same case after as before it, when both words refer to the same person or thing.

6. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case.

7. One substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing, in the genitive.

8. If the latter of two substantives have an adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative.

9. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.

10. *Opus* and *Unus*, signifying need, require the ablative.

11. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive.

12. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural.

13. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative.

14. These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, præditus, and contentus*; also, *natus, salus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative.

15. Adjectives signifying plenty or want, govern the genitive or ablative.

16. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive.

omnium spe floruit. Ad egregiam quippè indolem accedebat optima educatio. Exstant Corneliæ matris epistolæ, quibus apparet eos non solum in gremio matris educatos fuisse, sed etiam ab eâ sermonis elegantiam hausisse. Maximum matronis ornaamentum esse liberos, benè institutos meritò putabat sapientissima illa mulier: quum Campana matrona, apud illam hospita, ornaamenta sua, quæ erant illâ ætate pretiosissima, ostentaret ei muliebriter, Cornelia traxit eam sermone, quousquè à scholâ redirent liberi; quos reversos hospitæ exhibens: "En hæc, inquit, mea ornaamenta." Nihil quidem istis adolescentibus neque à naturâ neque à doctrinâ defuit; sed ambo rempublicam, quam tueri potuissent, impiè perturbare maluerunt.

LUCIUS LUCULLUS.

Habebat Lucullus villam prospectu et ambulatione pulcherrimam, quò quum venisset Pompeius, id unum reprehendit quòd ea habitatio esset quidem æstate peramena, sed hieme minùs commoda videretur; cui Lucullus: "Putasne, inquit, me minùs sapere quàm hirundines, quæ adveniente hieme sedem commutant?" Villarum magnificentiæ respondebat epularum symptus: quum aliquandò modica ei, utpotè soli, cœna esset posita, coquum graviter objurgavit, eique excusanti ac dicenti se non debuisse lautum parare convivium, quòd nemo esset ad cœnam invitatus: "Quid ais, inquit iratus Lucullus, an nesciebas Lucullum hodiè cœnaturum esse apud Lucullum?"

POMPEIUS MAGNUS.

Cnæus Pompeius stirpis senatoriæ adolescens, in bello civili se et patrem consilio servavit. Pompeii pater suo exercitui ob avaritiam erat invisus; itaque facta est in eum conspiratio Terentius quidam, Cnæi Pompeii contubernalis, eum occidendum susceperat, dùm alii tabernaculum patris incenderent. Quæ res juveni Pompeio cœnanti nuntiata est. Ipse nihil periculo motus, solito hilariùs bibit, et cum Terentio eadem, quâ antea, comitate usus est. Deindè cubiculum ingressus, clam subduxit se tentorio, et firmam patri circumposuit custodiam. Terentius tùm districto ense, ad lectum Pompeii accessit, multisque ictibus stragula percussit. Ortâ mox seditione, Pompeius se in media coniecit agmina, militesque tumultuantes precibus et lacrymis placavit, ac suo duci reconciliavit.

Pompeius eodem bello civili partes Syllæ secutus, ita egit, ut ab eo maximè diligeretur. Annos tres et viginti natus, ut Syllæ auxilio veniret, paterni exercitus reliquias collegit, statimque dux peritus exstitit. Illius magnus apud militem amor, magna apud omnes admiratio fuit; nullus ei labor tædio, nulla defatigatio molestiæ erat. Cibi vinique temperans, somni parvus, inter milites corpus exercebat. Cum alacribus saltu, cum velocibus cursu, cum validis luctâ certabat. Tùm ad Syllam iter intendit, non per loca devia, sed palàm incedens, tres hostium exercitus aut fudit, aut sibi adjunxit. Quem ubi Sylla ad se accedere audivit, egregiamque sub signis juventutem aspexit, desiliit ex equo, Pompeiumque salutavit imperatorem: deinceps ei venienti solebat assurgere de sellâ et caput aperire; quem honorem nemini nisi Pompeio tribuebat.

Transgressus indè in Africam Pompeius, Iarbam Numidiæ regem, qui Marii partibus favebat, bello persecutus est. Intra dies quadraginta hostem oppressit, et Africam subegit adolescens quatuor et viginti annorum. Tùm ei litteræ à Syllâ

RULES.

17. <i>Sum</i> , taken for <i>habeo</i> , (to have,) governs the dative of a person.	31. Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative.	44. The gerund in <i>dum</i> , of the nominative, with the verb <i>est</i> , governs the dative.	taking away, govern the accusative and dative.
18. <i>Sum</i> , taken for <i>affero</i> , (to bring,) governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.	32. <i>Misereor</i> , <i>miseresco</i> , and <i>salago</i> , govern the genitive.	45. The gerund in <i>di</i> , of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives.	58. Verbs of <i>asking</i> , and <i>teaching</i> , govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing.
19. The compounds of <i>Sum</i> , except <i>Possum</i> , govern the dative.	33. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has <i>to</i> , or <i>for</i> , after it in English.	46. The gerund in <i>do</i> , of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying <i>usefulness</i> , or <i>fitness</i> , &c.	59. Verbs of <i>loading</i> , <i>binding</i> , <i>clothing</i> , <i>depriving</i> , and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative.
20. Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when <i>quam</i> is omitted in Latin.	34. Verbs compounded with <i>satis</i> , <i>bene</i> , and <i>male</i> , govern the dative.	47. The gerund in <i>dum</i> , of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions <i>ad</i> , <i>ob</i> , <i>inter</i> , <i>ante</i> , <i>propter</i> .	60. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case.
21. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.	35. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, <i>præ</i> , <i>ad</i> , <i>con</i> , <i>sub</i> , <i>ante</i> , <i>post</i> , <i>ob</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>inter</i> , <i>super</i> , govern the dative.	48. The gerund in <i>do</i> , of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions <i>a</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>de</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>ex</i> , <i>in</i> ; or without a preposition, as the ablative of <i>cause</i> , <i>means</i> , or <i>manner</i> .	61. Impersonal verbs govern the dative.
22. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.	36. Verbs, signifying <i>to profit</i> , <i>hurt</i> , <i>favour</i> , <i>assist</i> , <i>command</i> , <i>obey</i> , <i>serve</i> , <i>resist</i> , <i>trust</i> , <i>threaten</i> , and <i>be angry with</i> , govern the dative.	49. The supine in <i>um</i> , is put after a verb of motion.	62. <i>Interest</i> and <i>referi</i> require the genitive.
23. The prepositions <i>ad</i> , <i>apud</i> , <i>ante</i> , &c. govern the accusative.	37. <i>Recordor</i> , <i>memini</i> , <i>reminiscor</i> , and <i>obliscor</i> , govern the accusative or genitive.	50. The supine in <i>u</i> , is put after an adjective.	63. <i>Miseret</i> , <i>penitet</i> , <i>pudet</i> , <i>laedet</i> , and <i>piget</i> , govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing.
24. The prepositions <i>a</i> , <i>ab</i> , &c. govern the ablative.	38. Verbs of <i>abounding</i> and <i>wanting</i> , govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive.	51. Nouns, signifying the price of a thing, are put in the ablative.	64. <i>Decet</i> , <i>delectat</i> , <i>juvat</i> , and <i>oportet</i> , govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood.
25. The prepositions <i>in</i> , <i>sub</i> , <i>super</i> , and <i>subter</i> , govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, <i>in</i> and <i>sub</i> govern the ablative; <i>super</i> and <i>subter</i> either the accusative or ablative.	39. <i>Ulor</i> , <i>abutor</i> , <i>fungor</i> , <i>fruo</i> , <i>potior</i> , <i>vescor</i> , and some others, govern the ablative.	52. Nouns, signifying the instrument, <i>cause</i> , <i>means</i> , or <i>manner</i> , are put in the ablative.	65. The name of a town, signifying the place <i>where</i> , or <i>in which</i> , if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative.
26. The interjections <i>O</i> , <i>heu</i> , <i>proh</i> , and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative.	40. A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition.	53. Nouns, signifying <i>measure</i> , or <i>distance</i> , are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.	66. The name of a town, signifying the place <i>whither</i> , is put in the accusative.
27. The interjections <i>hei</i> , and <i>væ</i> , govern the dative.	41. The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun.	54. Nouns, signifying the time <i>when</i> , are put in the ablative; those, <i>how long</i> , in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative.	67. The name of a town, signifying the place <i>whence</i> , or <i>through what place</i> , is put in the ablative.
28. The conjunctions <i>et</i> , <i>ac</i> , <i>alque</i> , <i>nec</i> , <i>aut</i> , <i>neque</i> , and some others, connect like cases and modes.	42. When <i>quod</i> , <i>quin</i> , <i>ut</i> , or <i>ne</i> , is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood.	55. Verbs of <i>accusing</i> , <i>condemning</i> , <i>admonishing</i> , and <i>acquitting</i> , govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.	68. <i>Domus</i> and <i>rus</i> , signifying the place <i>where</i> , are construed like the names of towns.
29. Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them.	43. Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived.	56. Verbs of <i>esteeming</i> , govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive, of the value.	69. A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute.
30. The conjunctions <i>ut</i> , <i>quo</i> , <i>licet</i> , &c. govern the subjunctive mood.		57. Verbs of <i>comparing</i> , <i>giving</i> , <i>declaring</i> , and	

mirantibus dixit: "Habenda est ad somnum culcita in quâ homo qui tantum debebat dormire potuit."

Exercitationes campestris equorum et armorum statim post bella civilia omisit, et ad pilam primò folliculumque transit: mox animi laxandi causâ, modò piscabatur hamo, modò talis nucibusque ludebat cum pueris minutis, quos facie et garrulitate amabiles undiquè conquirebat. Aleâ multum delectabatur; idque ei vitio datum est. Tandem afflictâ valetudine in Campaniam concessit, ubi remisso ad otium animo, nullo hilaritatis genere abstinit. Supremo vitæ die, petito speculo, capillum sibi comi iussit, et amicos circumstantes percontatus est num vitæ nimum satis commodè egisset; adjecit et solitam clausulam: "Edite strepitum, vosque omnes cum gaudio applaudite." Obiit Nolæ sextum et septuagesimum annum agens.

SALLUSTII CATILINA.

Omnis homines, qui sese student præstare cæteris animalibus, summâ opè niti decet vitam silentio ne transeant, veluti pecora, quæ natura prona atque ventri obedientia finxit. Sed nostra omnis vis in animo et corpore sita: animi imperio, corporis servitio, magis utimur. Alterum nobis cum dis, alterum cum belluis, commune est. Quo mihi rectius videtur ingenii quàm virium opibus gloriam quærere, et, quoniam vita ipsa quâ fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostrî quàm maxumè longam efficere: nam divitiarum et formæ gloria fluxa atque fragilis, virtus clara æternaque habetur.

Sed diù magnam inter mortalis certamen fuit, vine corporis, an virtute animi, res militaris magis procederet: nam et priusquàm incipias consulto, et, ubi consulueris, maturè factò opus est. Ita, utrumque per se indigens, alterum alterius auxilio veget.

Igitur initio reges (nam in terris nomen imperii id primum fuit) diversi; pars ingenium, alii corpus exercebant: etiam tùm vita hominum sine cupiditate agitabatur; sua cuique satis placebant. Postea verò, quum in Asia Cyrus; in Græcia Lacedæmonii et Athenienses, cœpère urbes atque nationes subigere, lubidinem dominandi causam belli habere, maxumam gloriam in maxumo imperio putare; tùm demùm periculo atque negotiis compertum est in bello plurimum ingenium posse.

Quòd si regum atque imperatorum animi virtus in pace ita uti in bello valeret, æqualibus atque constantius sese res humanæ haberent; neque aliud alio ferri, neque mutari ac misceri omnia, cerneret; nam imperium faciliè his artibus retinetur quibus initio partum est. Verum, ubi pro labore desidia, pro continentia et æquitate lubido atque superbia invasère, fortuna simul cum moribus immutatur. Ita imperium semper ad optimum quemque à minùs bono transfertur. Quæ homines arant, navigant, ædificant, virtuti omnia parent.

Sed multi mortales, dediti ventri atque somno, indocti incultique, vitam sicuti peregrinantes transegère: quibus, profectò contra naturam, corpus voluptati, anima oneri, fuit. Eorum ego vitam mortemque juxtà æstumo, quoniam de utrâque siletur. Verum enimverò is demum mihi vivere atque frui animâ videtur, qui, alio negotio intentus, præclari facinoris aut artis bonæ famam quærit. Sed in magnâ copiâ rerum alii natura iter ostendit.

Pulchrum est benè facere reipublicæ: etiam benè dicere haud absurdum est. Vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet: et qui fecère, et qui facta aliorum scripsère, multi laudantur. Ac mihi quidem, tametsi haud quaquam par gloria sequatur scriptorem et auctorem rerum, tamen imprimis arduum vidatur res gestas scribere: primum, quòd facta dictis sunt exæquanda; dehinc, quia plerique, quæ delicta reprehenderis, malevolentia et invidia dicta putant: ubi de magnâ virtute et gloria bonorum memores, quæ sibi quisque facilia factu putat, æquo animo accipit; supra ea, veluti ficta, pro falsis ducit.

Sed ego adolescentulus, initio, sicuti plerique, studio ad rempublicam latus sum; ibique mihi adversa multa fuère. Nam pro pudore, pro abstinentia, pro virtute, audacia, largitio, avaritia, vigeabant. Quæ tametsi animus aspernabatur, insolens malarum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia, imbecilla ætas ambitione corrupta tenebatur: ac me, cum ab reliquorum malis moribus dissentirem, nihilo minùs honoris cupido, eadem, quæ cæteros, famâ atque invidia vexabat.

Igitur, ubi animus ex multis miseriis atque periculis requièvit, et mihi reliquam æta-

tem à republicâ procul habendam decrevi, non fuit consilium secordiâ atque desidîâ bonum otium contere; neque verò agrum colendo, aut venando, servilibus officiis intentum, ætatem agere: sed, à quo incepto studio ambitio mala detinuerat, eodem regressus, statui res gestas populi Romani carptim, ut quæque memoriâ digna videbantur, perscribere; eò magis quod mihi à spe, metu, partibus reipublicæ, animus liber erat. Igitur de Catilinæ conjuratione, quàm verissimè potero, paucis absolvam: nam id facinus imprimis ego memorabile existimo, sceleris atque periculi novitate. De cuius hominis moribus pauca priùs explananda sunt, quàm initium narrandi faciam.

Lucius Catilina, nobili genere natus, fuit magnâ vi et animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque. Huic ab adolescentiâ bella intestina, cædes, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grata fuere; ibique juventutem suam exercuit. Corpus patiens inediæ, vigiliæ, algoris, suprâ quàm cuiquam credibile est. Animus audax, subdolos, varius; cuius rei libet simulator ac dissimulator; alieni adpetens, sui profusus; ardens in cupiditatibus: satis loquentiæ, sapientiæ parum. Vastus animus immoderata, incredibilia, nimis alta, semper cupiebat.

Hunc, post dominationem Lucii Sullæ, lubido maxuma invaserat reipublicæ capiundæ: neque, id quibus modis adsequeretur, dum sibi regnum pararet, quidquam pensi habebat. Agitabatur magis magisque in dies animus ferox inopiâ rei familiaris, et conscientiâ scelerum; quæ utraque his artibus auxerat quas suprâ memoravi. Incitabant prætereâ corrupti civitatis mores, quos pessuma ac diversa inter se mala, luxuria atque avaritia, vexabant.

Res ipsa hortari videtur, quoniam de moribus civitatis tempus admonuit, suprâ repetere; ac paucis instituta majorum, domi militiæque quomodo rempublicam habuerint, quantamque reliquerint, utque paulatim immutata, ex pulcherrimâ et optimâ, pessuma ac flagitiosissima facta sit, disserere.

E CICERONIS ORATIONIBUS.

IN CATILINAM.

Quousque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientiâ nostrâ? Quamdiu etiam furor iste tuus nos eludet? Quem ad finem sese effrænata jactabit audacia? Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium Palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, nihil timor populi, nihil consensus bonorum omnium, nihil hic munitissimus habendi senatus locus, nihil horum ora vultusque moverunt? Patere tua consilia non sentis? Constrictam jam omnium horum conscientiâ teneri conjurationem tuam non vides? quid proximâ, quid superiore nocte egeris, ubi fueris, quos convocaveris, quid consilii ceperis, quem nostrum ignorare arbitraris? O tempora, ô mores! Senatus hæc intelligit; consul videt: hic tamen vivit; vivit? Imò verò etiam in senatum venit: fit publici consilii particeps: notat et designat oculis ad cædem unumquemque nostrum. Nos autem viri fortes satisfacere reipubl. videmur; si istius furorem ac tela vitemus. Ad mortem te, Catilina, duci jussu consulis jampridem oportebat: in te conferri pestem istam, quam tu in nos omnes jamdiu machinaris.

Nihil agis, nihil moliris, nihil cogitas, quod ego non modò audiam, sed etiam videam, planèque sentiam. Recognosce tandem mecum illam superiorem noctem: jam intelles, multò me vigilare acrius ad salutem, quam te ad perniciem reipub. Dico te priori nocte venisse inter falcarios (non agam obscure) in M. Leccæ domum: convenisse eodem complures ejusdem amentitiæ scelerisque socios. Num negare audes? Quid taces? Convincam, si negas. Video enim esse hic in senatu quosdam, qui tecum unâ fuere. O dii immortales, ubinam gentium sumus? Quam reipub. habemus? In quâ urbe vivimus? Hic, hic sunt in nostro numero, P. C. in hoc orbis terræ sanctissimo gravissimoque consilio, qui de meo, nostrumque omnium interitu, qui de hujus urbis, atque adeò orbis terrarum exitio cogitent. Hosce ego video, consul, et de republicâ sententiam rogo: et quos ferro trucidari oportebat, eos aondum voce vulnero. Fuisti igitur apud Leccam eâ nocte, Catilina: distribuisti partes Italiæ: statuisti quò quemque proficisci placeret: delegisti quos Romæ relinqueres, quos tecum educeres: descripsisti urbis partes ad incendia: confirmasti te ipsum jam esse exiturum: dixisti paululum tibi esse etiam tum mori, quòd ego viverem. Reperti sunt duo equites Romani, qui te istâ curâ liberarent, et sese illâ ipsâ nocte paulò ante lucem me in meo lectulo interfecturos

pollicerentur. Hæc ego omnia, vix dum etiam coetu vestro dimisso; comperi: domum meam majoribus præsedibus munivi, atque firmavi: exclusi eos quos tu manè ad me salutatum miseris cum illi ipsi venissent; quos ego jam multis viris ad me venturos id temporis esse prædixeram. Quæ cum ita sint, Catilina, perge quod cœpisti: egredere aliquando ex urbe: patent portæ, proficiscere: nimium diu te imperatorem illa tua Manliana castra desiderant. Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos, si minis, quàm plurimos: purga urbem: magno me metu liberabis, dummodo inter me atque te murus intersit: nobiscum versari jam diutius non potes: Non feram, non patiar, non sinam. Magna diis immortalibus habenda est gratia, atque huic ipsi Jovi Statori, antiquissimo custodi hujus urbis, quòd hanc tam tetram, tam horribilem, tamque infestam reipublicæ pestem toties jam effugimus. Non est sæpius in uno homine salus summa periclitanda reipublicæ.

Quòd si ex tanto latrocinio iste unus tolletur, videbimur fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus curâ et metu esse relevati: periculum autem residet et erit inclusum penitus in venis atque in visceribus reipublicæ. Ut sæpe homines ægri morbo gravi cum æstu, febrique jactantur, si aquam gelidam biberint, primò relevari videntur; deinde multò gravius vehementiusque afficiuntur: si hic morbus, qui est in republicâ, relevatus istius poenâ, vehementius, vivis reliquis, ingravescet. Quare, P. C. secedant improbi, secernant se à bonis, unum in locum congregentur; muro denique, id quod sæpe jam dixi, secernantur à nobis: desinant insidiari domi suæ consuli, circumstare tribunal prætoris urbani, obsidere cum gladiis curiam, malleolos et faces, ad incendendam urbem, comparare: sit denique inscriptum in fronte uniuscujusque civis quid de republicâ sentiat. Polliceor vobis hoc, P. C. tantam in nobis Coss. fore diligentiam, tantam in vobis auctoritatem, tantam in equitibus Roman. virtutem, tantam in omnibus bonis consensionem ut Catilinæ profectionem omnia patefacta, illustrata, oppressa, vindicata esse videatis. Hisce omnibus, Catilina, cum summâ reipubl. salute, et cum tuâ peste, ac pernicië, cumque eorum exitio, qui se tecum omni scelere parricidiòque junxerunt, proficiscere ad impium bellum, ac nefarium. Tum tu, Jupiter, qui iisdem, quibus hæc urbs, auspiciis à Romulo es constitutus, quem Statorem hujus urbis atque imperii verè nominamus, hunc et hujus socios à tuis aris cæterisque templis, à tectis urbis ac mœnibus, à vitâ fortunisque civium omnium arcebis; et omnes inimicos bonorum, hostes patriæ, latrones Italiæ, scelereum foedere inter se, ac nefariâ societate conjunctos, æternis suppliciis vivos mortuòsque mactabis.

IN CATILINAM II.

Instruite nunc, Quirites, contra has tam præclaras Catilinæ copias vestra præsidia vetròsque exercitus; et primùm gladiatori illi confecto et saucio, consules, imperatoresque vestros opponite: deinde contra illam naufragorum ejectam ac debilitatam manum, florem totius Italiæ ac robor educite. Jam verò urbes coloniarum ac municipiorum respondebunt Catilinæ tumulis silvestribus. Neque verò cæteras copias, ornamenta, præsidia vestra, cum illius latronis inopiâ atque egestate debeo conferre. Sed omissis his rebus omnibus, quibus nos suppeditamur, eget ille senatu, equitibus Romanis, populo, urbe, ærario, vectigalibus, cunctâ Italiâ, provinciis omnibus, exteris nationibus: si, inquam, his rebus omissis, ipsas causas, quæ inter se configunt, contendere velimus: ex eo ipso, quàm valde illi jaceant, intelligere possumus. Ex hac enim parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia: hinc pudicitia, illinc stuprum: hinc fides, illinc fraudatio: hinc pietas, illinc scelus: hinc constantia, illinc furor: hinc honestas, illinc turpitude: hinc continentia, illinc libido: denique æquitas, temperantia, fortitudo, prudentia, virtutes omnes, certant cum iniquitate, cum luxuriâ, cum ignaviâ, cum temeritate, cum vitiis omnibus: postremò copia cum egestate, bona ratio cum perditâ, mens sana cum amentia, bona denique spes cum omnium rerum desperatione configit. In hujuscemodi certamine ac prælio, nōne, etiamsi hominum studia deficiant, dii ipsi immortales cogent ab his præclarissimis virtutibus tot et tanta vitia superari? Quæ cum ita sint, Quirites, vos, quemadmodum jam antea dixi, vestra tecta custodiis vigiliisque defendite: mihi, ut urbi sine vestro motu, ac sine ullo tumultu satis esset præsedii, consultum ac provium est.

IN CATILINAM III.

Hic quis potest esse, Quirites, tam aversus à vero, tam præceps, tam mente captus, qui neget, hæc omnia quæ videmus, præcipuè hanc urbem, deorum immortalium

nutu atque potestate administrari? Etenim cùm esset ita responsum, cædes, incendia, interitumque reipublicæ comparari et ea à perditis civibus: quæ tum propter magnitudinem scelerum nonnullis incredibilia videbantur; ea non modò cogitata à nefariis civibus, verùm etiam suscepta esse sensistis. Illud verò nōne ita præsens est, ut nutu Jovis optimi maximi factum esse videatur? ut, cùm hodierno die manè per forum meo jussu et conjurati et eorum indices in ædem Concordiæ ducerentur; eo ipso tempore signum statueretur; quo collocato, atque ad vos senatūque converso, omnia et senatus, et vos, quæ erant contra salutem omnium cogitata illustrata, et patefacta, vidistis? Quo etiam majore sunt isti odio supplicioque digni, qui non solum vestris domiciliis atque tectis; sed etiam deorum templis, atque delubris sunt funestos ac nefarios ignes inferre conati? quibus ego si me restitisse dicam, nimium mihi sumam, et non sîm ferendus: ille, ille Jupiter restitit; ille Capitolium, ille hæc templa, ille hanc urbem, ille vos omnes salvos esse voluit. Diis ego immortalibus cûcibus hanc mentem, Quirites, voluntatēque suscepi, atque ad hæc tanta indicia perveni.

Quibus pro tantis rebus, Quirites, nullum ego à vobis præmium virtutis, nullum in-signis honoris, nullum monumentum laudis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam sempiternam. In animis ego vestris omnes triumphos meos, omnia ornamenta honoris, monumenta gloriæ, laudis insignia, condi et collocari volo. Nihil me mutum potest delectare, nihil tacitum, nihil denique hujusmodi, quod etiam minus digni assequi possint. Memoriam vestrā, Quirites, nostræ res alentur, sermonibus crescent, literarum monumentis inveterascent et corroborabuntur: eandemque diem intelligo, quam spero æternam fore, et ad salutem urbis, et ad memoriam consulatûs mei propagatam: unòque tempore in hac republ. duos cives extitisse, quorum alter fines vestri imperii, non terræ sed cæli regionibus terminaret; alter ejusdem imperii domicilium sedemque servaret. Sed quoniam earum rerum, quas ego gessi, non est eadem fortuna, atque conditio, quæ illorum, qui externa bella gesserunt; quòd mihi vivendum sit cum illis quos vici ac subegi; illi hostes aut interfectos aut oppressos reliquerunt: vestrum est, Quirites, si cæteris recta sua facta prosunt, mihi mea ne quando obsint providere. Mentes enim hominum audacissimorum sceleratæ ac nefariæ ne vobis nocere possent, ego providi; ne mihi noceant, vestrum est providere.

IN CATILINAM IV.

Video, P. C. in me omnium vestrum ora atque oculos esse conversos: video vos non solum de vestro, ac reipublicæ, verùm etiam, si id depulsum sit, de meo periculo esse sollicitos. Est mihi jucunda in malis, grata in dolore, vestra erga me voluntas: sed eam, per deos immortales, quæso, deponite, atque oblii salutis meæ, de vobis ac de liberis vestris cogitare. Mihi quidem si hæc conditio consulatûs data est, ut omnes acerbitates, omnes dolores cruciatûsque perferrem; feram non solum fortiter, sed etiam libenter; dummodo, meis laboribus, vobis populòque Romano, dignitas salûsque pariat. Ego sum ille consul, P. C. cui non forum, in quo omnis æquitas continetur; non campus, consularibus auspiciis consecratus, non curia, summum auxilium omnium gentium; non domus, commune perflugium; non lectus, ad quietem datus; non denique hæc sedes honoris, sella curulis, unquam vacua mortis periculo atque insidiis fuit. Ego multa tacui, multa pertuli, multa concessi, multa meo quodam dolore in vestro timore sanavi. Nunc si hunc exitum consulatûs mei dii immortales esse voluerunt, ut vos, P. C. populūque Romanum ex cæde miserā, conjuges liberòsque vestros, virginésque Vestales ex acerbissimā vexatione; templa, atque delubra, hanc pulcherriman patriam omnium nostrum ex foedissimā flammā; totam Italiam ex bello et vastitate eriperem: quæcunque mihi uni proponetur fortuna, subeat. Etenim si P. Lentulus suum nomen inductus à vatibus, fatale ad perniciem reipubl. fore putavit; cur ego non læter, meum consulatum ad salutem reipubl. prope fatalem exstitisse? Quare, P. C. consulite vobis, prospicite patriæ; conservate vos, conjuges, liberos, fortunâsque vestras; populi Romani nomen, salutēque defendite; mihi parcere, ac de me cogitare definite. Nam primum deo sperare, omnes deos, qui huic urbi præsident, pro eo mihi, ac mereor, relatores gratiam esse: deinde si quid obtigerit, æquo animo paratòque moriar; neque enim turpis mors forti viro, potest *accidere; neque immatura consulari, nec misera sapienti.*

Quæ cùm ita sint, Patres conscripti, pro imperio, pro exercitu, pro provinciâ, quam

neglexi; pro triumpho, cæterisque laudis insignibus, quæ sunt à me propter urbis vestraeque salutis custodiam repudiata, pro clientelis, hospitibusque provincialibus, quæ tamen urbanis opibus non minore labore tueor, quàm comparo: pro his igitur omnibus rebus, et pro meis in vos singularibus studiis, pròque hæc, quam conspiciatis, ad conservandam rempubl. diligentia, nihil aliud à vobis, nisi hujus temporis totiusque mei consulatus memoriam postulo; quæ dum erit vestris mentibus infixæ, firmissimo me muro septum esse arbitror. Quòd si meam spem vis improborum sefellerit, atque superaverit; commendo vobis parvum meum filium: cui profectò satis erit præsidii, non solum ad salutem, verum etiam ad dignitatem, si ejus, qui hæc omnia suo solus periculo conservaverit, illum esse filium memineritis. Quapropter de summâ salute vestra populi que Romani, P. C. de vestris conjugibus ac liberis, de aris ac focus, de fanis ac templis, de totius urbis tectis ac sedibus, de imperio, de libertate, de salute Italiæ, deque universâ republicâ decernite diligenter, ut instituistis, ac fortiter. Habetis enim consulem, qui et parere vestris decretis non dubitet; et ea quæ statueritis, quoad vivet, defendere, et per seipsum præstare possit.

PRO LEGE MANILIA.

Quanquam mihi semper frequens conspectus vester multò jucundissimus, hic autem locus ad agendum amplissimus, ad dicendum ornatissimus est visus, Quirites: tamen hoc aditu laudis, qui semper optimo cuique maximè patuit, non mea me voluntas, sed meæ vitæ rationes ab ineunte ætate susceptæ prohibuerunt. Nam cum antea per ætatem nondum hujus auctoritatem loci contingere auderem, statueremque, nihil huc nisi perfectum ingenio, elaboratum industriâ afferri oportere, omne meum tempus amicorum temporibus transmittendum putavi. Ita neque hic locus vacuus unquam fuit ab iis qui vestram causam defenderent; et meus labor in privatorum periculis castè integrèque versatus, ex vestro judicio fructum est amplissimum consecutus. Nam cum propter dilationem comitiorum ter prætor primus centuriis cunctis renuntiatus sum, facilè intellexi, Quirites, et quid de me judicaretis, et quid aliis præscriberetis. Nunc cum et auctoritatis in me tantum sit, quantum vos honoribus mandandum esse voluistis: et ad agendum facultatis tantum, quantum homini vigilanti ex forensi usu prope quotidiana dicendi exercitatio potuit afferre: certè et si quid auctoritatis in me est, eâ apud eos utar, qui eam mihi dederunt; et si quid etiam dicendo consequi possum: iis ostendam potissimum, qui ei quoque rei fructum suo judicio tribuendum esse censuerunt. Atque illud imprimis mihi lætandum jure esse video, quòd in hæc insolitâ mihi ex hoc loco ratione dicendi, causa talis oblata est, in quâ oratio nemini deesse potest. Dicendum est enim de Cn. Pompeii singulari eximiâque virtute. Hujus autem orationis difficilior est exitum, quàm principium invenire. Itaque non mihi tam copia, quàm modus in dicendo quærendus est.

Utinam, Quirites, virorum fortium, atque innocentium, copiam tantam haberetis, ut hæc vobis deliberatio difficilis esset, quemnam potissimum tantis rebus ac tanto bello præficiendum putaretis. Nunc verò cum sit unus Cn. Pompeius, qui non modò eorum hominum, qui nunc sunt, gloriam, sed etiam antiquitatis memoriam virtute superâr; quæ res est, quæ cujusquam animum in hæc causâ dubium facere possit? Ego enim sic existimo, in summo imperatore quatuor has res inesse oportere, scientiam rei militaris, virtutem, auctoritatem, felicitatem. Quis igitur hoc homine scientior unquam aut fuit, aut esse debuit? qui è ludo, atque pueritiæ disciplinâ, bello maximo, atque acerrimis hostibus, ad patris exercitum, atque in militiæ disciplinam, profectus est, qui extremâ pueritiâ miles fuit summi imperatoris; ineunte adolescentiâ maximi ipse exercitus imperator: qui sæpius cum hoste conflixit, quàm quisquam cum inimico concertavit; plura bella gessit, quàm cæteri legerunt; plures provincias confecit quàm alii concupiverunt: cujus adolcentia ad scientiam rei militaris non, alienis præceptis, sed suis imperiis; non offensionibus belli, sed victoriis; non stipendiis, sed triumphis, est traducta. Quod denique genus belli esse potest, in quo illum non exercuerit fortuna reipublicæ? Civile, Africanum, Transalpinum, Hispaniense, mistum ex civitatibus, atque ex bellicosissimis nationibus, servile, navale bellum; varia et diversa genera, et bellorum, et hostium, non solum gesta ab hoc uno, sed etiam confecta, nullam rem esse declarant in usu militari positam, quæ hujus viri scientiam fugere possit. Jam verò virtuti Cn. Pompeii quæ potest par oratio inveniri? Quid est quod quisquam aut dignum illo, aut vobis novum, aut cuiquam inauditum possit afferre? Non enim illæ sunt solæ virtutes im-

peratoris quæ vulgò existimantur, labor in negotiis, fortitudo in periculis, industria in agendo, celeritas in conficiendo, consilium in providendo; quæ tanta sunt in hoc uno, quanta in omnibus reliquis imperatoribus, quos aut vidimus, aut audivimus, non fuerunt. Testis est Italia, quam ille ipse victor L. Sulla hujus virtute et consilio confectus est liberatam: testis est Sicilia, quam multis undique cinctam periculis, non terrore belli, sed celeritate consilii explicavit: testis est Africa, quæ magnis oppressa hostium copis, eorum ipsorum sanguine redundavit: testis est Gallia, per quam legionibus nostris in Hispaniam iter Gallorum internecione patefactum est: testis est Hispania, quæ sæpissimè plurimos hostes ab hoc superatos prostratosque conspexit: testis est iterum et sæpius Italia, quæ cum servili bello tetro periculosoque premeretur, ab hoc auxilium absente expetivit: quod bellum expectatione Pompeii attenuatum atque imminutum est; adventu sublatum ac sepultum: testes verò jam omnes oræ, atque omnes exteræ gentes ac nationes; denique maria omnia tum universa, tum in singulis oris omnes sinus, atque portus.

PRO ARCHIA POETA.

Siquid est in me ingenii, judices, quod sentio quàm sit exiguum; aut si qua exercitatio dicendi, in quâ me non inficior mediocriter esse versatum; aut si hujusce rei ratio aliqua ab optimarum artium studiis et disciplinâ profecta, à quâ ego nullum confiteor ætatis meæ tempus abhorruisse: earum rerum omnium vel imprimis hîc A. Licinius fructum à me repetere propè suo jure debet: Nam quoad longissimè potest mens mea respicere spatium præteriti temporis, et pueritiæ memoriam recordari ultimam, inde usque repetens, hunc video mihi principem et ad suscipiendam et ad ingrediendam rationem horum studiorum extitisse. Quod si hæc vox, hujus hortatu præceptisque conformata, nonnullis aliquando sakti fuit: à quo id accepimus quo cæteris optulari et alios servare possemus, huic profectò ipsi, quantum est situm in nobis, et opem et salutem ferre debemus. Ac ne quis à nobis hoc ita dici fortè miretur, quod alia quædam in hoc facultas sit ingenii, neque hæc dicendi ratio aut disciplina: ne nos quidem huic cuncti studio penitus unquam dediti fuimus. *Etenim omnes artes, quæ ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum; et quasi cognatione quâdam inter se continentur.*

Quæres à nobis, Gracche, cur tantopere hoc homine delectemur; quia suppeditat nobis, ubi et animus ex hoc forensi strepitu reficiatur, et aures convicio defessæ conquiescant. *An tu existimas, aut suppetere nobis posse, quod quotidie dicamus in tantâ varietate rerum, nisi animos nostros doctrinâ excolumus; aut ferre animos tantam posse contentionem, nisi eos doctrinâ eadem relaxemus?* Ego verò fateor, me his studiis esse deditum: Cæteros pudeat, si qui ita se literis abdiderunt, ut nihil possint ex his neque ad communem afferre fructum, neque in aspectum lucemque proferre. Me autem quid pudeat? qui tot annos ita vixi, judices, ut ab illis nullo me unquam tempore, aut commodum, aut otium meum abstraxerit, aut voluptas avocârit, aut denique somnus retardârit. Quare quis tandem me reprehendat, aut quis mihi jure succenseat, si quantum cæteris ad suas res obeundas, quantum ad festos dies ludorum celebrandos, quantum ad alias voluptates, et ad ipsam requiem animi et corporis conceditur temporis, quantum alii tribuunt intempestivis conviviis, quantum denique aleæ, quantum pilæ; tantum mihi egomet ad hæc studia recolenda sumpsero? Atque hoc ad eò mihi concedendum est magis: quod ex his studiis hæc quoque crescit oratio et facultas: quæ quantacunque in me est, nunquam amicorum periculis defuit. Quæ si cui levior videtur; illa quidem certè, quæ summa sunt, ex quo fonte hauriam, sentio. Nam nisi multorum præceptis multisque literis mihi ab adolescentiâ suasissem, nihil esse in vitâ magnopere expetendum, nisi laudem atque honestatem; in eâ autem prosequendâ omnes cruciatus corporis, omnia pericula mortis atque exilii, parvi esse ducenda nunquam me pro salute vestrà in tot et tantas dimicationes, atque in hos profligatorum hominum quotidianos impetus objecissem. Sed pleni omnes sunt libri, plenæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas; quæ jacerent in tenebris omnia, nisi literarum lumen accederat. Quàm multas nobis imagines, non solum ad intuum, verum etiam ad imitandum, fortissimorum virorum expressas, scriptores, et Græci, et Latini reliquunt? quas ego mihi semper in administrandâ repub. proponens, animum et mentem ipsâ cogitatione hominum excellentium conformabam. Quæret quispiam: Quid?

illi ipsi summi viri, quorum virtutes literis proditæ sunt istâne doctrinâ, quem tu laudibus effers, eruditi fuerunt? Difficile est hoc de omnibus confirmare; sed tamen est certum, quid respondeam. Ego multos homines excellenti animo ac virtute fuisse, et sine doctrinâ, naturæ ipsius habitu propè divinò, per seipsos, et moderatos, et graves extitisse fateor: etiam illud adjungo, sæpius ad laudem atque virtutem, naturam sine doctrinâ, quàm sine naturâ valuisse doctrinam. Atque idem ego contendo, cum ad naturam eximiam atque illustrem accesserit ratio quædam confirmatiôque doctrinæ; tum illud nescio quid præclarum ac singulare solere existere.

Quòd si non hic tantus fructus ostenderetur, et si ex his studiis delectatio sola peteretur: tamen ut opinor, hanc animi remissionem humanissimam ac liberalissimam judicaretis. Nam cæteræ neque temporum sunt, neque ætatum omnium, neque locorum. *Hæc studia adolescentiam alunt, senectutem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium ac solatium præbent; delectant domi, non impediunt foris: pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur.* Quòd si ipsi hæc neque attingere, neque sensu nostro gustare possemus; tamen ea mirari deberemus, etiam cum in aliis videremus. Quis nostrum tam animo agresti ac duro fuit, ut Roscii morte nupèr non commoveretur? qui cum esset senex mortuus; tamen propter excellentem artem, ac venustatem videbatur omnino mori non debuissè. Ergo ille corporis motu tantum amorem sibi conciliârat à nobis omnibus: nos animorum incredibiles motus celeritatèque ingeniorum negligemus? Quoties ego hunc Archiam vidi, iudices (utar enim vestrâ benignitate: quoniam me in hoc novo genere dicendi tam diligenter attenditis) quoties ego hunc vidi, cum literam scripssisset nullam, magnum numerum optimorum versuum de his ipsis rebus, quæ tum agerentur, dicere ex tempore? quoties revocatum eandem rem dicere commutatis verbis atque sententiis? quæ verò accuratè cogitatèque scripssisset, ea sic vidi probari, ut ad veterum scriptorum laudem pervenirent. Hunc ego non diligam? non admirer? non omni oratione defendendum putem? Atqui sic à summis nominibus eruditissimisque accepimus, cæterarum rerum studia, et doctrinâ et præceptis, et arte constare; poëtam naturâ ipsâ valere, et mentis viribus excitari, et quasi divino quodam spiritu afflari. Quare suo jure noster ille Ennius sanctos appellat poëtas, quòd quasi deorum aliquo dono atque munere commendati nobis esse videantur. Sit igitur, iudices, sanctum apud vos humanissimos homines hoc poëtæ nomen, quod nulla unquam barbaria violavit. Saxa et solitudines voce respondent, bestiæ sæpe immanes cantu flectuntur atque consistunt: nos instituti rebus optimis non poëtarum voce moveamur? Homerum Colephonii civem esse dicunt suum, Chii vindicant, Salaminii repetunt, Smyrnæi verò suum esse confirmant: itaque etiam delubrum ejus in oppido dedicaverunt: permulti alii præterea pugnant inter se, atque contendunt. Ergo illi alienum, quia poëta fuit, post mortem etiam expetunt: nos hunc vivum, qui et voluntate et legibus noster est, repudiabimus? præsertim, cum omne olim studium, atque omne ingenium contulerit Archias ad pop. Rom. gloriam laudèmq; celebrandam.

Quàm multos scriptores rerum suarum magnus ille Alexander secum habuisse dicitur? Atque is tamen, cum in Sigæo ad Achillis tumulum adstitisset, O fortunate, inquit, adulescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem inveniris! et verè. Nam nisi Ilias extitisset illa; idem tumulus, qui corpus ejus contexerat, nomen etiam obruisset.

Neque enim est hoc dissimulandum, quod obscurari non potest, sed præ nobis ferendum: *trahimur omnes laudis studio, et optimus quisque maxime gloriâ ducitur.* Ipsi illi Philosophi, etiam in illis libellis, quos de contemnendâ gloriâ scribunt, nomen suum inscribunt, in eo ipso, in quo predicationem nobilitatèmq; dispiciunt, prædicari se ac nominari volunt. Decimus quidem Brutus, summus ille vir, et imperator, Attii amicissimi sui carminibus templorum ac monumentorum aditus exornavit suorum. Jam verò ille, qui cum Ætolis, Ennio comite, bellavit Fulvius, non dubitavit Martis manubias musis consecrare. Quare in quâ urbe imperatores prope armati poëtarum nomen et musarum delubra coluerunt, in eâ non debent togati iudices à musarum honore et à poëtarum salute abhorreere. Atque ut id libentiùs faciatis, jam me vobis, iudices, indicabo, et de meo quodam amore gloriæ, nimis acri fortasse, veruntamen honesto, vobis confitebor. Nam quas res nos in consulatu nostro vobiscum simul pro salute hujus urbis atque imperii, et pro vitâ civium, pròque universâ rep. gessimus, attingit hic versibus, atque inchoavit. Quibus auditis, quòd mihi magna res et jucunda visa est, hæc ad perficiendum hortatus sum.

EX OVIDII OPERIBUS.

PYRAMUS ET THISBE

Pyramus et Thisbe, juvenum pulcherrimus alter,
 Altera, quas oriens habuit, pæclatâ puellis,
 Contiguas tenuere domos; ubi dicitur altam
 Cœtilibus muris cinxisse Sēmirānis urbem.
 Notitiam primosque gradus vicinia fecit;
 Tempore crevit amor: tædæ quoque jure cōissent;
 Sed vetuere patres. Quod non potuere vetare,
 Ex æquo captis ardebant mentibus ambo.
 Conscius omnis abest. Nutu, signisque loquuntur.
 Quoque magis tegitur, tectus magis æstuat ignis.
 Fissus erat tenui rimâ, quam duxerat olim
 Cum fieret, paries domui communis utrique.
 Id vitium, nulli per secula longa notatum,
 (Quid non sentit amor?) primi sensitis amantes,
 Et voci fecistis iter:—tutæque per illud
 Murmure blanditiæ minimo transire solebant.
 Sæpe ut constiterant, hinc Thisbe, Pyramus illinc;
 Inque vicem fuerat captatus anhelitus oris;
 Invide, dicebant, paries, quid amantibus obstat?
 Quantum erat, ut sineres nos toto corpore jungi!
 Aut hoc si nimium, vel ad oscula danda pateres!
 Nec sumus ingrati: tibi nos debere fatemur,
 Quod datus est verbis ad amicas transitus aures.
 Talia diversa nequicquam sede locuti;
 Sub noctem dixere Vale: partique dedere
 Oscula quisque suæ, non pervenientia contra.
 Postera nocturnos Aurora removerat ignes,
 Solque pruinosas radiis siccaverat herbas:
 Ad solitum cœiere locum. Tum murmure parvo
 Multa prius questi, statuunt ut nocte silenti
 Fallere custodes, forisbusque excedere tentent:
 Cūmq; domo exierint, urbis quoque tecta relinquunt:
 Neve sit errandum lato spatiantibus arvo;
 Conveniant ad busta Nini: lateantque sub umbrâ
 Arboris. Arbor ibi niveis uberrima pomis
 Ardua morus erat, gelido contermina fonti.
 Pacta placent: et lux tardè discedere visa
 Præcipitatur aquis, et aquis nox surgit ab isdem.
 Callida per tenebras, versato cardine, Thisbe
 Egreditur, fallitque suos; adopertaque vultum
 Pervenit ad tumulum; dictaque sub arbore sedit.
 Audacem faciebat amor. Venit ecce recenti
 Cæde læna boum spumantes oblita rictus,
 Depositura sitim vicini fontis in undâ;
 Quam procul ad lunæ radios Babylonia Thisbe
 Vidit, et obscurum timido pede fugit in antrum.
 Dumque fugit, tergo velamina lapsa relinquit.
 Ut lea sæva sitim multâ compescuit undâ,
 Dum redit in sylvas, inventos fortè sine ipsâ
 Ore cruentato tenues laniavit amictus.
 Seriùs egressus vestigia vidit in alto
 Pulvere certa feræ, totoque expalluit ore
 Pyramus. Ut verò vestem quoque sanguine tinctam
 Repperit; Una duos nox, inquit, perdet amantes:
 E quibus illa fuit longâ dignissima vitâ.

Nostra nocens anima est. Ego te, miseranda, peremi.
 In loca plena metûs qui jussi nocte venires;
 Nec prior huc veni. Nostrum divellite corpus,
 Et scelerata fero consumite viscera morsu,
 O quicumque sub hâc habitatis rupe, leones. 60
 Sed timidi est optare necem. Velamina Thisbes
 Tollit, et ad pactæ secum fert arboris umbram.
 Utque dedit notæ lachrymas, dedit oscula vesti,
 Accipe nunc, inquit, nostri quoque sanguinis haustus;
 Quoque erat accinctus, demittit in ilia ferrum. 65
 Nec mora; ferventi moriens e vulnere traxit.
 Ut jacuit resupinus humi, cruor emicat altè;
 Non aliter, quàm cùm vitiato fistula plumbo
 Scinditur, et tennes stridente foramine longè
 Ejaculatur aquas, at ictibus aëra rumpit. 70
 Arborei foetus aspergine cædis ne atram
 Vertuntur faciem: madefactaque sanguine radix
 Puniceo tingit pendentia mora colore.
 Ecce, metu nondum posito, ne fallat amantem,
 Illa redit; juvenemque oculis, animoque requirit;
 Quantaque vitârit narrare pericula gestit. 75
 Utque locum, et versam cognovit in arbore formam;
 (Sec facit incertam pomi color) hæret an hæc sit.
 Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsare cruentum
 Membra solum; retroque pedem tulit; oraque buxo 80
 Pallidiora gerens, exhorruit æquoris instar,
 Quod fremit exiguâ cùm summum stringitur aura.
 Sed postquàm remorata suos cognovit amores;
 Percutit indignos clâro plangore lacertos:
 Et laniata comas, amplexaque corpus amatum, 85
 Vulnere supplevit lacrymis: fletumque cruori
 Miscuit; et gelidis in vultibus oscula figens,
 Pyrame, clamavit, quis te mihi casus ademit?
 Pyrame, responde. Tua te, carissime, Thisbe
 Nominat. Exaudi; vultusque attolle jacentes. 90
 Ad nomen Thisbes oculos jam morte gravatos
 Pyramus erexit, visâque recondidit illâ.
 Quæ postquam vestemque suam cognovit, et ense
 Vidit ebur vacuum; tua te manus, inquit, amorque
 Perdidit, infelix. Est et mihi fortis in unum 95
 Hoc manus; est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vires.
 Persequar extinctum; lethique miserrima dicar
 Causa, comesque tui: quique a me morte revelli
 Heu solâ poteras, poteris nec morte revelli.
 Hoc tamen amborum verbis estote rogati, 100
 O multum miserieque mei, illiusque parentes,
 Ut, quos certus amor, quos hora novissima junxit,
 Componi tumulo non invideatis eodem.
 At tu, quæ ramis arbôr miserabile corpus
 Nunc tegis unius, mox es tectura duorum; 105
 Signa tene cædis; pullosque et luctibus aptos
 Semper habe foetus gemini monumenta cruoris.
 Dixit; et aptato pectus mucrone sub inum
 Incubuit ferro; quod ahuc a cæde tepebat.
 Vota tamen tetigère deos, tetigère parentes. 110
 Nam color in pomo est, ubi permaturuit, ater;
 Quodque rogis superest, unâ requiescit in urnâ.

EX VIRGILII OPERIBUS.

GEOR. II. 450.

O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona nôrint
 Agricolas, quibus ipsa, procul discordibus armis,
 Fundit humo facilem victum justissima tellus!
 Si non ingentem foribus domus alta superbis
 Manè salutantum totis vomit ædibus undam,
 Nec varios inhiant pulchrâ testudine postes,
 Illusasque auro vestes, Ephyreïaque æra;
 Alba neque Assyrio fucatur lana veneno,
 Nec casiâ liquidi corrumpitur usus olivi:
 At secura quies, et nescia fallere vita,
 Dives opum variarum; at latis otia fundis,
 Speluncæ, vivique lacus; at frigida Tempe,
 Mugitusque bouum, mollesque sub arbore somni,
 Non absunt; illic saltus ac lustra ferarum,
 Et patiens operum exiguoque assueta juvenus,
 Sacra Deûm, sanctique patres: extrema per illos
 Justitia excedens terris vestigia fecit.

Me verò primùm dulces ante omnia musæ,
 Quarum sacra fero ingenti percussus amore,
 Accipiant; coelique vias et sidera monstrent,
 Defectus solis varios, lunæque labores;
 Unde tremor terris; quâ vi maria alta tumescant
 Objicibus ruptis, rursusque in seipsa residant;
 Quid tantum oceano properent se tingere soles
 Hiberni, vel quæ tardis mora noctibus obstet.
 Sin, has ne possim naturæ accedere partes,
 Frigidus obstiterit circum præcordia sanguis;
 Rura mihi et rigui placeant in vallibus amnes;
 Flumina amem silvasque inglorius. O ubi campi,
 Spercheusque, et virginibus bacchata Lacænis
 Taygeta! O qui me gelidis in vallibus Hæmi
 Sistat, et ingenti ramorum protegat umbra!

Felix, qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas,
 Atque metus omnes et inexorabile fatum
 Subjecit pedibus, strepitumque Acherontis avari!
 Fortunatus et ille deos qui novit agrestes,
 Panaque, Silvanumque senem, Nymphasque sorores!
 Illum non populi fascès, non purpura regum
 Flexit, et infidos agitans discordia fratres,
 Aut conjurato descendens Dacus ab Histro;
 Non res Romanæ, perituraque regna: neque ille
 Aut doluit miserans inopem, aut invidit habenti.
 Quos rami fructus, quos ipsa volentia rura
 Sponte tulere suâ, carpsit; nec ferrea jura,
 Insanumque forum, aut populi tabularia vidit.

Solicitant alii remis freta cæca, ruuntque
 In ferrum, penetrant aulas et limina regum:
 Hic petit excidiis urbem miserosque penates,
 Ut gemmâ bibat, et Sarrano indormiat ostro:
 Condit opes alius, defossoque incubat auro:
 Hic stupet attonitus rostris: hunc plausus hiantem
 Per cuneos geminatus enim plebisque patrumque
 Corripuit: gaudent perfusi sanguine fratrum,
 Exsilioque domos et dulcia limina mutant,
 Atque alio patriam quærunt sub sole jacentem.

Agricola incurvo terram dimovit aratro :
 Hinc anni labor ; hinc patriam parvosque nepotes
 Sustinet ; hinc armenta boum meritosque iuvenços.
 Nec requies quin aut pomis exuberat annus,
 Aut fetu pecorum, aut cerealis mergite culmi,
 Proventuque oneret sulcos, atque horrea vincat.

Venit hiems ; teritur Sicÿonia bacca trapetis ;
 Glande sues læti redeunt ; dant arbuta silvæ ;
 Et varjos ponit fetus autumnus, et altè
 Mitis in apricis coquitur vindemia saxis.
 Interea dulces pendent circum oscula nati ;
 Casta pudicitiam servat domus ; ubera vaccæ
 Lactea demittunt ; pinguesque in gramine læto
 Inter se adversis luctantur cornibus hædi.

Ipse dies agitat festos ; fususque per herbam,
 Ignis ubi in medio, et socii cratera coronant,
 Te libans, Lenæe, vocat ; pecorisque magistris
 Velocis jaculi certamina ponit in ulmo ;
 Corporaque agresti nudant prædura palæstrâ.

Hanc olim veteres vitam coluere Sabini,
 Hanc Remus et frater ; sic fortis Etruria crevit
 Scilicet, et rerum facta est pulcherrima Roma,
 Septemque una sibi muro circumdedit arces.
 Ante etiam sceptrum Dictæ regis, et antè
 Impia quàm cæcis gens epulata juvencis,
 Aureus hanc vitam in terris Saturnus agebat.
 Necdum etiam audierant inflari classica, necdum
 Impositos duris crepitare incudibus enses.

Sed nos immensum spatiis confecimus æquor ;
 Et jam tempus equûm fumantia solvere colla.

GEOR. IV. 149.

Nunc age, naturas apibus quas Jupiter ipse
 Addidit expediam : pro quâ mercede, canoros
 Curetum sonitus crepitantiaque æra secutæ,
 Dictæo cœli regem pavère sub antro.
 Solæ communes natos, consortia tecta
 Urbis habent, magnisque agitant sub legibus ævum :
 Et patriam solæ, et certos novère penates :
 Venturæque hiemis memores, æstate laborem
 Experiuntur, et in medium quæsitâ reponunt.
 Namque aliæ victu invigilant, et fœdere pacto
 Exercentur agris : pars intra sæpta domorum
 Narcissi lacrymam, et lentum de cortice gluten,
 Prima favis ponunt fundamina ; deinde tenaces
 Suspendunt ceras ; aliæ, spem gentis, adultos
 Educunt fetus : aliæ purissima mella
 Stipant, et liquido distendant nectare cellas.
 Sunt, quibus ad portas cecidit custodia sorti :
 Inque vicem speculantur aquas et nubila cœli ;
 Aut onera accipiunt venientum ; aut agmine facto,
 Ignavum fucos pecus a præsepibus arcent.
 Fervet opus, redolentque thymo fragrantia mella :
 Ac velati lentis Cyclopes fulmina massis
 Quum properant, alii taurinis follibus auras
 Accipiunt, redduntque, alii stridentia tingunt
 Aëra lacu ; gemit impositis incudibus Ætna :
 Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt
 In numerum, versantque tenaci forcipe ferrum.

Non aliter, si parva licet componere magnis,
 Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi,
 Munere quamque suo. Grandævis oppida curæ,
 Et munire favos, et Dædala fingere tecta.
 At fessæ multâ referunt se nocte minores,
 Crura thymo plenæ : pascuntur et arbusta passim,
 Et glaucas salices, casiamque, crocumque rubentem,
 Et pinguem tiliam, et ferrugineos hyacinthos.
 Omnibus una quies operum, labor omnibus unus.
 Manè ruunt portis ; nusquam mora ; rursus easdem
 Vesper ubi e pastu tandem decedere campis
 Admonuit, tum tecta petunt, tum corpora curant ;
 Fit sonitus, mussantque oras et limina circum.
 Post, ubi jam thalamis se composuere, siletur
 In noctem, fessos sopor suus occupat artus.
 Nec verò a stabulis pluvîâ impendente recedunt
 Longiùs, aut credunt cœlo, adventantibus Euris ;
 Sed circum tutæ sub mœnibus urbis aquantur,
 Excursusque breves tentant ; et sæpè lapillos,
 Ut cymbæ instabiles fluctu jactante saburram,
 Tollunt ; his sese per inania nubila librant.

ÆN. IV. 170.

Extemplo Libyæ magnas it Fama per urbes ;
 Fama, malum quâ non aliud velocius ullum ;
 Mobilitate viget, viresque acquirit eundo ;
 Parva metu primò, mox sese attollit in auras ;
 Ingrediturque solo, et caput inter nubila condit.
 Illam Terra parens, irâ irritata deorum,
 Extremam, ut perhibent, Coeo Enceladoque sororem
 Progenit, pedibus celerem et perniciosibus alis :
 Monstrum horrendum, ingens ; cui, quot sunt corpore plumæ,
 Tot vigiles oculi subter, mirabile dictu ;
 Tot linguæ, totidem ora sonant, tot subrigit aures.
 Nocte volat cœli medio terræque, per umbram
 Stridens, nec dulci declinat lumina somno.
 Luce sedet custos, aut summi culmine tecti ;
 Turribus aut altis, et magnas territat urbes ;
 Tam ficti praviqve tenax quàm nuntia veri.

ÆN. VIII. 415.

Insula Sicanium juxta latus Æoliamque
 Erigitur Liparen, fumantibus ardua saxis ;
 Quam subter specus et Cyclopum exesa caminis
 Antra Ætnæa tenant, validique incudibus ictus
 Auditi referunt gemitum, striduntque cavernis
 Stricturæ chalybum, et fornacibus ignis anhelat :
 Vulcani domus, et Vulcania nomine tellus.
 Huc tunc ignipotens cœlo descendit ab alto.
 Ferrum exercebant vasto Cyclopes in antro,
 Brontesque, Steropesque, et nudus membra Pyracmon.
 His informatum manibus, jam parte politâ,
 Fulmen erat, toto genitor quæ plurima cœlo
 Dejecit in terras, pars imperfecta manebat.
 Tres imbris torti radios, tres nubis aquosæ
 Addiderant, rutili tres ignis et alitis Austri.
 Fulgores nunc terrificos, sonitumque, metumque,
 Miscebant operi, flammisque sequacibus iras.

Parte aliâ Marti currumque rotasque volucres
 Instabant, quibus ille viros, quibus excitat urbes :
 Ægidaque horrifera, turbatæ Palladis arma,
 Certatim squamis serpentum auroque polibant,
 Connexosque angues, ipsam in pectore divæ
 Gorgona, desecto vertentem lumina collo.
 Tollite cuncta, inquit, cæptosque auferte labores,
 Ætnæi Cyclopes, et huc advertite mentem.
 Arma acri facienda viro : nunc viribus usus,
 Nunc manibus rapidis, omni nunc arte magistrâ :
 Præcipitate moras. Nec plura effatus : et illi
 Ociùs incubuere omnes, pariterque laborem
 Sortiti : fluit æs rivis, aurique metallum ;
 Vulficusque chalybs vastâ fornace liquescit.
 Ingentem clypeum informant, unum omnia contra
 Tela Latinorum ; septenosque orbibus orbes
 Impediunt : alii ventosis foliibus auras
 Accipiunt redduntque ; alii stridentia tingunt
 Æra lacu : gemit impositis incudibus antrum.
 Illi inter sese multâ vi brachia tollunt
 In numerum, versantque tenaci forcipe antrum.

ÆN. IX. 170.

Nisus erat portæ custos, acerrimus armis,
 Hyrtacides ; comitem Æneæ quem miserat Ida
 Venatrix, jaculo celerem levibusque sagittis :
 Et juxtâ comes Euryalus, quo pulchrior alter
 Non fuit Æneadum, Trojana neque induit arma ;
 Ora puer primâ signans intonsa juventâ.
 His amor unus erat, pariterque in bella ruebant ;
 Tum quoque communi portam statione tenebant.
 Nisus ait : Dine hunc ardorem mentibus addunt,
 Euryale ? an sua cuique deus fit dira cupido ?
 Aut pugnam, aut aliquid jamdudum invadere magnum,
 Mens agitat mihi ; nec placidâ contenta quiete est.
 Cernis, quæ Rutulos habeat fiducia rerum :
 Lumina rara micant ; somno vinoque sepulti
 Procubuere ; silent latè loca. Percipe porro
 Quid dubitem, et quæ nunc animo sententia surgat.
 Ænean acciri omnes, populusque patresque,
 Exposcunt, mittique viros qui certa reportent.
 Si tibi quæ posco promittunt, nam mihi facti
 Fama sat est, tumulto videor reperire sub illo
 Posse viam ad muros et mœnia Pallantea.
 Obstupuit, magno laudum percussus amore,
 Euryalus ; simul his ardentem affatur amicum :
 Mene igitur socium summis adjungere rebus,
 Nise, fugis ? Solum te in tanta pericula mittam ?
 Non ita me genitor bellis assuetus Opheltes
 Argolicum terrorem inter Trojæque labores
 Sublatum erudiit ; nec tecum talia gessi,
 Magnanimum Ænean et fata extrema secutus.
 Est hîc, est animus lucis contemptor, et istum
 Qui vitâ benè credat emi, quò tendis, honorem.
 Nisus ad hæc : Equidem de te nil tale verebar,
 Nec fas ; non : ita me referat tibi magnus ovantem
 Jupiter, aut quicumque oculis hæc adspicit æquis.
 Sed, si quis (quæ multa vides discrimine tali,)
 Si quis in adversum rapiat casusve deusve,

Te superesse velim : tua vitâ dignior ætas.
 Sit qui me raptum pugnâ, pretiove redemptum,
 Mandet humo solitâ ; aut si qua id fortuna vetabit,
 Absenti ferat inferias, decoretque sepulcro.
 Neu matri miseræ tanti sim causa doloris ;
 Quæ te, sola, puer, multis e matribus ausa,
 Persequitur, magni nec moenia curat Acestæ.
 Ille autem : Causas nequidquam nectis inanes,
 Nec mea jam mutata loco sententia cedit.
 Acceleremus, ait : vigiles simul excitat ; illi
 Succedunt, servantque vices : statione relictâ
 Ipse comes Niso graditur, regemque requirunt.

* * * * *

Egressi superant fossas, noctisque per umbram
 Castra inimica petunt, multis tamen antè futuri
 Exitio. Passim somno vinoque per herbam
 Corpora fusa vident ; arrectos littore currus,
 Inter lora rotasque viros ; simul arma jacere,
 Vina simul. Prior Hyrtacides sic ore locutus :
 Euryale, audendum dextrâ : nunc ipsa vocat res.
 Hâc iter est : tu, nequa manus se attollere nobis
 A tergo possit, custodi, et consule longè.
 Hæc ego vasta dabo, et lato te limine ducam.
 Sic memorat, vocemque premit : simul ense superbum
 Rhamnetem aggreditur, qui fortè tapetibus altis
 Exstructus toto proflabat pectore somnum :
 Rex idem, et regi Turno gratissimus augur ;
 Sed non augurio potuit depellere pestem.
 Tres juxtâ famulos temerè inter tela jacentes,
 Armigerumque Remi premit, aurigamque sub ipsis
 Nactus equis, ferroque secat pendentia colla.
 Nam caput ipsi aufert domino, truncumque relinquit
 Sanguine singultantem : atro tepefacta cruore
 Terra torique madent. Nec Lamyrumque, Lamumque,
 Et juvenem Sarranum, illâ qui plurima nocte
 Luserat, insignis facie, multoque jacebat
 Membra deo victus : felix si protenus illum
 Equâssset nocti ludum, in lucemque tulisset !
 Impastus ceu plena leo per ovilia turbans,
 Suadet enim vesana fames, manditque trahitque
 Molle pecus, mutumque metu ; fremit ore cruento.
 Nec minor Euryali cædes : incensus et ipse
 Perfurit, ac multam in medio sine nomine plebem ;
 Fadumque, Herbesumque subit, Rhoetumque, Arabimque,
 Ignaros ; Rhoetum vigilantem et cuncta videntem,
 Sed magnum metuens se, post cratera tegebat ;
 Pectore in adverso totum cui comminus ensem
 Condidit assurgenti, et multâ morte recepit.
 Purpuream vomit ille animam, et cum sanguine mixta
 Vina refert moriens : hic furto servidus instat.
 Jamque ad Messapi socios tendebat, ubi ignem
 Deficere extremum, et religatos ritè videbat
 Carpere gramen equos ; breviter quum talia Nisus,
 (Sensit enim nimîâ cæde atque cupidine ferri,)
 Absistamus, ait ; nam lux inimica propinquat.
 Poenarum exhaustum satis est ; via facta per hostes.
 Multa virûm solido argento perfecta relinquunt
 Armaque, craterasque simul, pulchrosque tapetas.

Euryalus phaleras Rhamnetis et aurea bullis
 Cingula ; Tiburti Remulo ditissimus olim
 Quæ mittit dona, hospitio quum jungeret absens,
 Cædicus ; ille suo moriens dat habere nepoti :
 Post mortem bello Rutuli pugnâque potiti.
 Hæc rapit, atque humeris nequidquam fortibus aptat.
 Tum galeam Messapi habilem cristis decoram
 Induit. Excedunt castris, et tuta capessunt.
 Interea præmissi equites ex urbe Latinâ,
 Cetera dum legio campis instructa moratur,
 Ibant, et Turno regi responsa ferebant,
 Tercentum, scutati omnes, Volscente magistro.
 Jamque propinquabant castris, murosque subibant,
 Quum procul hos lævo flectentes limite cernunt ;
 Et galea Euryalum sublustri noctis in umbrâ
 Prodidit immemorem, radiisque adversa refulsit.
 Haud temerè est visum, conclamat ab agmine Volsceus :
 State, viri ; quæ causa viæ ? quive estis in armis ?
 Quòve tenetis iter ? Nihil illi tendere contrâ ;
 Sed celerare fugam in silvas, et fidere nocti.
 Objiciunt equites sese ad divortia nota
 Hinc atque hinc, omnemque abitum custode coronant.
 Silva fuit latè dumis atque ilice nigrâ
 Horrida, quam densi complèrant undique sentes ;
 Rara per occultos lucebat semita calles.
 Euryalum tenebræ ramorum onerosaque præda
 Impediunt ; fallitque timor regione viarum.
 Nisus abit : jamque imprudens evaserat hostes,
 Ad lucos qui pòst, Albæ de nomine, dicti
 Albani ; tum rex stabula alta Latinus habebat.
 Ut stetit, et frustra absentem respexit amicum :
 Euryale, infelix quâ te regione reliqui ?
 Quâve sequar ? Rursus perplexum iter omne revolvens
 Fallacis silvæ, simul et vestigia retro
 Observata legit, dumisque silentibus errat.
 Audit equos, audit strepitus et signa sequentum.
 Nec longum in medio tempus, quum clamor ad aures
 Pervenit, ac videt Euryalum, quem jam manus omnis,
 Fraude loci et noctis, subito turbante tumulto,
 Oppressum rapit et conantem plurima frustra.
 Quid faciat ? quâ vi juvenem, quibus audeat armis
 Eripere ? An sese medios moriturus in enses
 Inferat, et pulchram properet per vulnera mortem ?
 Ociùs adducto torquens hastile lacerto,
 Suspiciens altam lunam, sic voce precatur :
 Tu, dea, tu præsens nostro succurre labori,
 Astrorum decus, et nemorum Latonia custos.
 Siqua tuis unquam pro me pater Hyrtacus aris
 Dona tulit ; siqua ipse meis venatibus auxi,
 Suspendivè tholo, aut sacra ad fastigia fixi ;
 Hunc sine me turbare globum, et rege tela per auras.
 Dixerat ; et toto connixus corpore ferrum
 Conjicit : hasta volans noctis diverberat umbras,
 Et venit aversi in tergum Sulmonis, ibique
 Frangitur, ac fisso transit præcordia ligno.
 Volvitur ille vomens calidum de pectore flumen
 Frigidus, et longis singultibus ilia pulsatur.
 Diversi circumspiciunt. Hoc acrior idem

Ecce aliud summâ telum librabat ab aure :
 Dum trepidant, iit hasta Tago per tempus utrumque,
 Stridens, trajectoque hæsit tepefacta cerebro.
 Sævit atrox Volscens, nec teli conspicit usquam
 Auctorem, nec quò se ardens immittere possit :
 Tu tamen interea calido mihi sanguine pœnas
 Persolves amborum, inquit. Simul ense recluso
 Ibat in Euryalum. Tum verò exterritus, amens,
 Conclamat Nisus ; nec se celerare tenebris
 Amplius, aut tantum potuit perferre dolorem :
 Me, me ; adsum qui feci ; in me convertite ferrum,
 O Rutuli ; mea fraus omnis : nihil iste nec ausus,
 Nec potuit ; cœlum hoc et conscia sidera testor :
 Tantum infelicem nimium dilexit amicum.
 Talia dicta dabat ; sed viribus ensis adactus
 Transabiit costas, et candida pectora rumpit.
 Volvitur Euryalus leto, pulchrosque per artus
 It cruor, inque humeros cervix collapsa recumbit :
 Purpureus veluti quum flos succisus aratro
 Languescit moriens ; lassove papavera collo
 Demisêre caput, pluvia quum forte gravantur.
 At Nisus ruit in medios, solumque per omnes
 Volscentem petit, in solo Volscente moratur.
 Quem circum glomerati hostes hinc comminus atque hinc
 Proturbant : instat mon secius, ac rotat ensem
 Fulmineum ; donec Rutuli clamantis in ore
 Condidit adverso, et moriens animam abstulit hosti.
 Tum super exanimum sese projecit amicum
 Confossus, placidâque ibi demum morte quievit.
 Fortunati ambo, si quid mea carmina possunt,
 Nulla dies unquam memori vos eximet ævo,
 Dum domus Æneæ Capitoli immobile saxum
 Accolet, imperiumque pater Romanus habebit.

EX HORATII OPERIBUS.

AD MECENATEM. LIB. I. ODE I

Mæcênâs âtâvis êdîtê rêgîbûs ;
 O êt præsidium, êt dulcê dēcûs mēûm !
 Sûnt quôs cûrriculô pulvêrêm Olympicûm
 Collégissê jûvât, metâquê fervidis
 Evitâtâ rôtis, pâlmâquê nôbilis
 Terrârûm dôminôs êvêhit ad Dêôs.
 Hunc, si mobilium turba Quiritium
 Certat tergemini tollere honoribus ;
 Illum, si proprio condidit horreo
 Quicquid de Libycis verritur areis,
 Gaudentem patrios findere sarculo
 Agros, Attalicis conditionibus
 Nunquam divomeas, ut trabe Cypriâ
 Myrtoum pavidûs nauta secet mare.
 Luctantem Icariis fluctibus Africum
 Mercator metuens, otium et oppidi
 Ludat rura sui : mox reficit rates
 Quassas, indocilis pauperiem pati.
 Est qui nec veteris pocula Massici,
 Nec partem solido demere de die

Spernit, nunc viridi membra sub arbuto
Stratus, nunc ad aquæ-lene caput sacræ.

Multos castrâ juvant, et lituo tubæ
Permistus sonitus, bellaque matribus
Detestata. Manet sub Jove frigido
Venator, teneræ conjugis immemor;
Seu visa est catulis cerva fidelibus,
Seu rupit teretes Marsus aper plagas.

Me doctarum hederæ præmia frontium
Dis miscent superis: me gelidum nemus,
Nympharumque leves cum Satyris chori
Secernunt populo; si neque tibias
Euterpe cohibet, nec Polyhymnia
Lesboûm refugit tendere barbiton:
Quòd si me Lyricis vatibus inseres,
Sublimi feriam sidera vertice.

AD NAVEM QUA VEHITUR VIRGILIUS. LIB. I. ODE III.

Sic tē divā pōtēns Cypri,
Sic frātrēs Hēlēnæ, lūcidā sidērā,
Vēntōrūmq̃ue rēgāt pātēr,
Obstrictis āliis, prætēr Iāpygā,
Navis, quæ tibi creditum
Debes Virgilium, finibus Atticis
Reddas incolumem, precor,
Et serves animæ dimidium meæ.
Illi robur et æs triplex
Circa pectus erat, qui fragilem truci
Commisit pelago ratem
Primus; nec timuit præcipitem Africum
Decertantem Aquilonibus,
Nec tristes Hyadas, nec rabiem Noti;
Quo non arbiter Adriæ
Major, tollere seu ponere vult freta.
Quem mortis timuit gradum,
Qui siccis oculis monstra natantia,
Qui vidit mare turgidum, et
Infames scopulos Acrocerania?
Nequicquam Deus abscondit
Prudens Oceano dissociabili
Terras, si tamen impiæ
Non tangenda rates transiliunt vada.
Audax omnia perpeti
Gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas:
Audax Iapeti genus
Ignem fraude malâ gentibus intulit.
Post ignem ætheriâ domo
Subductum, macies, et nova febrium
Terris incubuit cohors;
Simotique prius tarda necessitas
Leti, corripuit gradum.
Expertus vacuum Dædalus aëra
Pennis non homini datis.
Perrupit Acheronta Herculeus labor.
Nil mortalibus arduum est.
Cælum ipsum petimus stultitiâ; neque
Per nostrum patimur scelus
Iracunda Jovem ponere fulmina.

AD L. SEXTIUM. LIB. I. ODE IV.

Solvitur acris hyems gratâ vicē Veris et Favoni;
 Trahuntque siccās machinā cārinās:
 Ac neque jam stabulis gaudet pecūs, aut arator igni
 Nec prātā canis albicant pruīnis.
 Jam Cytherēā choros ducit Venūs immīnētē Lūnā;
 Junctaque Nymphis Gratiā decētēs
 Alternō tērrām quatūnt pēdē, dūm grāvēs Cyclopūm
 Vūlcānūs ardēns ūrit officinās.
 Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput impedire myrto,
 Aut flore, terræ quem ferunt solutæ.
 Nunc et in umbrosis Fauno decet immolare lucis,
 Seu poscat agnā, sive malit hædo.
 Pallida mors æquo pulsat pede pauperum tabernas,
 Regumque tures. O beate Sexti,
 Vitæ summa brevis spem nos vetat inchoare longam.
 Jam te premet nox, fabulæque Manes,
 Et domus exilis Plutonia; quò simul meāris,
 Nec regna vini sortiere talis,
 Nec tenerum Lycidam mirabere, quo calet juvenus
 Nunc omnis, et mox virgines tepebunt.

AD THALIARCHUM. LIB. I. ODE IX.

Vides, ut altā stēt nivē cāndidūm
 Sōractē, nec jam sustinēant ōnūs
 Silvæ labōrāntēs; gēlūquē
 Flūminā cōstitērint acūtō?
 Dissolvē frīgūs, lignā supēr focō
 Largē rēpōnēs, atquē bēnignius
 Depromē quādrimūm Sābinā,
 O Thāliarchē, mērum diōtā.
 Permite Divis cætera; qui simul
 Stravēre ventos æquore fervido
 Deproeliantes, nec cupressi
 Nec veteres agitantur orni.
 Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere; et
 Quem Fors dierum cumque dabit, lucro
 Appone; nec dulces amores
 Sperne, puer, neque tu choreas,
 Donec virenti canities abest
 Morosa. Nunc et campus et aræ,
 Lenesque sub noctem susurri
 Compositā repetantur horā.

AD LEUCONOEN. LIB. I. ODE XI.

Tū nē quæsiēris scirē (nēfas) quē mīhī, quē tibi
 Finē Dī dēdērīnt, Leucōnōē; nec Bābyloniōs
 Tentāris numeros: est melius, quidquid erit, pati.
 Seu plures hyemes, seu tribuit Jupiter ultimam,
 Quæ nunc oppositis debilitat pumicibus mare
 Tyrrhenum; sapias, vina liques: et spatio brevi
 Spem longam resēces. Dum loquimur, fugerit invida
 Ætas; carpe diem, quāminimū credula postero.

AD ARISTIUM. LIB. I. ODE XXII.

Intēgēr vitā, scēlērīsque purūs,
 Nōn ēgēt Māuri jācūlis nēque arcū,

Nec venenatis gravida sagittis,
 Fuscæ, phætræ,
 Sive per Syrtes iter æstuosas,
 Sive facturus per inhospitalem
 Caucasum, vel quæ loca fabulosus
 Lambit Hydaspes.
 Namque me silva lupus in Sabinâ,
 Dum meam canto Lalagen, et ultra
 Terminum curis vagor expeditus,
 Fugit inermem.
 Quale portentum neque militaris
 Daunia in latis alit æsculetis,
 Nec Jubæ tellus generat, leonum,
 Arida nutrix.
 Pone me, pigris ubi nulla campis
 Arbor æstivâ recreatur aurâ ;
 Quod latus mundi nebulæ, malusque
 Jupiter urget :
 Pone sub curru nimium propinqui
 Solis, in terra domibus negata ;
 Dulcè ridentem Lalagen amabo,
 Dulcè loquentem.

AD VIRGILIUM. LIB. I. ODE XXIV.

Quis desiderio sit pudor, aut modus
 Tam cari capitis ? Præcipè lugubres
 Cântus Melpomênê ; cui liquidam pater
 Vocem cum citharâ dedit.
 Ergo Quintilium perpetuus sopor
 Urget ? cui Pudor, et Justitiæ soror,
 Incorrupta Fides, nudaque Veritas,
 Quando ullum invenient parem ?
 Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit ;
 Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Virgili.
 Tu frustra pius, heu, non ita creditum
 Poscis Quintilium Deos.
 Quod si Threicio blandius Orpheo
 Auditam moderere arboribus fidem ;
 Non vanæ redeat sanguis imagini,
 Quam virgâ semel horridâ
 Non lenis precibus fata recludere,
 Nigro compulerit Mercurius gregi.
 Durum : sed levius fit patientiâ,
 Quidquid corrigere est nefas.

AD LICINIUM. LIB. II. ODE X.

Rectius vivēs, Licini, neque altum
 Semp̄r urgendō ; neque dūm procēllas
 Cautus horrēscis nīmium prēmendō.
 Littus iniquum.
 Auream quisquis mediocritatem
 Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
 Sordibus tecti, caret invidendâ
 Sobrius aulâ.
 Sæpius ventis agitur ingens
 Pinus ; et celsæ graviore casu
 Decidunt turres, feriuntque summos
 Fulmina montes.

Sperat infestis, metuit secundis,
 Alteram sortem benè præparatum
 Pectus. Informes hyemes reducit
 Jupiter ; idem
 Submovet. Non, si malè nunc, et olim
 Sic erit: quondam citharâ tacentem
 Suscitât Musam ; neque semper arcum
 Tendit Apollo.
 Rebus angustis animosus, atque
 Fortis appare ; sapienter idem
 Contrahes vento nimiùm secundo
 Turgida vela.

LIB. II. ODE XVIII.

Nôn ãbûr, nèque aûrëûm
 Mëâ rênidët in dômo lâcûnar ;
 Nôn trãbës Hÿmëttïæ
 Prëmunt cõlûmånäs ûltimã rêcisas
 Africa : neque Attali
 Ignotus hæres regiam occupavi ;
 Nec Laconicas mihi
 Trahunt honestæ purpuras clientæ.
 At fides, et ingeni
 Benigna vena est ; pauperemque dives
 Me petit. Nihil suprà
 Deos lacezzo ; nec potentem amicum
 Largiora flagito,
 Satis beatus unicus Sabinis.
 Truditur dies die,
 Novæque pergunt interire Lunæ.

AD TORQUATUM LIB. IV. ODE VII.

Diffûgërë nivës, rêdëunt jãm grãminã câmpis,
 Arbõribûsqûe cõmæ.
 Mûtât terrã vicës, ët dëcrëscëntiã ripäs
 Flûminã prætërëunt.
 Gratia cum Nymphis, geminisque sororibus audet
 Ducere nuda choros.
 Immortalia ne speres monet annus, et alium
 Quæ rapit hora diem.
 Frigora mitescunt Zephyris : ver proterit æstas
 Interitura, simul
 Pomifer autumnus fruges effuderit, et mox
 Bruma recurrit iners.
 Damna tamen celeres reparant cœlestia Lunæ :
 Nos ubi decidimus,
 Quò pius Æneas, quò Tullus dives, et Ancus,
 Pulvis et umbra sumus.
 Quis scit an adjiciant hodiernæ erastina summæ :
 Tempora Dî superi ?
 Cuncta manus avidas fugient hæredis, amico
 Quæ dederis animo.
 Cùm semel occideris, et de te splendida Minos
 Fecerit arbitria ;
 Non, Torquate, genus, non te facundia, non te
 Restituet pietas :
 Infernis neque enim tenebris Diana pudicum
 Liberat Hippolytum ;

Nec Lethæa valet Theseus abrumpere caro
Vincula Pirithoo.

VITÆ RUSTICÆ LAUDES. EPOD. II.

Bēātūs illē, qui prōcūl nēgōtīs,
Ut priscā gēns mōrtālīum,
Paterna rura bobus exercet suis,
Solutus omni fœnore :
Nec excitatur classico miles truci,
Nec horret iratum mare ;
Forumque vitat, et superba civium
Potentiorum limina.
Ergo aut adultā vitium propagine
Altas maritat populos,
Aut in reductā valle mugientium
Prospectat errantes greges,
Inutilesque falce ramos amputans,
Feliciores inserit ;
Aut pressa puris mella condit amphoris,
Aut tondet infirmas oves.
Vel cūm decorūm mitibus pomis caput
Autumnus arvis extulit :
Ut gaudet insitiva decerpens pyra,
Certantem et uvam purpuræ,
Quā muneretur te, Priape, et te Pater
Sylvane, tutor finium !
Libet jacēre modō sub antiqua ilice ;
Modō in tenaci gramine.
Labuntur altis interim ripis aquæ,
Queruntur in silvis aves,
Fontesque lymphis obstrepunt manantibus,
Somnos quod invitet leves.
At cum tonantis annus hybernus Jovis
Imbres nivesque comparat ;
Aut trudit acres hinc et hinc multā cane
Apros in obstantes plagas ;
Aut amite levi rara tendit retia,
Turdīs edacibus dolos ;
Pavidumve leporem, et advenam laqueo gruem,
Jucunda captat præmia.
Quis non malarum, quas Amor curas habet,
Hæc inter obliviscitur ?
Quōd si pudica mulier in partem juvans
Domum, atque dulces liberos,
(Sabina qualis, aut perusta solibus
Pernicis uxor Appuli,)
Sacrum vetustis extruat lignis focum,
Lassi sub adventum viri ;
Claudensque textis cratibus lætūm pecus,
Distenta siccet ubera ;
Et horna dulci vina promens dolio,
Dapes inemptas apparet :
Non me Lucrina juverint conchylia,
Magisve rhombus, aut scari,
Si quos Eois intonata fluctibus
Hyems ad hoc vertat mare,
Non Afra avis descendat in ventrem meum,
Non attagen Ionicus

Jucundior, quàm lecta de pinguissimis
 Oliva ramis arborum,
 Aut herba lapathi prata amantis, et gravi
 Malvæ salubres corpori,
 Vel agna festis cæsa Terminalibus,
 Vel hædus ereptus lupo.
 Has inter epulas ut juvat pastas oves
 Videre properantes domum !
 Videre fessos vomerem inversum boves
 Collo trahentes languido,
 Positosque vernas, ditis examen domûs,
 Circum renidentes Lares !

AD AMICOS. EPOD. XIII.

Hörridâ tēmpēstās cælum contrāxit, et imbrēs,
 Nivēsque didūcunt Jövēm.
 Nunc mārē, nunc silvæ
 Thrēicio Aquilōnē sönant; rāpiāmūs āmicī
 Occāsionēm dē diē;
 Dūmqūe vīrēt gēnūa,
 Et decet, obductā solvatur fronte senectus.
 Tu vina Torquato move
 Consule pressa meo :
 Cætera mitte loqui. Deus hæc fortasse benignâ
 Reducet in sedem vice :
 Nunc et Achæmeniâ
 Perfundi nardo juvat, et fide Cylleneâ
 Levare duris pectora
 Sollicitudinibus :
 Nobilis ut grandi cecinit Centaurus alumno :
 Invicte mortalis Deâ
 Nate puer Thetide,
 Te manet Assaraci tellus, quam frigida parvi
 Findunt Scamandri flumina,
 Lubricus et Simois,
 Unde tibi redditum certo subtemine Parcæ
 Rupère; nec mater domum
 Cærule te revehet.
 Illic omne malum vino cantuque levato,
 Deformis ægrimonîæ
 Dulcibus alloquiis.

THE RUDIMENTS OF LATIN GRAMMAR.



GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly. Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded. Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W, w*.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as *p*, in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q, and g*; but *b, d, and g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable, as *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be, &c.* but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are, *x, z, and j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks, gz*. *Z* has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au, eu, ei*; as in *aurum*,

Eurus, omneis. To these, some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpiaia*, or in *cui*, and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as, *aetas* or *ætas*: *oe*, or *æ*; as, *poena* or *pæna*: in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice: as, *ā*, *sed*, *urba*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable, are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *āb-ūtor*, *in-ops*, *proptēr-ea*, *et-ēnim*, *vē-lat*, &c.

Observe. A long syllable is thus marked [ˉ]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus, [˘]; as, *amāria*. A short syllable is marked thus, [˘]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pīus*, pious; *ēgo*, I; *dōceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impīus*, impious; *dēdōceo*, I unteach; *ēgōmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pīus*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piētās*, piety; *doc-trīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; declined: 2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction*; undeclined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the **ARTICLE**.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify either a son of a king, or a king's son; or the son of the king, or the king's son.

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech.

But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book.*

Substantives are of two sorts, *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals, as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar, Rome.*

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "The Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*; that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or participles placed before the substantive: in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, or the king; *régis*, of a king, or of the king.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers.*

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

The cases are six, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural.*

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions.*

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cado*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative, which is therefore named *câsus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *câsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *a* diphthong; the second has *i*; the third has *is*; the fourth has *us*; and the fifth has *ei* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma*; *Anchises, Anchise*; *Pāris, Pari*; *Panthus, Panthu*; *Pallas, -antis*; *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ō Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrātes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais, Mysis, Pallas, -adis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duōdēcim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English:

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>a king,</i>	Nom.	<i>kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>a king,</i>	Acc.	<i>kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>a king:</i>	Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>kings.</i>

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>the king,</i>	Nom.	<i>the kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>the king,</i>	Acc.	<i>the kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the king:</i>	Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the kings.</i>

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *bōnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING GENDER.

1. Names of males are masculine; as,

Hēmērus, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as,

Hēlēna, Helen; *mūlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,

Hic bos, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hæc pārens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender:—

<i>Adolescens</i> , } <i>a young man,</i>	<i>Client</i> , <i>a client.</i>	<i>Infans</i> , <i>an infant.</i>
<i>Juvenis</i> , } <i>or woman.</i>	<i>Comes</i> , <i>a companion.</i>	<i>Interpres</i> , <i>an interpreter.</i>
<i>Affinis</i> , <i>a relation by marriage.</i>	<i>Conjux</i> , <i>a husband or wife.</i>	<i>Judex</i> , <i>a judge.</i>
<i>Antistes</i> , <i>a prelate.</i>	<i>Conviva</i> , <i>a guest.</i>	<i>Martyr</i> , <i>a martyr.</i>
<i>Auctor</i> , <i>an author.</i>	<i>Custos</i> , <i>a keeper.</i>	<i>Miles</i> , <i>a soldier.</i>
<i>Augur</i> , <i>a soothsayer.</i>	<i>Dux</i> , <i>a leader.</i>	<i>Municipes</i> , <i>a burgess.</i>
<i>Canis</i> , <i>a dog or bitch.</i>	<i>Hæres</i> , <i>an heir.</i>	<i>Nemo</i> , <i>no body.</i>
<i>Civis</i> , <i>a citizen.</i>	<i>Hostis</i> , <i>an enemy.</i>	<i>Obses</i> , <i>an hostage.</i>

<i>Patruëlis</i> , a cousin-german, by the father's side.	<i>Princeps</i> , a prince or princess.	<i>Testis</i> , a witness.
<i>Præ</i> , a surety.	<i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest or priestess.	<i>Vates</i> , a prophet.
	<i>Sus</i> , a swine.	<i>Vindex</i> , an avenger.*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistita*, *cliēta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leona*, a lioness; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advēna*, a stranger; *agricola*, a husbandman; *assecra*, an attendant; *accōla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *opifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *āpēra*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigilia*, *excubia*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *āquila*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a*, of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *femina*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femina passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, hic *Aprilis*, April; hic *āquilo*, the north wind; hic *Africus*, the south-west wind; hic *Tibēris*, the river Tiber; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, hæc *Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; hæc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Sōracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as, hæc *Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city of Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship. Thus also the names of poems, hæc *Ilias*, -ados, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; hæc *Ænēis*, -idos, a poem of Virgil's; hæc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's Comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name: hic *Sulmo*, -ōnis; *Pessinus*, -antis; *Hydrus*, -antis; names of towns: hæc *Persis*, -idis, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, -inis, the city Carthage; hoc *Albion*, Britain: hoc *Cære*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilum*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Præneste*, Juvenal, iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, -tri, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cystisus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, -ēris, the cork-tree; *sīler*, -ēris, the osier; *rōbur*, -ōris, oak of the hardest kind; *ācer*, -ēris, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercetum*,

* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*,
Affinis, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,
Augur, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *concoiva*, *sacerdos*,
Muniquiceps, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,
Custos, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bosque*, *canis*que,
*Interpres*que, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obes*.

escûlētum, sâlictum, frûticētum, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow : also the names of fruits and timber ; as, *pōnum*, or *mālum*, an apple ; *pîrum*, a pear ; *ëbënum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender* ; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another ; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine ; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a, e, as, es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are ; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a* ; Gen. and Dat. *æ*, diphthong ; Acc. *am* ; Abl. *â* ; Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ* ; Gen. *ârum* ; Dat. and Abl. *is* ; Acc. *as*. See example, *musa*, a song, page 6.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine : *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea ; *cômêta*, a comet ; *planêta*, a planet ; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole ; and *dâma*, a fallow deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *âi* ; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulâi* ; and sometimes likewise in *as* ; which form the compounds of *fâmilia* usually retain ; as, *mâter-fâmiliâs*, the mistress of a family ; gen. *matris-fâmiliâs* ; nom. plur. *matres-fâmiliâs*, or *matres-familiârum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *âbus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension :—

Anîma, the soul, the life.

Dea, a goddess.

Equa, a mare.

Fâmîla, a female servant.

Fîlia, & *Nâta*, a daughter.

Liberta, a freed woman.

Mûla, a she-mule.

Thus, *deâbus, fîliâbus*, rather than *fîliis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as, es*, and *e* of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine : nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *mûsa* ; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative ; as, *Ænêas*, Æneas, the name of a man ; gen. *Ænêæ* ; dat. *-æ* ; acc. *-am* or *-an* ; voc. *-a* ; abl. *â*. So *Bôreas*, *-æ*, the north wind ; *Tiâras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry ; as, *Ossa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined :—

Anchises, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

Singular.

Nom. *Anchises*,

Gen. *Anchisæ*,

Dat. *Anchisæ*,

Pênêlôpe, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

Singular.

Nom. *Pênêlôpe*,

Gen. *Penelopes*;

Dat. *Penelope*,

Acc. *Anchisen*,

Voc. *Anchise*,

Abl. *Anchise*.

Acc. *Penelopen*,

Voc. *Penelope*,

Abl. *Penelope*.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *mûsa*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a* ; as, *Atrides*, for *Attrides* ; *Persa*, for *Perses*, a Persian ; *Geômetra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician ; *Circa*, for *Circe* ; *Epitôma*, for *-me*, an abridgment ; *Grammâtica*, for *-ce*, grammar ; *Rhêtôrîca*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the gen. plural contracted ; as, *Calicôlûm* for *Calicolarum* ; *Æneddum* for *-arum*.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er, ir, ur, us, um; os, on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the accusative in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (but nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*;) the nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*. See example, *puer*, a boy, page 6.

After the same manner decline *söcer, -ëri*, a father-in-law; *gëner, -ëri*, a son-in-law; So *furcifer*, a villain; *Lucifer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armäger*, an armour-bearer; *presbyter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *iber, -ëri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtiber, -ëri*: Also, *vir, viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *levir*, a brother-in-law; *semivir, duumvir, triumvir*, &c. And likewise *satur, -uri*, full, (of old, *saturus*), an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive. See example, *liber*, a book, page 6.

In like manner decline,

<i>Ager, a field.</i>	<i>Cäper, a he goat.</i>	<i>Mägiſter, a master.</i>
<i>Aper, a wild boar.</i>	<i>Colüber, and -bra, a serpent.</i>	<i>Minister, a servant.</i>
<i>Arbiter, (and -trai,) a judge.</i>	<i>Culter, the coulter of a plough,</i>	<i>Onäger, a wild ass.</i>
<i>Anſter, the south wind.</i>	<i>a knife.</i>	<i>Scalper, a lance.</i>
<i>Cancer, a crab-fish.</i>	<i>Fäber, a workman.</i>	

Liber, the bark of a tree, or a book, has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libëri*. So, likewise, proper names, *Alexander, Evander, Periander, Mënander, Teucer, Mëleäger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri, Evandri*, &c. For examples in *us* and *um*, see declension of *dominus*, a master, and of *donum*, a gift, page 6.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *hūmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve: and the following derived from Greek nouns in *os*:

<i>Äbyſſus, a bottomless pit.</i>	<i>Dialectus, a dialect, or manner</i>	<i>Méthodus, a method.</i>
<i>Antidōtus, a preservative against</i>	<i>of speech.</i>	<i>Periōdus, a period.</i>
<i>poison.</i>	<i>Diāmetros, the diameter of a</i>	<i>Përimetros, the circumference.</i>
<i>Aretos, the Bear, a constellation</i>	<i>circle.</i>	<i>Phārus, a watch-tower.</i>
<i>near the north pole.</i>	<i>Diphthongus, a diphthong.</i>	<i>Synōdus, an assembly.</i>
<i>Carbāſus, a sail.</i>	<i>Ërëmus, a desert.</i>	

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

<i>Amëthystus, an amethyst.</i>	<i>Sapphirus, a sapphire.</i>	<i>Byssus, fine flax or linen.</i>
<i>Chrysolithus, a chrysolite.</i>	<i>Topazius, a topaz.</i>	<i>Costus, costmary.</i>
<i>Chrysōphrāſus, a kind of topaz.</i>	<i>Biblus, { an Egyptian reed, of</i>	<i>Crōcus, saffron.</i>
<i>Chrystallus, crystal.</i>	<i>Päpyrus, { which paper was</i>	<i>Hyssōpus, hyssop.</i>
<i>Leucōchrysus, a jacinth.</i>	<i>made.</i>	<i>Nardus, spikenard.</i>

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *Bëryllus*, the beryl; *Carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pyrōpus*, a ruby; *Smäragdus*, an emerald: and also names of plants; as, *Aspärägus*, asparagus, or sparrowgrass; *ellebōrus*, elebore; *raphānus*, radish, or colewort; *intjibus*, endive, or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine:

<i>Ätōmus, an atom.</i>	<i>Barbitus, a harp.</i>	<i>Grossus, a green fig.</i>
<i>Bälānus, the fruit of the palm-</i>	<i>Cāmëlus, a camel.</i>	<i>Pënus, a store-house.</i>
<i>tree, ointment.</i>	<i>Cölus, a distaff.</i>	<i>Phäselus, a little ship.</i>

Exc. 3. *Virus*, poison; *pëlägus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as,

Hörätius, Höräti; *Virgilius, Virgili*; *Georgius, Georgi*, names of men; *Lārius, Lāri*; *Mincius, Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son also hath *fili*; *gënius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dëi* and *dëis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tabellarius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets *Delius*, *Delie*; *Tyrinthias*, *Tyrinthie*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, for *fluvie*, *Latine*: Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Audi tu, pōpūlus*, for *pōpūle*. Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us*; as, *Evander*, or *Evandrus*; vocative, *Evander*, or *Evan-dre*. So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puēre*, from *puērus*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity: as, *tugūrt*, for *tugurii*; *ingēnt* for *ingenti*, &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deūm*, *libērūm*, *sacrūm*, *duūm*, *deorūm*, &c. for *deorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graivūm*, *Argivūm*, *Danaūm*, *Pelagūm*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Iliōn*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *Ilium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *eus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphēus*, genitive *Orphei*, *Orphei*, or *Orphi*. So *Thesēus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeos* or *-ei*, the name of a man; *Althos*, *Altho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeo*, genitive *Androgeōnis*. So *Aitho*, or *Aithon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as, *Menandru*, *Apollodoru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodori*, Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, genitive plural *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*: *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r* with the second; and *s* with all the other declensions. *A, i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these; nom. sing. *a, e*, &c.; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *e*, or *i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es, a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*. See examples, *sermo*, a speech; *rupes*, a rock; *lapis*, a stone; *caput*, the head; *sedile*, a seat; and *iter*, a journey, page 6.

OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a, e, i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma*, *diademātis*, a crown; *dogma*, *-ātis*, an opinion. So,

Ænigma, a riddle.

Apōthegma, a short pithy saying.

Āroma, sweet spices.

Axiōma, a plain truth.

Diplōma, a charter.

Epigramma, an inscription.

Nūmisma, a coin.

Phasma, an apparition.

Pōēma, a poem.

Schēma, a scheme or figure.

Sōphisma, a deceitful argument.

Stemma, a pedigree.

Stigma, a mark or brand, a disgrace.

Strātīgēma, an artful contrivance.

Thēma, a theme, a subject to write or speak on.

Tōreuma, a carved vessel.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte*, *retis*, a net. So,

Ancile, a shield.

Aplūstre, the flag of a ship.

Campestre, a pair of drawers.

Cochlēare, a spoon.

Conclāve, a room.

Crināle, a pin for the hair.

Cūbile, a couch.

Équile, a stable for horses.

Lāqueare, a ceiling roof.

Mantile, a towel.

Mōnile, a necklace.

Nāvāle, a dock or place for ship-ping.

Ōvile, a sheep-fold.

Præsēpe, a stall; a bee-hive.

Sēcāle, rye.

Suile, a sow-cote.

Tibiale, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum; *zingibëri*, ginger; but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as, *hydrômëli*, *hydromelitis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly*, *molyos*, an herb; *mysy*, *-yos*, vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *onis*; as, *Sermo*, *sermônis*, speech; *draco*, *drăcônis*, a dragon. So,

<i>Agâso</i> , a horse-keeper.	<i>Cûrio</i> , the chief of a ward or curia.	<i>Përo</i> , a kind of shoe.
<i>Aquilo</i> , the north wind.	<i>Êquiso</i> , a groom or hostler.	<i>Præco</i> , a common crier
<i>Arhâbo</i> , an earnest-penny, a pledge.	<i>Erro</i> , a wanderer.	<i>Prædo</i> , a robber.
<i>Bâlatro</i> , a pitiful fellow.	<i>Fullo</i> , a fuller of cloth.	<i>Pulmo</i> , the lungs.
<i>Bambâllo</i> , a flatterer.	<i>Helluo</i> , a glutton.	<i>Pûsio</i> , a little child.
<i>Bîro</i> , a blockhead.	<i>Histrio</i> , a player.	<i>Salmo</i> , a salmon.
<i>Bûbo</i> , an owl.	<i>Latro</i> , a robber	<i>Sannio</i> , a buffoon.
<i>Bûfo</i> , a toad.	<i>Lêno</i> , a pimp.	<i>Sâpo</i> , soap.
<i>Câlo</i> , a soldier's slave.	<i>Lûdio</i> , and <i>-ius</i> , a player.	<i>Sîpho</i> , a pipe or tube.
<i>Câpo</i> , a capon.	<i>Lurco</i> , a glutton.	<i>Spâdo</i> , an eunuch.
<i>Carbo</i> , a coal.	<i>Mango</i> , a slave merchant.	<i>Stôlo</i> , a shoot or scion.
<i>Caupo</i> , an innkeeper.	<i>Mi-millo</i> , a fencer.	<i>Strâbo</i> , a goggle-eyed person.
<i>Carbo</i> , a cobbler, or one who follows a mean trade.	<i>Môrio</i> , a fool.	<i>Têmo</i> , the pole or draught-tree.
<i>Ciniffo</i> , a frisker of hair.	<i>Mucro</i> , the point of a weapon.	<i>Tiro</i> , a raw soldier.
<i>Crabro</i> , a wasp or hornet.	<i>Mulio</i> , a muleteer.	<i>Umbo</i> , the boss of a shield.
	<i>Nêbulo</i> , a knave.	<i>Upilio</i> , a shepherd.
	<i>Pâvo</i> , a peacock.	<i>Vôlo</i> , a volunteer.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *râtio*, *rationis*, reason. So,

<i>Captio</i> , a quirk.	<i>Perduellio</i> , treason.	<i>Sanctio</i> , a confirmation.
<i>Cautio</i> , caution, care.	<i>Portio</i> , a part.	<i>Sectio</i> , the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods.
<i>Concio</i> , an assembly, a speech.	<i>Pôtio</i> , drink.	<i>Séditio</i> , a mutiny.
<i>Cessio</i> , a yielding.	<i>Prôditio</i> , treachery.	<i>Sessio</i> , a sitting.
<i>Dictio</i> , a word.	<i>Proscriptio</i> , a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain and confiscating their effects.	<i>Stâtio</i> , a station.
<i>Dêditio</i> , a surrender.	<i>Questio</i> , an inquiry.	<i>Suspicio</i> , mistrust.
<i>Lectio</i> , a lesson.	<i>Rêbellio</i> , rebellion.	<i>Titillatio</i> , a tickling.
<i>Lêgio</i> , a legion, a body of men.	<i>Rêgio</i> , a country.	<i>Translatio</i> , a transferring.
<i>Mentio</i> , mention.	<i>Rêlatio</i> , a telling.	<i>Usûcâpio</i> , the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.
<i>Nôtie</i> , a notion or idea.	<i>Rêligio</i> , religion.	<i>Văcătio</i> , freedom from labour, &c.
<i>Opinio</i> , an opinion.	<i>Rêmissio</i> , a slackening.	<i>Visio</i> , an apparition.
<i>Optio</i> , a choice.		
<i>Orătio</i> , a speech.		
<i>Pensio</i> , a payment.		

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

<i>Curcûlio</i> , the throat-pipe, the weasand.	<i>Scipio</i> , a staff.	<i>Unio</i> , a pearl.
<i>Păpilio</i> , a butterfly.	<i>Scorpio</i> , a scorpion.	<i>Vespertilio</i> , a bat.
<i>Păgio</i> , a dagger.	<i>Septentrio</i> , the north.	<i>Ternio</i> , the number three.
<i>Pûsio</i> , a little child.	<i>Stellio</i> , a lizard.	<i>Quăternio</i> , —four.
	<i>Titio</i> , a firebrand.	<i>Senio</i> , —six.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *ărundo*, *arundinis*, a reed; *imăgo*, *imaginis*, an image. So,

<i>Ărûgo</i> , rust (of brass.)	<i>Hirundo</i> , a swallow.	<i>Scătûrigo</i> , a spring.
<i>Căligo</i> , darkness.	<i>Intercăpêdo</i> , a space between.	<i>Testûdo</i> , a tortoise.
<i>Cartilăgo</i> , a gristle.	<i>Lănûgo</i> , down.	<i>Torpêdo</i> , a numbness.
<i>Crêpido</i> , a creek, a bank.	<i>Lentigo</i> , a pimple.	<i>Ūligo</i> , the natural moisture of the earth.
<i>Farrăgo</i> , a mixture.	<i>Ōrigo</i> , an origin.	<i>Văletădo</i> , health.
<i>Ferrûgo</i> , rust (of iron.)	<i>Porrigo</i> , scurf or scales in the head; dandruff.	<i>Vertigo</i> , a dizziness.
<i>Formido</i> , fear.	<i>Prôpăgo</i> , a lineage.	<i>Virgo</i> , a virgin.
<i>Fûligo</i> , soot.	<i>Rûbigo</i> , rust, mildew.	<i>Vôrăgo</i> , a gulf.
<i>Grando</i> , hail.	<i>Sartăgo</i> , a frying-pan.	
<i>Hirûdo</i> , a horse-leech.		

But the following are masculine;

<i>Cardo</i> , -inis, a hinge.	<i>Margo</i> , -inis, the brink of a river; also fem.
<i>Cădo</i> , -onis, a leather cap.	<i>Ordo</i> , -inis, order.
<i>Harpăgo</i> , -onis, a drag.	<i>Tendo</i> , -inis, a tendon.
<i>Ligo</i> , -onis, a spade.	<i>Ūdo</i> , -onis, a linen or woollen sock.

Cupido, desire, is often masculine with the poets; but in prose always feminine.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis* :*Apollō*, -inis, the god *Apollō*.*Hōmo*, -inis, a man or woman.*Cāro*, flesh, fem. has *carnis*. *Anio*, mas. the name of a river, *Anienis*; *Nerio*, *Nerienis*, the wife of the god *Mars*: from the obsolete nominatives, *Anien*, *Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *onis*.*Nēmo*, -inis, m. or f. no body.*Turbo*, -inis, m. a whirlwind.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ūs* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*; &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*; so *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship; *hālo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *ānimal*, *ānimalis*, a living creature; *tōral*, -ālis, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *hālēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervical, a bolster.*Cubital*, a cushion.*Minerval*, entry-money.*Minūtal*, minced meat.*Pūteal*, a well-cover.*Vectigal*, a tax.Except, *Consul*, -ūlis, m. a consul.*Fel*, *fellis*, n. gall.*Lac*, *lactis*, n. milk.*Mel*, *mellis*, n. honey.*Mūgil*, -lis, m. a mullet-fish.*Sal*, -sālis, m. or n. salt.*Sāles*, -ium, pl. m. witty sayings.*Sol*, -sōlis, m. the sun.

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cānon, -ōnis, a rule.*Demon*, -ōnis, a spirit.*Delphin*, -inis, a dolphin.*Gnōmon*, -ōnis, the cock of a dial.*Hymen*, -ēnis, the god of marriage.*Lien*, -ēnis, the mill.*Pæan*, -ānis, a song.*Physiognōmon*, -ōnis, one who

guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.

Ren, *rēnis*, the reins.*Splen*, -ēnis, the spleen.*Syren*, -ēnis, f. a syren.*Titan*, -ānis, the sun.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as, *fūmen*, *fūminis*, a river. So,

Abdōmen, the paunch.*Acūmen*, sharpness.*Agūmen*, an army on march.*Alūmen*, alum.*Bitāmen*, a kind of clay.*Cācūmen*, the top.*Carmen*, a song, a poem.*Cognōmen*, a sir-name.*Cōlūmen*, a support.*Crīmen*, a crime.*Discrīmen*, a difference.*Exāmen*, a swarm of bees.*Fōrāmen*, a hole.*Germēn*, a sprout.*Grāmen*, grass.*Lēgūmen*, all kinds of pulse.*Lūmen*, light.*Nōmen*, a name.*Nāmen*, the Deity.*ōmen*, a presage.*Pūtāmen*, a nut-shell.*Sagmen*, vervain, an herb.*Sēmen*, a seed.*Spēcimen*, a proof*Stāmen*, the warp.*Subtēmen*, the woof.*Tegmen*, a covering.*Vīmen*, a twig.*Vōlūmen*, a folding.

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Glūten, -inis, glue.*Unguen*, -inis, ointment.*Inguen*, -inis, the groin.*Pollen*, -inis, fine flour.

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis*; *pēctēn*, a comb; *tūbicēn*, a trumpeter; *stībicēn*, a piper; and *oscēn*, v. *oscīnis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine: *sīndon*, -ōnis, fine linen; *āēdon*, -ōnis, a nightingale; *hālcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the king's fisher; *īcon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laōmēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chamēleon*, *Phaēthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR AND UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as, *Calcar*, *calcāris*, a spur; *murmur*, *murmūris*, a noise. So,

Guttur, -ūris, the throat.*Jābar*, -āris, a sun-beam.*Lācānar*, -āris, a ceiling.*Nectar*, -āris, drink of the gods.*Pulvinar*, -āris, a pillow.*Sulphur*, -ūris, sulphur.

Except, *Ebur*, -ōris, n. *ivory*.
 Far, *farris*, n. *corn*.
 Femur, -ōris, n. *the thigh*.
 Furfur, -ūris, m. *bran*.
 Fur, *fūris*, m. *a thief*.
 Hepar, -ātis, or -ātos, n. *the liver*.

Jecur, -ōris, or jecinōris, n. *the liver*.
 Rōbur, -ōris, n. *strength*.
 Sālar, -āris, m. *a trout*.
 Turtur, ūris, m. *a turtle-dove*.
 Vultur, -ūris, m. *a vulture*.

ER AND OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Anser*, *ansēris*, a goose, *or*, gander; *agger*, -ēris, a rampart; *āer*, -ēris, the air; *carcer*, -ēris, a prison; *asser*, ēris, and *assis*, -is, a plank; *dōlor*, ōris, pain; *cōlor*, ōris, a colour. So,

Actor, *a doer*, a pleader.
 Crēditor, *he that trusts or lends*.
 Cruor, *gore*.
 Dēbitor, *a debtor*.
 Fātor, *an ill smell*.
 Hōnor, *honour*.
 Lector, *a reader*.
 Lictor, *an officer among the Romans, who attended the magistrates*.
 Livor, *pale ness, malice*.
 Nidor, *a strong smell*.
 Rhetor, *a rhetorician, has rhetōris*; *castor*, a beaver, -ōri.

Ōdor, *and -os, a smell*.
 Ōlor, *a scan*.
 Pādor, *filth*.
 Pastor, *a shepherd*.
 Prætor, *a commander*.
 Pūdor, *shame*.
 Rūbor, *blushing*.
 Rūmor, *a report*.
 Sāpor, *a taste*.
 Sartor, *a cobbler or tailor*.
 Sātor, *a sower, a father*.
 Sōpor, *sleep*.

Splendor, *brightness*.
 Sponsor, *a surety*.
 Squālor, *filthiness*.
 Stūpor, *dullness*.
 Sūtor, *a sewer*.
 Tēpor, *warmth*.
 Terror, *dread*.
 Tīmor, *fear*.
 Tonsor, *a barber*.
 Tūtor, *a guardian*.
 Vāpor, *a vapour*.
 Vēnātor, *a hunter*.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Ācer, -ēris, *a maple-tree*.
 Ādor, -ōris, *fine wheat*.
 Ēquor, -ōris, *a plain, the sea*.
 Cādāver, -ēris, *a dead carcass*.
 Cicer, -ēris, *vetiches*.
 Cor, *cordis, the heart*.
 Iter, itinēris, *a journey*.

Marmor, -ōris, *marble*.
 Pāpāver, -ēris, *poppy*.
 Pīper, -ēris, *pepper*.
 Spinther, -ēris, *a clasp*.
 Tūber, -ēris, *a swelling*.
 ūber, -ēris, *a pap, or fatness*.
 Ver, vēris, *the spring*.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is feminine. *Tuber*, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masculine, but when put for the tree, is feminine.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive; as, *hic imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber*, *Octōber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly; *pāter*, *patris*, a father; *frāter*, -tris, a brother; *accipiter*, -tris, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris*; *sōter*, -ēris, a saviour; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris*; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen Gods, has *Jovis*; *linter*, -tris, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*; as, *ætās*, *ætātis*, an age. So,

Ætas, *the summer*.
 Piētas, *piety*.
 Pōtestas, *power*.
 Prōbitas, *probity*.

Sātiētas, *a glut or disgust*.
 Sīmultas, *a feud, a grudge*.
 Tempestas, *a time, a tempest*.
 Ūbertas, *fertility*.

Vērītas, *truth*.
 Vōlūntas, *will*.
 Vōluptas, *pleasure*.
 Anas, *a duck*, has *anātis*.

Exc. 1. *As*, *assis*, m. *a piece of money*, or *any thing which may be divided into twelve parts*.

Mas, māris, m. *a male*.
 Vas, vādīs, m. *a surety*.
 Vas, vāsīs, m. *a vessel*.

Note. All the parts of *as* are masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, feminine; as, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *sextunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *denunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine, some feminine, some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, -antis, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, -antis, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis* or *ados*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *drōmas*, -adis, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis* or -ados. Those that are neuter have *ātis*, as, *būchēras*, -atis, an herb; *artocreas*, -ātis, a pie.

ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as, *rūpes*, *rupis*, a rock; *nūbes*, *nubis*, a cloud. So,

Ædes, or *-is*, a temple; plur. a house.
Cautes, a ragged rock.
Clades, an overthrow, destruction.
Crates, a hurdle.
Fames, a hunger.

Fides, a fiddle.
Lues, a plague.
Môles, a heap.
Nâtes, the bullock.
Pâlumbes, m. or f. a pigeon.
Prôles, an offspring.
Pûbes, youth.

Sêpes, a hedge.
Sôboles, an offspring.
Strâges, a slaughter.
Strûes, a heap.
Sûdes, a stake.
Tâbes, a consumption
Vulpes, a fox.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Âles, -itis, a bird.
Âmes, -itis, a fowler's staff.
Âries, -êtis, a ram.
Bes, *bessis*, two thirds of a pound.
Cespes, -itis, a turf.
Êques, -itis, a horseman.
Fômes, -itis, fuel.
Gurges, -itis, a whirlpool.
Hêres, -êdis, an heir.
Indiges, -êtis, a man deified.
Interpres, -êtis, an interpreter.
Limes, -itis, a limit or bound.
Miles, -itis, a soldier.
Obaes, -idis, a hostage.

Palmes, -itis, a vine branch.
Paries, -êtis, a wall.
Pes, *pêdis*, the foot.
Pêdes, -itis, a footman.
Poples, -itis, the ham of the leg.
Prases, -idis, a president.
Sâtelles, -itis, a life guard.
Stîpes, -itis, the stock of a tree.
Termes, -itis, an olive-bough.
Trâmes, -itis, a path.
Vêles, -itis, a light-armed soldier.
Vâtes, *vâtis*, a prophet.
Verres, *verris*, a boar-pig.

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpretes*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Abies, -êtis, a fir-tree.
Cêres, -êtis, the goddess of corn.
Merces, -êdis, a reward, hire.
Merges, -itis, a handful of corn.
Quies, -êtis, rest.

Rêquies, -êtis, or *requiêi*, (of the fifth declension,) rest.
Sêgis, -êtis, growing corn.
Têgis, -êtis, a mat or coverlet.
Tûdes, *is*, or -itis, a hammer.

To these add the following adjectives:

Âles, -itis, swift.
Bipes, -êdis, two-footed.
Quadrûpes, -êdis, four-footed.
Deses, -idis, slothful.
Dives, -itis, rich.
Hêbes, -êtis, dull.
Perpes, -êtis, perpetual.

Præpes, -êtis, swift-winged.
Rêses, -idis, idle.
Sospes, -itis, safe.
Sûperstes, -itis, surviving.
Têres, -êtis, round and long, smooth.
Lôcuples, -êtis, rich.
Mansues, -êtis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as, *hic acinâces*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar: but some are neuter; as, *hoc cacoêthes*, an evil custom; *hippômânes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pânâces*, the herb all-heal; *nêpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllables *Cres*, a Cretan, have *êtis*, in the genitive; as, *hic magnes*, *magnêtis*, a loadstone; *tâpes*, -êtis, tapestry; *lêbes*, -êtis, a caldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *êtis* or *is*; as, *Dâres*, *Darêtis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Âchilles*, has *Âchillis*; or *Âchilli*, contracted for *Âchillêi* or *Âchillei*, of the second declension, from *Âchillêus*: So, *Ulysses*, *Pêricles*, *Verres*, *Aristôtêles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, *auris*, the ear; *âvis*, *avis*, a bird. So,

Apis, a bee.
Bilis, the gall, anger.
Classis, a fleet.
Felis, a cat.
Fôris, a door; oftener plur. *fores*, -ium.

Messis, a harvest or crop.
Nâris, the nostril.
Neptis, a niece.
Ôvis, a sheep.
Pellis, a skin.
Pestis, a plague.

Râtis, a raft.
Rûdis, a rod.
Vallis, a valley.
Vestis, a garment.
Vitis, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis, *axis*, an axle-tree.
Aquâlis, a water-pot; a ewer.
Callis, a beaten road.
Caulis, the stalk of an herb.

Collis, a hill.
Cenchris, a kind of serpent.
Ens, a sword.
Fascis, a bundle.

Feciâlis, a herald.
Follis, a pair of bellows.
Fustis, a staff.
Mensis, a month.

Mugilis, or -il, a mullet-fish.
Orbis, a circle, the world.
Patruelis, a cousin-german.
Piscis, a fish.

Postis, a post.
Sodalis, a companion.
Torris, a fire-brand.

Unguis, the nail.
Vectis, a lever.
Vermis, a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *crinis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *idis*; as, *týrannis*, *týrannidis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cinis, -eris, ashes.
Cucumis, -is, or -eris, a cucumber.
Dis, Ditis, the god of riches, or rich, an adj.
Glis, gliris, a dormouse, a rat.
Impūbis, or impūbes, -is, or -eris, not marriage-
able.

Pūbis, or pūbes, -is, or oftener -eris, marriageable.
Pulvis, -eris, dust.
Quiris, -itis, a Roman.
Sannis, -itis, a Samnite.
Sanguis, -inis, blood.
Sēmis, -issis, the half of any thing.
Vōmis, or -er, -eris, a ploughshare.

Lapis, Idis, a stone.

Pulvis and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impubis*, are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, Virg. Æn. xii. 413. *Impube corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes*, -is, f.) of youth, Horat. Epod. v. 13. *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adjective, has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Amnis, a river.
Anguis, a snake.
Cānalis, a conduit-pipe.
Clānis, the buttock.
Corbis, a basket.

Finis, the end; fines, the boundaries of a field
or territories, is always masculine.
Scrobis, or scrobs, a ditch.
Torquis, a chain.

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis*: *Cassis*, -idis, a helmet; *cuspis*, -idis, the point of a spear; *capis*, -idis, a kind of cup; *prōmulsis*, -idis, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hērēsis*, -eos, or *ios*, or *is*, a heresy; so, *bāsis*, f. the foot of a pillar; *phrasis*, a phrase; *phthisis*, a consumption; *poēsis*, poetry; *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *idis*, or *idos*; as, *Pāris*, -idis, or -idos, the name of a man; *aspis*, -idis, f. an asp; *ēphēmēris*, -idis, f. a day-book; *iris*, -idis, f. the rainbow; *pyxis*, -idis, f. a box. So, *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas; *canthāris*, a sort of fly; *pēriscelis*, a garter; *proboscis*, an elephant's trunk; *pýramis*, a pyramid; and *tigris*, a tiger, -idis, seldom *tigris*: all fem. Part have *idis*, as, *Psophis*, -idis, the name of a city: others have *inis*; as, *Eleusis*, -inis, the name of a city; and some have *entis*; as, *Simois*, *Simoentis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the graces, has *Charitis*.

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as, *nēpos*, -ōtis, a grandchild; *sācerdos*, -ōtis, a priest; also feminine.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, or, -or, -ōris, a tree.
Cos, cōtis, a whelstone.
Dōs, dōtis, a dowry.

Eos, eōis, the morning.
Glos, glōris, the husband's sister, or brother's
wife.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, a flower.
Hōnos, or -or, -ōris, honour.
Lābos, or -or, -ōris, labour.
Lēpos, or -or, -ōris, wit.
Mos, mōris, a custom.
Ros, rōris, dew.

Custos, -ōdis, a keeper; also fem.
Hēros, herōis, a hero.
Minos, ōis, a king of Crete.
Tros, Trōis, a Trojan.
Bos, bōvis, m. or f. an ox or cow.

Exc. 3. *Os*, *ossis*, a bone; and *ōs*, *oris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*, as, *hēros*, -ōis, a hero or great man: So *Minos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris*; as, *pectus*, *pectōris*, the breast; *tempus*, *tempōris*, time. So,

Corpus, a body.

Dēcus, honour.

Dēdēcus, disgrace.

Fācīnus, a great action.

Fēnus, wary.

Frigus, cold.

Littus, a shore.

Nēmus, a grove.

Pēcus, cattle.

Pēnus, provisions.

Pignus, a pledge.

Stergus, dung.

Tergus, a hide.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris* :

Acus, chaff.

Fānus, a funeral.

Fœdus, a covenant.

Gēnus, a kind or kindred.

Glōmus, a clew.

Lātus, the side.

Mūnus, a gift or office.

Ōnus, pot-herbs.

Ōnus, a burden.

Ōpus, a work.

Pondus, a weight.

Rūdus, rubbish.

Scēlus, a crime.

Sidus, a star.

Vellus, a fleece of wool.

Viscus, an entrail.

Ulcus, a bile.

Vulnus, a wound.

Thus *acēris*, *funēris*, &c. *Glōmus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glōmi*, of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

Incus, -ādīs, an anvil.

Pīlus, -ādīs, a pool or morass.

Pēcus, (not used,) -ādīs, a sheep.

Subscus, -ādīs, a dove-tail.

Tellus, -āris, the earth, or goddess of the earth.

Jūventūs, -ātīs, youth.

Sālus, -ātīs, safety.

Sēnectus, -ātīs, old age.

Servītus, -ātīs, slavery.

Virtus, -ātīs, virtue.

Intercus, -ātīs, a hydropsy.

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive ; as,

Crus, crūris, the leg.

Jus, jūris, law or right ; also broth.

Fus, pūris, the corrupt matter of any sore.

Ligus or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris* ; *lēpus*, masc. a hare, *lēpōris* ; *rus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *rudis* ; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

Edīpus, the name of a man, has *Edīpōdis* : sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Edīpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis* ; as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *tripōdis* ; but *lāgopus*, -ōdis, a kind of bird, or the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *unitis* ; as, *Trāpesus*, *Trāpesuntis* ; *Opus*, *Opuntis*.

YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *ysis* or *yos* ; as, *hæc chēlys*, *chelyis*, or *-yos*, a harp ; *Cāpys*, *Capyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man ; sometimes they have *ydīs*, or *ydos* ; as, *hæc chlāmīs*, *chlāmīdis*, or *chlāmīdos*, a soldier's cloak ; and sometimes *ynīs*, or *ynos* ; as, *Trāchys*, *Trachynīs*, or *Trachynos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

Æs, æris, n. brass, or money.

Fraus, fraudis, f. fraud.

Laus, laudis, f. praise.

Præs, prædis, m. or f. a surety.

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos* ; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos* ; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables : thus, *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphēi*, and that into *Orphēi*.

S WITH A CONSONANT BEFORE IT.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine ; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis* ; as,

trabs, *trābis*, a beam ; *scōbs*, *scōbis*, saw-dust ; *hiems*, *hiēmīs*, winter ; *gens*, *gentis*, a nation ; *stips*, *stīpis*, alms ; *pars*, *partis*, a part ; *sors*, *sortis*, a lot ; *mors*, *-tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine :

Chālybs, -ybīs, steel.

Dens, -tis, a tooth.

Fons, -tis, a well.

Gryps, grīpis, a griffin.

Hydrops, -ōpis, the dropsy.

Mērops, -ōpis, a woodpecker.

Mons, -tis, a mountain.

Pons, -tis, a bridge.

Seps, sēpis, a kind of serpent ; but,

Seps, sēpis, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine or feminine :

Adeps, adipis, fatness.

Rūdēns, -tis, a cable.

Scōbs, scōbis, a ditch.

Serpens, -tis, a serpent.

Stīps, stīpis, the root of a tree.

Stīps, an offspring, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the fem. or neuter

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, hæc *forceps*, *forcipis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps*, *-ipis*, a prince or princess; *particeps*, *-cipis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs*, *cælibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *căput* have *capitis*; as, *præceps*, *præcipitis*, headlong; *anceps*, *ancipitis*, doubtful; *biceps*, *-cipitis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucupis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, *frondis*, the leaf of a tree.

Juglans, *-dis*, a walnut.

Glands, *glandis*, an acorn.

Lens, *lentis*, a nit.

So *libripens*, *libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens*, *-dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concor*, *concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vécors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens* going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *quæo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens*, *euntis*; *quiens*, *queuntis*; *rëdiens*, *rëdeuntis*; *nëquiens*, *nequeuntis*; but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryms*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *căput*, *capitis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinciput*, *sincipitis*, the forehead; and *occiput*, *-itis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as, *vox*, *vôcis*, the voice; *lux*, *lûcis*, light. So,

Appendix, *-icis*, an addition; *Crux*, *crûcis*, a cross.

Nutrix, *-icis*, a nurse.

dim, *-icula*.

Fæx, *-cis*, dregs.

Nux, *nûcis*, a nut.

Arx, *arcis*, a castle.

Fæx, *-cis*, a scythe.

Pax, *-icis*, peace.

Cælex, *-ôcis*, a pinnacle.

Fax, *-âcis*, a torch.

Pix, *plcis*, pitch.

Cervix, *-icis*, the neck.

Filix, *-icis*, a fern.

Râdix, *-icis*, a root.

Cicatrix, *-icis*, a scar.

Lanx, *-cis*, a plate.

Sâlix, *-icis*, a willow.

Coruix, *-icis*, a crow.

Lôdix, *-icis*, a sheet.

Vibix, or *-ex*, *-icis*, the mark of

Coturnix, *-icis*, a quail.

Mëretrix, *-icis*, a courtesan.

a wound.

Coxendix, *-icis*, the hip.

Merx, *-cis*, merchandise.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thorax*, *-âcis*, a breast-plate; *Côrax*, *-âcis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, *-icis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

Apex, the tuft or tassel, on the top of a priest's cap; the cap itself, or the top of any thing.

Côdex, a book.

Pontifex, a chief priest.

Artifex, an artist.

Cûlex, a gnat, a midge.

Pûlex, a flea.

Carnifex, an executioner.

Frûtex, a shrub.

Râmex, a rupture.

Caudex, the trunk of a tree.

Index, an informer.

Sôrex, a rat.

Cimex, a bug.

Lâtex, any liquor.

Vertex, the crown of the head.

Vervex, a wedder sheep, has *vervëcis*; *fanisëx*, a mower of hay, *fanisëcis*; *rëvëx*, m. *-ëcis*, a vine-branch cut off.

Mûrex, a shell-fish, purple.

Vortex, a whirlpool.

Podex, the breech.

To these masculines add,

Călix, *-icis*, a cup.

Ôryx, *-icis*, a wild goat.

Călyx, *-icis*, the bud of a flower.

Phœnix, *-icis*, a bird so called.

Coccyx, *-igis*, vel *-icis*, a cuckoo.

Trâdix, *ûcis*, a graft or off-set of a vine, also fem.

Fornix, *-icis*, a vault.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

Fornax, *-âcis*, a furnace.

Hălex, *-ëcis*, a herring.

Pănax, *-âcis*, the herb all-heal.

Smălex, *-âcis*, the herb rope-weed.

Climax, *-âcis*, a ladder.

Cêrex, *-icis*, a sedge.

Forfex, *-icis*, a pair of scissors.

Supellex, *supellectilis*, household furniture.

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, *-cis*, the heel, or the end of any thing; the goal; but *calx*, lime, is always fem.

Obëx, *-icis*, a belt or bow.

Cortex, *-icis*, the bark of a tree.

Perdix, *-icis*, a partridge.

Hystrix, *-icis*, a porcupine.

Pămex, *-icis*, a pumice-stone.

Imbrex, *-icis*, a gutter, or roof tile.

Râmex, *-icis*, sorrel, an herb.

Lynx, *-cis*, an ounce, a beast of very quick sight.

Sandix, *-icis*, a purple colour.

Limax, *-âcis*, a mail.

Silex, *-icis*, a flint.

Vărix, *icis*, a scold rein.

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive :

Aquilex, -ëgis, a well maker.
Conjux, or ux, -ûgis, a husband or wife.
Frux, (not used,) -frâgis, f. corn.
Grex, grëgis, m. or f. a flock.
Lex, lëgis, f. a law.
Phalanx, -angis, f. a phalanx.

Rëmex, -igis, a rower.
Rex, rëgis, a king.
Nix, nivis, f. snow.
Nox, noctis, f. night.
Sënex, sënis, (an adj.) old.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns : thus, *bombyx*, *bômbÿcis*, a silk worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine ; *ônyx*, masc. or fem. *onÿchis*, a precious stone ; and so *sardönyx* ; *lärÿnx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe ; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian ; *sphinx*, -ngis, f. a fabulous hag ; *strix*, -igis, f. a screech-owl ; *Styx*, -ÿgis, f. a river in hell ; *Hylax*, -etis, the name of a dog ; *Bibrax*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e* ; as, *Esuriente leoni ex ore exsculpere prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion. Lucil. *Heret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. Æn. x. 361. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

Amussis, f. a mason's rule.
Bûris, f. the beam of a plough.
Gummis, f. gum.
Mëphitis, f. a damp or strong smell.
Râvis, f. hoarseness.
Sinâpis, f. mustard.

Cannâbis, f. hemp.
Cûcûmis, m. a cucumber.
Sitis, f. thirst.
Tussis, f. a cough.
Vis, f. strength.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places ; as, *Hispâlis*, Seville, a city in Spain ; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Lybia :—2. of rivers ; as, *Tiberis*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome ; *Bætis*, the Guadalquivir, in Spain : so, *Athësis*, *Arâris*, *Athis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. of gods ; as, *Anûbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serâpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in* ; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tiberim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im* ; as,

Clâvis, f. a key.
Cûtis, f. the skin.
Febris, f. a fever.
Nâvis, f. a ship.

Pelvis, f. a basin.
Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.
Restis, f. a rope.
Sëcûris, f. an axe.

Sëmentis, f. a sowing.
Strigilis, f. a horse-comb.
Turris, f. a tower.

Thus, *navem*, or *navim* ; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. Greek Nouns form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as *lampas*, *lampâdis*, or *lampâdos*, *lampâdem*, or *lampâda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is*, with a vowel before it : *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem* and *Troa*, a Trojan ; *hëros*, a hero ; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a* : *Pan*, the god of shepherds ; *æther*, the sky ; *delphin*, a dolphin ; thus, *Pâna*, *æthère*, *delphina*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in* ; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida* ; as, *Pâris*, *Paridis*, or *Paridos* ; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Paridem*, never *Parida*. So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in* ; as, *Elis*, *Eldis*, or *Eldos*, *Eldem*, or *Elda* ; seldom *Elim* or *Elin* ; a city in Greece. In like manner, feminines in *ys*, *ÿdos*, have *ÿdem*, or *ÿda*, not *ÿm* or *ÿn* in the accusative ; as, *chlâmÿs*, -ÿdem, or -ÿda, not *chlâmÿn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n* ; as, *metamorphôsis*, -eos, or -ios, *metamorphôsim*, or *in*, a change ; *Tëthÿs*, -ÿos, or -ÿis, *Tëthÿm*, or -ÿn ; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea* ; as, *Thëseus*, *Thësea* ; *Tydeus*, *Tydeä*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i*, in the ablative ; as, *sëdile*, *sedili* ; *animal*, *animâli* ; *calcar*, *calcâri*. Except proper names ; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town ; and the following neuters in *ar* :

Far, farre, corn.
Hëpar, -âte, the liver.
Jûhar, -âre, a sun-beam.

Nectar, -âre, drink of the gods.
Par, pâre, a match, a pair.
Sal, sâlë, salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi*: but *canābis, Batīs, and tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris, turre, or turri*; but *restis*, a rope; and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *fmis, supellex, vectis, pūgil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mugilis*; so *rus, occiput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis, classis sors, imber, anguis, aris, postis, fustis, amnis, and ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *astati, cani, lapidē, ori, &c.*

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives, have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis, -i*, a halberd; *mōlaris, -i*, a millstone; *quadrirēmis, -i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprilis, -i*; *Dēcember, -bri, &c.* But *rūdīs*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvénis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise nouns ending in *il, x, ceps, or ns*; as,

Adōlescens, a young man.

Princeps, a prince.

Torrents, a brook.

Infans, an infant.

Sēnex, an old man.

Vigil, a watchman.

Thus, *adolēscēte, infante, senē, &c.*

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys* which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys, Atye, or Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermōnes, rupēs*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppēs, puppēis, or puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita, itinēra*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia, calcāria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile, sediī, sedilium*; *turris, turre, or turri, turrium*; *caput, capite, capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas, a male, māre, marium*; *vas, a surety, vādium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas, a state or city, civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatum*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis, an enemy, hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens, a nation, gentium*; *urbs, a city, urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens, vātes, pānis, jūvénis, and cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the ablative plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. flesh.

Lis, litis, f. strife.

Cohors, -tis, f. a company.

Mus, mātis, m. a mouse.

Cor, cordis, n. the heart.

Nix, nivis, f. snow.

Cos, cotis, f. a hone or whetstone.

Nox, noctis, f. the night.

Dos, dotis, f. a dowry.

Os, ossis, n. a bone.

Faux, faucis, f. the jaws.

Quīris, -itis, a Roman.

Glis, gliris, m. a rat.

Samnīs, -itis, m. or f. a Samnite.

Lar, larīs, m. a household god.

Ūter, utris, m. a bottle.

Linter, -tris, m. or f. a little boat.

Thus *Samnitium, linterium, litium, &c.* Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *besium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boum*; in the dative, *bōdus* or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Mācedo, a Macedonian*; *Arabs, an Arabian*; *Æthiops, an Ethiopian*; *Monōceros, an unicorn*; *Lynx, a beast so called*; *Thraz, a Thracian*; *Macedōnum, Arabum, Æthiopum, Monocerōtum, Lyncum, Thrācum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Epigramma, epigrammātum, or epigrammatōn*, an epigram; *metamorphosis, -ium, or -eōn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *manēs, m. souls departed, manium*; *caēlites, m. inhabitants of heaven, caelium*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis*, or *manes* and *caeles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnaliūm*, and *Saturnaliorum*. So *Bacchanalia, Compitalia, Terminādia, &c.*

Oss. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nocentum* for *nocentium*; and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *caletum* for *caletum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncope*; and the latter by *Epenhesis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as, *poëma*, a poem, *poëmatīs*, rather than *poëmatibus*, from the old nominative *poëmatum* of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troäsi* or *Troäsin*, for *Troädibus*, from *Troas*, *Troadis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteīs*, or *partīs*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampadem*, or *lampäda*, *lampädes*, or *lampädas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *heroas*. *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampädīs*, or *-ädos*; *-ädi*; *ädem*, or *-äda*; *-as*; *-äde*. Plural, *-ädes*; *-ädum*; *-ädibus*; *-ädes*, or *-ädas*; *-ädes*; *-adibus*.

Troas, f. *Troädīs*, or *-ädos*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*. Pl. *Troades*, *-um*; *ibus si* or *sin*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.

Tros, m. *Troīs*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *Phillidīs*, or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, or *da*; *i* or *is*; *de*.

Päris, m. *Paridīs*, or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, *Parim*, or *in*; *i*; *de*.

Chlämys, f. *Chlämydīs*, or *-ydos*; *ydī*; *ydem*, or *yda*; *ys*; *yde*; &c.

Cäpys, m. *Cäpyīs*, or *-yos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

Mëtämorphösis, f. *-is* or *-eos*; *i*; *em* or *in*; *i*; *i*, &c.

Orpheus, m. *-eos*; *ei* or *ei*; *ea*; *eu*; abl. *eo*; of the second declension.

Dido, f. *Didūs* or *Didönīs*; *Dido* or *Didomi*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are: nom. sing. *us*; gen. *ūs*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. like the nom. Nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*. See examples, *currus*, a chariot; and *cornu*, a horn, page 6.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

Acus, a needle.

Anus, an old woman.

Dömus, a house.

Ficus, a fig.

Mänuš, the hand.

Pënuš, a store-house.

Porticus, a gallery.

Spëcuš, a den.

Tribuš, a tribe.

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second declension, and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimänuš*, having one hand; *centimänuš*, &c. adjectives. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dömuš, a house, feminine.

Sing.
Nom. <i>domuš</i> ,
Gen. <i>domūs</i> , or <i>-mi</i> ,
Dat. <i>domui</i> , or <i>-mo</i> ;
Acc. <i>domum</i> ,
Voc. <i>domuš</i> ,
Abl. <i>domo</i> ;

Plur.
Nom. <i>domuš</i> ,
Gen. <i>domorum</i> , or <i>-uum</i> ,
Dat. <i>domibus</i> ,
Acc. <i>domos</i> , or <i>-us</i> ,
Voc. <i>domuš</i> ,
Abl. <i>domibus</i> .

Note. *Domūs*, in the genitive signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *memineris domi*. Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ūsus*, in the dative and ablative plural :

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Lacus</i> , a lake.	<i>Spēcus</i> , a den.
<i>Arcus</i> , a bow.	<i>Partus</i> , a birth.	<i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.
<i>Artus</i> , a joint.	<i>Portus</i> , a harbour.	<i>Vēru</i> , a spit.
<i>Gēnu</i> , the knee.		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ibus* ; as, *portibus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. *Iesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane ; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue* ; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis* ; as, *Ejus annuis causā*, for *amūs*. Terent. Heut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u* ; as, *Resistere impetui*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu*, *sibi*, for *usui*, ib. xiii. 71. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted ; as, *cutrām* for *cutrum*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender. See examples, *res*, a thing ; and *facies*, the face, page 6.

Except *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural ; and *mēridies*, the mid-day or noon, masculine.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three : *fides*, faith ; *spes*, hope ; *res*, a thing ; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four : *ābies*, a fir tree ; *āries*, a ram ; *pāries*, a wall ; and *quies*, rest ; which are of the third declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes :

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.

Āvernus, a lake in Campania, hell.

Mænālus, a hill in Arcadia.

Dindymus, a hill in Phrygia.

Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.

Ismārus, a hill in Thrace.

Tenārus, a promontory in Laconia.

Massicus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.

Tartārus, hell.

Tāygētus, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum* ; *Dindyma*, -orum ; &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular ; and *jūga* or *cacumina*, or the like in the plural.

2. Masculine in the singular, and in the plural masculine and neuter.

Jocus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca* ; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.

Carbāsus, a sail, pl. *carbāsa* ; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.

Cælum, pl. *cæli*, heaven ; *Elÿsium*, pl. *Elysi*, the Elysian fields ; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. Neuter in the singular, in the plural masculine or neuter.

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri*, and *rastra* ; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.

Dêlicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ* ; *Epûlum*, a banquet, pl. *epûla* ; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ*, and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites* ; as, *vas*, *vāsis*, a vessel, pl. *vāsa*, *vasorum* ; *jūgêrum*, *jūgêri*, an acre, pl. *jūgêra*, *jūgêrum*, *jūgêribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jūgêris* and *jūgêre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong; *sināpi*, mustard; *māne*, the morning; as, *clārum māne*, Pers. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c. *cēpe*, an onion; *gausāpe*, a rough coat, &c. all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, Pers. *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. Mart. *O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks. *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mōnoptōta*; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dicis*, and *nauci*, in the gen. singular; thus, *dicis gratiā*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *inficias*, and *incita* or *incitas*, in the acc. pl. thus, *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a strait or nonplus; *ingrātius*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave; *ergō*, for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *compēde*, m. with a fetter; *casse*, m. with a net; *veprem*, m. a brier: Plur. *ambāges*, -ibus, *compedes*, -ibus, *casses*, -ium; *vepres*, -ium, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *nēcesse*, or -um, necessity; *vōlūpe*, or *volut'*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. singular: *vesper*, m. abl. *vespēre*, or *vespēri*, the evening; *siremps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sirempse*; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *verbēris*, n. gen. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe: in the plural entire; *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verberibus*, &c.—*vēpētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētia*, nom. plur. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *inferiæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēminis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dīca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*; pl. *dicas*. *Tantundem*, in the nom. and acc. *tantidem*, in the gen. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns, may be added these neuters, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs: *ēpos*, an heroic poem; *cācoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.—also, *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraptōta*: *viciis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plur. entire; *ditiōnis* wants it altogether; *viciis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta*; thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genitive singular, and the plural entirely; dative singular, *chao*. So *sātias*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or full of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth declension, wants the genitive, and perhaps the dative singular; also the genitive, dative, and ablative plural.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *justitia*, justice; *ambitus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *āpium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *triticum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *āvena*, oats; *jūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

<i>Aër</i> , -aëris, <i>the air.</i>	<i>Nëmo</i> , -nëis, <i>no body.</i>
<i>Æther</i> , -ëris, <i>the sky.</i>	<i>Pënus</i> , -i, or -üs, <i>all manner of provisions.</i>
<i>Fîmus</i> , -i, <i>the evening-star.</i>	<i>Pontus</i> , -i, <i>the sea.</i>
<i>Hespërus</i> , -i, <i>the evening-star.</i>	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ëris, <i>dust.</i>
<i>Limus</i> , -i, <i>slime.</i>	<i>Sanguis</i> , -inîs, <i>blood.</i>
<i>Mëridies</i> , -iëi, <i>mid-day.</i>	<i>Söpor</i> , -öris, <i>sleep.</i>
<i>Mundus</i> , <i>a woman's ornaments.</i>	<i>Viscus</i> , -i, <i>bird-lime.</i>
<i>Muscus</i> , -i, <i>moss.</i>	

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

<i>Argilla</i> , -aë, <i>potter's earth.</i>	<i>Sälus</i> , -ütis, <i>safety.</i>
<i>Fäma</i> , -aë, <i>fame.</i>	<i>Sitis</i> , -is, <i>thirst.</i>
<i>Hümus</i> , -i, <i>the ground.</i>	<i>Säpëllëx</i> , -ecclis, <i>household furniture.</i>
<i>Lues</i> , -is, <i>a plague.</i>	<i>Täbes</i> , -is, <i>a consumption.</i>
<i>Plebs</i> , plëbis, <i>the common people.</i>	<i>Tëllus</i> , -üris, <i>the earth.</i>
<i>Pübes</i> , -is, <i>the youth.</i>	<i>Vëspëra</i> , -aë, <i>the evening.</i>
<i>Quies</i> , -ëtis, <i>rest.</i>	

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

<i>Album</i> , -i, <i>a list of names.</i>	<i>Nihil</i> , nihîlum, or nil, <i>nothing.</i>
<i>Dilicûlum</i> , -i, <i>the dawning of day.</i>	<i>Pëlägus</i> , -i, <i>the sea.</i>
<i>Ebur</i> , -öris, <i>ivory.</i>	<i>Pënum</i> , -i, and <i>penus</i> , öris, <i>all kinds of provisions.</i>
<i>Gëllu</i> , ind. <i>frost.</i>	<i>Sal</i> , sälis, <i>salt.</i>
<i>Hilum</i> , -i, <i>the black speck of a bean, a trifle.</i>	<i>Sëniûm</i> , -ii, <i>old age.</i>
<i>Justitium</i> , -i, <i>a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.</i>	<i>Vër</i> , vëris, <i>the spring.</i>
<i>Lëthum</i> , <i>death.</i>	<i>Virus</i> , -i, <i>poison.</i>
<i>Lütum</i> , -i, <i>clay.</i>	

5. Many nouns want the singular ; as, the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; thus,

<i>Apollinäres</i> , -ium, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>	<i>Syracüsæ</i> , -arum, <i>Syracuse.</i>
<i>Bacchanälia</i> , -ium, & -iorum, <i>the feasts of Bacchus.</i>	<i>Hierosolyma</i> , -orum, <i>Jerusalem ; or Hierosolyma, æ, of the first declension.</i>
<i>Bucölica</i> , -orum, <i>a book of pastorals.</i>	
<i>Olympia</i> , -orum, <i>the Olympic games.</i>	

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

<i>Cancelli</i> , <i>latices, or windows made with cross-bars like a net ; a rail or balustrade round any place ; bounds or limits.</i>	<i>Föri</i> , <i>the gangways of a ship, seats in the circus, or the cells of a bee-hive.</i>
<i>Cäni</i> , <i>gray hairs.</i>	<i>Furfures</i> , -um, <i>scales in the head.</i>
<i>Cassës</i> , -ium, <i>a hunter's net.</i>	<i>Infëri</i> , <i>the gods below.</i>
<i>Cëlëres</i> , -um, <i>the light-horse.</i>	<i>Lëmüres</i> , -um, <i>hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.</i>
<i>Cödicilli</i> , <i>writings.</i>	<i>Libëri</i> , <i>children.</i>
<i>Druïdes</i> , -um, <i>the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.</i>	<i>Majöres</i> , -ium, <i>ancestors.</i>
<i>Fascës</i> , -ium, <i>a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.</i>	<i>Minöres</i> , -um, <i>successors.</i>
<i>Fasti</i> , -orum, or <i>fastus</i> , -uum, <i>calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.</i>	<i>Nätäles</i> , -um, <i>parentage.</i>
<i>Fines</i> , -ium, <i>the borders of a country, or a country.</i>	<i>Postëri</i> , <i>posterity.</i>
	<i>Pröcëres</i> , -um, <i>the nobles.</i>
	<i>Pügilläres</i> , -ium, <i>writing-tables.</i>
	<i>Sëntes</i> , -ium, <i>thorns.</i>
	<i>Süpëri</i> , <i>the gods above.</i>
	<i>Vëpres</i> , -ium, <i>briers.</i>

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

<i>Alpes</i> , -ium, <i>the Alps.</i>	<i>Excübæ</i> , <i>watches.</i>	<i>Läpicidinæ</i> , <i>stone quarries.</i>
<i>Angustie</i> , <i>difficulties.</i>	<i>Exsëquie</i> , <i>funerals.</i>	<i>Litræ</i> , <i>an epistle.</i>
<i>Apnä</i> , <i>genogaws.</i>	<i>Exivä</i> , <i>spoils.</i>	<i>Lactës</i> , -ium, <i>the small guts.</i>
<i>Argütæ</i> , <i>quirks, willicisms.</i>	<i>Fäcëtie</i> , <i>pleasant sayings.</i>	<i>Mänübie</i> , <i>spoils taken in war.</i>
<i>Bigæ</i> , <i>a chariot, drawn by two horses.</i>	<i>Fäcültates</i> , -ium, <i>one's goods and chattels.</i>	<i>Minä</i> , <i>threats.</i>
<i>Trigæ</i> , —by three.	<i>Fëriæ</i> , <i>holidays.</i>	<i>Minütie</i> , <i>little niceties.</i>
<i>Quadrigæ</i> , —by four.	<i>Gädës</i> , -ium, <i>Cadis.</i>	<i>Nügæ</i> , <i>trifles.</i>
<i>Braccæ</i> , <i>breeches.</i>	<i>Gerræ</i> , <i>trifles.</i>	<i>Nundinä</i> , <i>a market.</i>
<i>Branchiæ</i> , <i>the gills of a fish.</i>	<i>Hyädes</i> , -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>	<i>Naptia</i> , <i>a marriage.</i>
<i>Charites</i> , -um, <i>the three graces.</i>	<i>Indüciæ</i> , <i>a truce.</i>	<i>Offüciæ</i> , <i>cheats.</i>
<i>Cünæ</i> , <i>a cradle.</i>	<i>Indüviæ</i> , <i>clothes to put on.</i>	<i>Öpëræ</i> , <i>workmen.</i>
<i>Dëclmæ</i> , <i>tilhes.</i>	<i>Inëptiæ</i> , <i>silly stories.</i>	<i>Päriëntinä</i> , <i>ruinous walls.</i>
<i>Diræ</i> , <i>imprecations, the furies.</i>	<i>Insidiæ</i> , <i>mares.</i>	<i>Partës</i> , -ium, <i>a party.</i>
<i>Divitiæ</i> , <i>riches.</i>	<i>Kälendæ</i> , <i>Nönæ</i> , <i>Idus</i> , -uum, <i>names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i>	<i>Phälëræ</i> , <i>trappings.</i>
<i>Dryädës</i> , -um, <i>the nymphs of the woods.</i>		<i>Plägæ</i> , <i>nets.</i>
		<i>Pleiädës</i> , -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>
		<i>Prestigiæ</i> , <i>enchantments.</i>

Primitiæ, *first fruits*.
 Quisquiliæ, *noceplings*.
 Reliquiæ, *a remainder*.
 Sælebæ, *rugged places*.
 Sælinæ, *salt-pits*.
 Scala, *a ladder*.

Scætebræ, *a spring*.
 Scôpæ, *a bosom*.
 Tènebræ, *darkness*.
 Thermæ, *hot baths*.
 Thermopylæ, *straits of mount Oeta*.

Tricæ, *toys*.
 Valvæ, *folding doors*.
 Vergiliæ, *the seven stars*.
 Vindiciæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence*.

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, *public acts, or records*.
 Æstiva, *sc. castra, summer quarters*.
 Arma, *arms*.
 Bellaria, -orum, *sweetmeats*.
 Bona, *goods*.
 Brèvia, -ium, *shelves*.
 Castra, *a camp*.
 Chæristia, -orum, *a peace-feast*.
 Cibaria, *viaticals*.
 Cômitia, *an assembly of the people to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials*.
 Crèpundia, *children's baubles*.
 Cribnûla, *a cradle, an origin*.
 Dictéria, *scoffs, willicisms*.
 Exta, *the entrails*.
 Februa, -orum, *purifying sacrifices*.
 Flabra, *blasts of wind*.
 Fræga, *strawberries*.
 Hybernæ, *sc. castra, winter quarters*.
 Iliæ, -ium, *the entrails*.
 Incubûla, *a cradle*.
 Insecta, *insects*.
 Iusta, *funeral rites*.
 Lamenta, *lamentations*.
 Lautia, *provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors*.
 Lustra, *dens of wild beasts*.
 Magalia, -ium, *cottages*.

Moenia, -ium, *the walls of a city*.
 Mûnia, -iorum, *offices*.
 Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus*.
 Ovilla, -ium, *an enclosure where the people went to give their votes*.
 Pålæaria, -ium, *the dew-lap of a beast*.
 Påråpherna, *all things the wife brings the husband except her dowry*.
 Påréntalia, -ium, *solemnities at the funeral of parents*.
 Philtra, *love potions*.
 Præcordia, *the bowels*.
 Principia, *the place in the camp where the general's tent stood*.
 Pýthia, *games in honour of Apollo*.
 Rostra, *a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people*.
 Scrûta, *old clothes*.
 Sponsalia, -ium, *espousals*.
 Ståtiva, *sc. castra, a standing camp*.
 Suovétaurilia, -ium, *a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox*.
 Tålaria, -ium, *winged shoes*.
 Tesqua, *rough places*.
 Transtra, *the seats where the rowers sit in ships*.
 Utensilia, -ium, *utensils*.

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense ; thus, *castrum*, a castle ; *littera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways : 1. In termination only ; as, *arbor* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only ; as, *laurus*, gen. *lauri* and *lauris*, a laurel-tree ; *sequester*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender ; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension ; as, *materia*, -æ, or *materies*, -iei, matter ; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ei, or contracted, *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender ; as, *tonitrus*, -is, masc. *tonitru*, neuter, thunder. 6. In declension and gender ; as, *pénus*, -i, and -ûs, m. or f. or *pénus*, -ûris, neut. all kinds of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension ; as, *æther*, -ûris, masc. and *æthra*, -æ, feminine, the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied ; as, *tigris*, -is, or -idis, a tiger ; to which may be added nouns which have the same signification in different numbers ; as, *Fidena*, -æ ; or *Fidenæ*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations ; as, *menda*, -æ ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault ; *cassia*, -idis ; and *cassida*, -dæ, a helmet. So,

Æolus, and -um, *a grape-stone*.
 Alvear, and -æ, and -ium, *a bee-hive*.
 Amârucus, and -um, *sweet marjoram*.
 Ancle, and -lum, *an oval shield*.
 Angportus, -ûs, and -i, and -um, *a narrow lane*.
 Aphractus, and -um, *an open ship*.
 Aplustre, and -um, *the flag, colours*.
 Bâculus, and -um, *a staff*.
 Balteus, and -um, *a belt*.
 Bâtilus, and -um, *a fire-shovel*.
 Cápulus, and -um, *a hill*.
 Cápus, and -o, *a capon*.
 Cèpa, and -æ, indec. *an onion*.
 Clypeus, and -um, *a shield*.
 Collûvies, and -io, *filth, dirt*.
 Compâges, and -go, *a joining*.
 Conger, and -grus, *a large eel*.
 Crôcus, and -um, *saffron*.

Cûbitus, and -um, *a cubit*.
 Diltivium, and -es, *a deluge*.
 Elèphantus, and Elephas, -antis, *an elephant*.
 Elégus, and -eia, *an elegy*.
 Essèda, and -um, *a chariot*.
 Eventus, and -um, *an event*.
 Fulgetra, and -um, *lightning*.
 Gålêrus, and -um, *a hat*.
 Gibbus, and -a, and -er, *eria*, or -eri, *a bunch, a swelling*.
 Glattinum, and -en, *glue*.
 Hebdomas, and -ada, *a week*.
 Intrita, and -um, *fine mortar, minced meat*.
 Librarium, and -a, *a book-case*.
 Macéria, and -es, -iei, *a wall*.
 Milliære, and -ium, *a mile*.
 Mòntum, and -us, -ûs, *an admonition*.
 Muria, and -es, -iei, *brine or pickle*.

Nāsus, and -um, *the nose*.
 Obsidio, and -um, *a siege*.
 Oestrus, and -um, *a gad-bee*.
 Ostrea, and -um, *an oyster*.
 Peplus, and -um, *a veil, a robe*.
 Pistrina, and -um, *a bake-house*.
 Prætextus, -ūs, and -um, *a pretext*.
 Rāpa, and -um, *a turnip*.
 Rūma, and -men, *the cud*.
 Ruscus, and -um, *a brush*.
 Seps, and sēpes, *f. a hedge*.

Segmen, and -mentum, *a piece or paring*.
 Sibilus, and -um, *a hissing*.
 Sinus, and -um, *a milk-pail*.
 Spurctia, and -es, *nastiness*.
 Strāmen, and -tum, *straw*.
 Suffimen, and -tum, *a perfume*.
 Tignus, and -um, *a plank*.
 Tōral, and -āle, *a bed-covering*.
 Torcular, and -are, *a wine-press*.
 Viscus, and -um, *bird-lime*.
 Vēternus, and -um, *a lethargy*.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *vāsa, -orum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priāmides*, the son of Priamus; *Æētias*, the daughter of Æētes; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æācides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æācus; *Rōmūlida*, the Romans, from their first king, Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne*, are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, -*de*, &c. pl. *dæ*, -*darum*, &c. *Nērīne*, -*es*; *Tyndāris*, -*idis*, or -*idos*; *Æētias*, -*adis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Partial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, -*adis*, a woman born at Troy; *Sicūlus*, -*i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, -*idis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Mācedo*, -*ōnis*; *Arpinas*, -*ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But partials, for the most part, are to be considered as adjectives having a substantive understood; as, *Rōmānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *justitia*, justice; *bōnitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartūla*, a little paper; *ōpusculum*, a little work; *corcūlum*, a little heart; *rēticulum*, a small net; *scābellum*, a small form; *lāpillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pāgella*, a little page; from *liber*, *charta*, *ōpus*, *cor*, *rēte*, *scamnum*, *lapis*, *culter*, *pāgina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus*; from *cista*, *cistula*, *cistella*, *cistellula*; from *hōmo*, *hōmuncio*, *hōmunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *us*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*; as, *Cāpito*, -*ōnis*, having a large head; so, *nāso*, *lābeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *āmor*, love; *doctrīna*, learning; from *āmo*, and *dōceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson; *āmātor*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creātūra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word added to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *hard*, *soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension :

<i>Acer</i> , sharp.	<i>Celer</i> , swift.	<i>Saluber</i> , wholesome.
<i>Alacer</i> , cheerful.	<i>Equester</i> , belonging to a horse.	<i>Sylvester</i> , woody.
<i>Campester</i> , belonging to a plain.	<i>Paluster</i> , marshy.	<i>Volucer</i> , swift.
<i>Celeber</i> , famous.	<i>Pedester</i> , on foot.	

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bonus*, for the masculine; *bona*, for the feminine; *bonum*, for the neuter, good. See declension of *bonus*, page 7.

Tener, *tenera*, *tenerum*, *tender*. See declension of *tener*, page 7.

Like *tener*, decline,

<i>Asper</i> , rough.	<i>Lacer</i> , torn.	<i>Miser</i> , wretched.
<i>Cæter</i> , (hardly used,) the rest.	<i>Liber</i> , free.	<i>Prosper</i> , prosperous.
<i>Gibber</i> , crook-backed.		

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *laniger*, bearing wool; *opifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise *satür*, *satürä*, *satürum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *ater*, *atra*, *atrum*, black; genitive *atri*, *atræ*, *atri* dative *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c.

See declension of *pulcher*, page 7. So,

<i>Ager</i> , sick.	<i>Macer</i> , lean.	<i>Sacer</i> , sacred.
<i>Cræber</i> , frequent.	<i>Niger</i> , black.	<i>Scæber</i> , rough.
<i>Glåber</i> , smooth.	<i>Piger</i> , slow.	<i>Teter</i> , ugly.
<i>Integer</i> , entire.	<i>Ruber</i> , red.	<i>Våfer</i> , crafty.
<i>Lådicer</i> , ludicrous.		

Dexter, right, has -*tra*, -*trum*, or -*tëra*, -*tërum*.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all their genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

<i>Unus</i> , -a, -um, genitive <i>unius</i> , dative <i>uni</i> , one.	<i>Alter</i> , <i>altërius</i> , one of two, the other.
<i>Alius</i> , -ius, one of many, another.	Neuter, - <i>trius</i> , neither.
<i>Nullus</i> , <i>nullius</i> , none.	<i>Uter</i> , <i>utrius</i> , <i>whichever</i> of the two.
<i>Solus</i> , -ius, alone.	<i>Uterque</i> , <i>utriusque</i> , both.
<i>Totus</i> , -ius, whole.	<i>Uterlibet</i> , - <i>utriuslibet</i> , { <i>which</i> of the two you
<i>Ullus</i> , -ius, any.	<i>Utervis</i> , - <i>triusvis</i> , } <i>please</i> .

Alteruter, the one or the other, *alterutrus*, *alterutri*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*, *alteri utri*, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*, page 7.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *felix*, for the masculine, *felix* for the feminine, *felix* for the neuter, happy.

See declension of *felix*, page 7.

In like manner decline,

<i>Amens</i> , -tis, mad.	<i>Contumax</i> , stubborn.	<i>Frequens</i> , frequent.
<i>Atrox</i> , -ocis, cruel.	<i>Demens</i> , mad.	<i>Ingens</i> , huge.
<i>Audax</i> , -acis, and -ens, -tis, bold.	<i>Edax</i> , gluttonous.	<i>Iners</i> , -tis, sluggish.
<i>Blix</i> , -icis, woven with a double thread.	<i>Efficax</i> , effectual.	<i>Insons</i> , guileless.
<i>Cåpax</i> , capacious.	<i>Elëgans</i> , handsome.	<i>Mendax</i> , lying.
<i>Cicur</i> , -üris, lame.	<i>Fallax</i> , deceitful.	<i>Mordax</i> , biting, satirical.
<i>Clëmens</i> , -tis, merciful.	<i>Fërax</i> , fertile.	<i>Pernix</i> , -icis, swift.
	<i>Fërox</i> , fierce.	<i>Pervicax</i> , wilful.

Pétulant, forward, saucy.
Prægnans, with child.
Prudens, prudent.
Rêcens, fresh.
Rêpens, sudden.
Sagax, -âcis, sagacious.

Sâlux, -âcis, lustful.
Sâpiens, wise.
Sôlers, shrewd.
Sons, guilty.
Tênax, tenacious.

Trux, -ûcis, cruel.
Ûber, -êris, fertile.
Vehemens, vehement.
Vêlox, -ôcis, swift.
Vôrax, devouring.

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *lenis*, for the masculine and feminine; *lene*, for the neuter, *mild*; so, *lenior*, *lenior*, *lenius*, *milder*. See declension of *lenis*, page 7.

In like manner decline,

Agilis, active.
Amâbilis, lovely.
Biennis, of two years.
Brêvis, short.
Civilis, courteous.
Cœlestis, heavenly.
Cômis, mild, affable.
Crûdêlis, cruel.
Debilis, weak.
Dêformis, ugly.
Dôcilis, teachable.
Dulcis, sweet in taste.
Exilis, slender.
Exsanguis, bloodless.
Fortis, brave.
Frâgilis, brittle.
Grandis, great.
Grâvis, heavy.

Hilâris, cheerful.
Ignôbilis, of mean parentage.
Immânis, huge, cruel.
Înânis, empty.
Incôlûmis, safe.
Infâmis, infamous.
Insignis, remarkable.
Jûgis, perpetual.
Lævis, smooth.
Lêvis, light.
Médiocris, middling.
Mirâbilis, wonderful.
Mitis, meek.
Mollis, soft.
Omnis, all.
Putris, rotten.
Pinguis, fat.
Qualis, of what kind.

Rûdis, raw.
Segnis, slow.
Solennis, annual, solemn.
Stêrilis, barren.
Suâvis, sweet.
Sublimis, lofty.
Subtilis, subtle, fine.
Tâlis, such.
Tênuis, small.
Terrestris, earthly.
Terribilis, dreadful.
Tristis, sad.
Turpis, base.
Ûtilis, useful.
Vilis, worthless.
Viridis, green.
Viullis, pliant.

See declension of *lenior*, page 7. In like manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *âcer* or *acris*, for the masculine; *acris*, for the feminine; *acre*, for the neuter, sharp; thus,

Sing.

N. â-cer or âcris, acris, acre,
G. a-cris, -cris, -cris,
D. a-cri, -cri, -cri,
A. a-crem, -crem, -cre,
V. a-cer or acris, -cris, -cre,
A. a-cri, -cri, -cri;

Plur.

N. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
G. a-crium, -crium, -crium,
D. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus,
A. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
V. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
A. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.

In like manner *âlâcer* or *alacris*, *cêler* or *celêris*, *cêlêber* or *celebris*, *sâlûber* or *salûbris*, *volûcer* or *volucris*, &c.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular; but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *sûperstes*, *jûvenis*, *sênex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the ablative singular, and *um*, not *ium*, in the gen. plural: *Compos*, -êtis, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -otis, unable; *inops*, -êpis, poor; *supplex*, -icis, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -êris, fertile; *consors*, -tis, sharing, a partner; *degener*, -êris, degenerate, or degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *pûber*, -êris, of age, marriageable; and *cêler*. Also compounds in *ceps*, *sex*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -icis, cunning, an artist; *bipes*, -pêdis, two-footed; *bicorpor*, -êris, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neuter singular, and almost never the neuter plural in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mêmor*, mindful, which has *memôri*, *memôrum*: also, *dêses*, *rêses*, *hebes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *terus*, *concolor*, *veracolor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pârî*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as, *compâre*, or -ri. *Vetus*, old, has *vetêra*, and *vetêrum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neuter singular, has *plure*: and in the plural, *plûres*, *plura* or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pôtis*, -e, able, are only used in the nominative. *Pôtis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives and adjectives in *us*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victricis ferro*, not *victricæ*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masculine; *victricis*, for the feminine. *Victricis*, in the plural, has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricis*; so *ultor*, and *ultricis*, revengeful. *Victricis* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jugum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, -*is*, -*e*; and *declivus*, -*a*, -*um*, steep; *imbécillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnánimus*, *flexánimus*, *effréns*, *levisomnus*; not *magnánimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillánimis*, *injúgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillánimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *cordatus*, *mórdatus*, *cælestis*, *adámantinus*, *corpóreus*, *agrestis*, *estivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called *Diminutives*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *dúriusculus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vinósus*, *vinólentus*, given to much wine; *opérósus*, laborious; *plumbósus*, full of lead; *nodósus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *auritus*, having long or large ears; *násitus*, having a large nose; *lúteratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive Adjective*; as, *Scoticus*, *paternus*, *herilis*, *aliénus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another; from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *docceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *nátus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *pretexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *salum*, *lectum*, *volum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	one.	Triginta,	thirty.
Duo,	two.	Quadráginta,	forty.
Tres,	three.	Quinquáginta,	fifty.
Quátuor,	four.	Sexáginta,	sixty.
Quinque,	five.	Septuáginta,	seventy.
Sex,	six.	Octóginta,	eighty.
Septem,	seven.	Nónáginta,	ninety.
Octo,	eight.	Centum,	a hundred.
Nóvem,	nine.	Dúcenti,	two hundred.
Décem,	ten.	Trécenti,	three hundred.
Undécim,	eleven.	Quadríngenti,	four hundred.
Duodécim,	twelve.	Quingenti,	five hundred.
Trédécim,	thirteen.	Sexcenti,	six hundred.
Quatuordecim,	fourteen.	Septingenti,	seven hundred.
Quindecim,	fifteen.	Octingenti,	eight hundred.
Sexdecim,	sixteen.	Nongenti,	nine hundred.
Septendecim,	seventeen.	Mille,	a thousand.
Octodécim,	eighteen.	Duo millia, or	two thousand.
Nóvemdecim,	nineteen.	his mille.	
Viginti,	twenty.	Decem millia, or	ten thousand.
Viginti unus, or	twenty-one.	décies mille,	
Unus et viginti,		Viginti millia, or	twenty thousand.
Viginti duo, or	twenty-two.	vicies mille,	
Duo et viginti,			

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, in *unis edibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. Una nuptie*, *Id. And. iv. 1. 61. In una meria convivere*, *Sallust. Cat. 6*: or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes, *Cic. Flacc. 29*.

Duo and *tres* are declined, page 7.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -*iae*, -*ia*; *ducentorum*, -*iarum*, -*orum*, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo milia hominum*, *tria milia*, *quatuor milia*, *centum*, or *centena milia hominum*; *decies centena milia*, a million; *vicies centena milia*, two millions, &c.

2. The *Ordinal* numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The *Distributive* numbers are, *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
1 <i>primus</i> , a, um.	<i>Singuli</i> , æ, a.	<i>Semel</i> , once.
2 <i>secundus</i> .	<i>bini</i> .	<i>bis</i> , twice.
3 <i>tertius</i> .	<i>terni</i> .	<i>ter</i> , thrice.
4 <i>quartus</i> .	<i>quaterni</i> .	<i>quater</i> , four times.
5 <i>quintus</i> .	<i>quini</i> .	<i>quinquies</i> , &c.
6 <i>sextus</i> .	<i>seni</i> .	<i>sexies</i> .
7 <i>septimus</i> .	<i>septeni</i> .	<i>septies</i> .
8 <i>octavus</i> .	<i>octoni</i> .	<i>octies</i> .
9 <i>nonus</i> .	<i>noveni</i> .	<i>novies</i> .
10 <i>decimus</i> .	<i>deni</i> .	<i>decies</i> .
11 <i>undecimus</i> .	<i>undeni</i> .	<i>undecies</i> .
12 <i>duodecimus</i> .	<i>duodeni</i> .	<i>duodecies</i> .
13 <i>decimus tertius</i> .	<i>trideni</i> , <i>terni deni</i> .	<i>tredecies</i> .
14 <i>decimus quartus</i> .	<i>quaterni deni</i> .	<i>quatuordecies</i> .
15 <i>decimus quintus</i> .	<i>quinden</i> .	<i>quindecies</i> .
16 <i>decimus sextus</i> .	<i>seni deni</i> .	<i>sexdecies</i> .
17 <i>decimus septimus</i> .	<i>septeni deni</i> .	<i>decies ac septies</i> .
18 <i>decimus octavus</i> .	<i>octoni deni</i> .	<i>decies ac octies</i> .
19 <i>decimus nonus</i> .	<i>noveni deni</i> .	<i>decies et novies</i> .
20 <i>vigesimus</i> , <i>vicesimus</i> .	<i>viceni</i> .	<i>vicies</i> .
21 <i>vigessimus primus</i> .	<i>viceni singuli</i>	<i>vicies semel</i> .
30 <i>trigesimus</i> , <i>tricesimus</i> .	<i>triceni</i> .	<i>trices</i> .
40 <i>quadragesimus</i> .	<i>quadrageni</i> .	<i>quadrages</i> .
50 <i>quingagesimus</i> .	<i>quingageni</i> .	<i>quingages</i> .
60 <i>sexagesimus</i> .	<i>sexageni</i> .	<i>sexages</i> .
70 <i>septuagesimus</i> .	<i>septuageni</i> .	<i>septuages</i> .
80 <i>octogesimus</i> .	<i>octogeni</i> .	<i>octoges</i> .
90 <i>nonagesimus</i> .	<i>nonageni</i> .	<i>nonages</i> .
100 <i>centesimus</i> .	<i>centeni</i> .	<i>centies</i> .
200 <i>dücentesimus</i> .	<i>düceni</i> .	<i>dücenties</i> .
300 <i>trëcentesimus</i> .	<i>trëcenteni</i> .	<i>trëcenties</i> .
400 <i>quadrìngentësimus</i> .	<i>quater centeni</i> .	<i>quadrìngenties</i> .
500 <i>quìngentesimus</i> .	<i>quinquies centeni</i> .	<i>quìngenties</i> .
600 <i>sexcentesimus</i> .	<i>sexies centeni</i> .	<i>sexcenties</i> .
700 <i>septìngentesimus</i> .	<i>septies centeni</i> .	<i>septìngenties</i> .
800 <i>octìngentësimus</i> .	<i>octies centeni</i> .	<i>octìngenties</i> .
900 <i>nongentesimus</i> .	<i>novies centeni</i> .	<i>nöningenties</i> .
1000 <i>millesimus</i> .	<i>milleni</i> .	<i>millies</i> .
2000 <i>bis millesimus</i> .	<i>bis milleni</i> .	<i>bis millies</i> .

4. The *Multiplicative* numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c. all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, *-icis*, &c.

The interrogative words to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quötus*, *quöteni*, *quöties*, and *quötüplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *tötüdem*, just so many; *quot-quot*, *quocunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *binus*, *trimus*, &c. *biennis*, *triennis*, &c. *binestris*, *trimestris*, &c. *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c. *binarius*, *ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus senarius*, a verse of six feet; *denarius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of a hundred, &c.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard, harder, hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus, hard*: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger, wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest, wisest*.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine; and *us* for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; as, *altus, high, gen. alti*: comparative, *altior*, for the masc. *altior* for the fem. *altius* for the neuter, higher; superlative, *altissimus, -a, -um*, highest. So *mitis*, meek; dative, *miti*; *mitior, -or, -us*, meeker; *mitissimus, -a, -um*, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper, poor*; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension, the superlative of the first and second; as, *altus, altior, altissimus*; *alta, altior, altissima*; *altum, altius, altissimum*; genitive, *alti, altiōris, altissimi, &c.*

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

1. Bonus,	mélior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	pessimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plūrimus,	much,	more,	most.

Feminine, Multa, plurima; *neuter*, multum, plus, plurimum; *plural*, multi, plures, plurimi; *multæ, plures, plurimæ, &c.*

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *morest*; *least*, for *lewest*; *worst*, for *worrest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *lissimus*:

Fācilis, facilior, facillimus, <i>easy</i> .	Imbēcillis, imbecillior, imbecillissimus, <i>weak</i> .
Grācilis, gracilior, gracillimus, <i>lean</i> .	Similis, similior, simillimus, <i>like</i> .
Hūmilis, humilior, humillimus, <i>low</i> .	

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently;

Citer, citior, citissimus, <i>near</i> .	Mātūrus, -ior, maturrīmus, or maturissimus, <i>ripe</i> .
Dexter, dexterior, dextimus, <i>right</i> .	Postērus, posterior, postremus, <i>behind</i> .
Sinister, sinisterior, sinistimus, <i>left</i> .	Sūpērus, -rior, suprēmus, or summus, <i>high</i> .
Exter, -erior, extimus, or extrēmus, <i>outward</i> .	Vētus, vētērior, vētērrimus, <i>old</i> .
Inferus, -ior, infimus, or imus, <i>below</i> .	
Intērus, intērior, intimus, <i>inward</i> .	

4. Compounds in *dicus, loquus, ficus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *māledicus*, railing, *māledicentior, maledicentissimus*: So *magniloquus*, one that boasteth; *bēnēficus*, beneficent; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent, *mirificus*, wonderful; *-entior, -entissimus*, or *mirificissimus*. *Nēquam*, indeclinable, worthless, vicious, has *nēquior, nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Dētērior, <i>worse</i> , deterrimus.	Prōpior, <i>nearer</i> , proxīmus, <i>nearest</i> or <i>next</i> .
Ociōr, <i>swifter</i> , ocissimus.	Ultērior, <i>farther</i> , ultimus.
Prior, <i>former</i> , primus.	

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclūtus, inclūtissimus, <i>renowned</i> .	Nāpērus, nuperrīmus, <i>late</i> .
Mēritus, meritissimus, <i>deserving</i> .	Par, pārrissimus, <i>equal</i> .
Nōvus, novissimus, <i>new</i> .	Sācer, sacerrimus, <i>sacred</i> .

3. The following want the superlative :

*Adolescens, adolescentior, young.**Diuturnus, diuturnior, lasting.**Ingens, ingentior, huge.**Juvenis, junior, young.**Opimus, opimior, rich.**Pronus, pronior, inclined downwards.**Satur, saturior, full.**Senex, senior, old.*

To supply the superlative of *juvenis*, or *adolescens*, we say, *minimus natus*, the youngest ; and of *senex*, *maximus natus*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *alis*, and *bilis*, also want the superlative ; as, *civilis, civilior, civil* ; *regalis, regali* ; *regal* ; *flebilis, -ior*, lamentable. So, *juvenilis*, youthful ; *exilis*, small ; &c.

To these add several others of different terminations : Thus, *arcānus, -ior*, secret ; *declivis, -ior*, bending downwards ; *longinquus, -ior*, far off ; *propinquus, -ior*, near.

Anterior, former ; *sequalior*, worse ; *satior*, better ; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all ; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs ; as, *versicolor*, of divers colours ; *pestifer*, poisonous : also adjectives in *us* pure, in *itus, inus, orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives ; as, *dubius*, doubtful ; *vacuus*, empty ; *fugitivus*, that flieth away ; *matutinus*, early ; *cānorus*, shrill ; *legitimus*, lawful ; *tenellus*, somewhat tender ; *majusculus*, &c. together with a great many others of various terminations ; as, *almus*, gracious ; *præcox, -ctus*, soon or early ripe ; *mirus, egenus, lacer, memor, sospes*, &c.

This defect or comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree ; and *valde* or *maximè* for the superlative ; thus, *egenus*, needy ; *magis egenus*, more needy ; *valde* or *maximè egenus*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a Noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks ; *thou* for the name of the person addressed. Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word ; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen ; *ego, tu, sui* ; *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui* ; *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester* ; *nostras, vestras*, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui* ; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person ; thus, we cannot say, *O ego, O I* ; *O nos, O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum* ; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

We commonly use *nostrum* and *vestrum* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives ; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he, she, it*, are expressed in Latin by these nominal adjectives, *ille, iste, hic* or *is*. *Ille, iste, hic*, and *is*, express *he*, &c. with this difference : *hic* is nearest to the speaker ; *iste*, next ; and *ille*, farthest off. *Is* generally denotes a person absent.

Ille usually implies respect, and *iste* contempt or aversion ; as, **Alexander ille magnus, Alexander the great*. *Tarquinius iste Superbus, Tarquin the Proud*.

Ipse is often joined to *ego, tu, sui* ; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun ; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.

Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui, are declined in page 12.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego, tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine ; *tuus*, thy or thine ; *suius*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus, -a, -um* : and *noster*, our ; *vester*, your ; like *pulcher, -chra, -chrum*, of the first and second declension.

Nostras, of our country ; *vestras*, of your country ; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension : gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative singular, masculine.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quē* in the ablative ; and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis* : and instead of *cujus*, the genitive of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus, -a, -um*.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes :

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present : *ego, tu, hic, iste*, and sometimes *ille, is, ipse*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before : *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui*.
3. *Possessives*, which signify possession : *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*.
4. *Patris or Gentiles*, which signify one's country : *nostras, vestras, cujas*.
5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question : *quis? cujus?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.
6. *Reciprocal*s, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind : *sui* and *suus*.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously :

1. With other pronouns ; as, *isthic, isthæc, isthoc, isthuc, or istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc, or isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc, isthac, isthoc*. Nom. and accusative plural, neuter, *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illuc, of ille* and *hic*.
2. With some other parts of speech ; as, *hujusmodi, ejusmodi, &c. mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum or quicum, and quibuscum : eecum, eecam ; eccos, eccas, and sometimes eccæ*, in the nominative singular, of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.
3. With some syllable added ; as, *tute*, of *tu*, and *te*, used only in the nom. *egomet, tuteimet, suimet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet, tuimet, &c.* of *ego, tu, sui, and mel*. Instead of *tumet*, in the nom. we say, *tuteimet : hiccine, hæccine, &c.* in all the cases that end in *c*; of *hic* and *cine* : *Meapte, tuapte, suapte, nostrapte, vestrapte*, in the abl. fem. and sometimes *meopte, tuopte, &c.* of *meus, &c.* and *pte : hiccæ, hæccæ, hocce ; hujuscæ ; hiccæ, hiccæ, of hic, and ce : whence hujuscemodi, ejuscemodi, cujuscemodi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

Sing.			Plur.		
<i>N. idem,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>	<i>Idem,</i>	<i>N. iidem,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>
<i>G. ejusdem,</i>	<i>ejusdem,</i>	<i>ejusdem,</i>	<i>G. eorundem,</i>	<i>earundem,</i>	<i>eorundem,</i>
<i>D. eidem,</i>	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>D. eisdem, or</i>	<i>iisdem, &c.</i>	
<i>A. eundem,</i>	<i>eandem,</i>	<i>idem,</i>	<i>A. eosdem,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>
<i>V. idem,</i>	<i>eadem,</i>	<i>Idem,</i>	<i>V. iidem,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>
<i>A. eodém,</i>	<i>eâdem,</i>	<i>eodém ;</i>	<i>A. eâdem, or</i>	<i>iisdem, &c.</i>	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded : but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam, who? quispiam, quisquam, any one ; quique, every one ; quisquis, whosoever ;* which are thus declined :

Nom.			Gen.		Dat.	
<i>Quisnam,</i>	<i>quenam,</i>	<i>quodnam or quidnam ;</i>	<i>cujusnam,</i>		<i>cuinam,</i>	
<i>Quispiam,</i>	<i>quæpiam,</i>	<i>quodpiam or quidpiam ;</i>	<i>cujuspiam,</i>		<i>cuipiam,</i>	
<i>Quisquam,</i>	<i>quæquam,</i>	<i>quodquam, or quidquam ;</i>	<i>cujusquam,</i>		<i>cuiquam,</i>	
<i>Quisque,</i>	<i>quæque,</i>	<i>quodque, or quidque ;</i>	<i>cujusque,</i>		<i>cuique,</i>	
<i>Quisquis,</i>		<i>quidquid or quicquid ;</i>	<i>cujuscujus,</i>		<i>cuiqui,</i>	

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all ; and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plural, neuter ; as, *aliquis* some ; *ecquis*, who? of *et quis* ; also *nequis, siquis, numquis*, which for the most part are read separately thus, *ne quis, si quis, num quis*. They are thus declined :

Nom.			Gen.		Dat.	
<i>Aliquis, aliqua,</i>		<i>aliquod or aliquid ;</i>	<i>alicujus,</i>		<i>alicui,</i>	
<i>Ecquis, ecqua or ecquæ,</i>		<i>ecquod or ecquid ;</i>	<i>eccujus,</i>		<i>eccui,</i>	
<i>Si quis, si qua,</i>		<i>si quod or si quid ;</i>	<i>si cujus,</i>		<i>si cui,</i>	
<i>Ne quis, ne qua,</i>		<i>ne quod or ne quid ;</i>	<i>ne cujus,</i>		<i>ne cui,</i>	
<i>Num quis, num qua,</i>		<i>num quod or num quid ;</i>	<i>num cujus,</i>		<i>num cui,</i>	

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are *equisnam, who? unusquisque, gen. unus-cujusque, every one*. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque, whosoever ; quidam, some ; quilibet, quisvis, any one* whom you please, which are thus declined :

Nom.			Gen.		Dat.	
<i>Quicunque,</i>	<i>quæcunque,</i>	<i>quodcunque ;</i>	<i>cujuscunque,</i>		<i>cuicunque,</i>	
<i>Quidam,</i>	<i>quædam,</i>	<i>quoddam or quiddam ;</i>	<i>cujusdam,</i>		<i>cuidam,</i>	
<i>Quilibet,</i>	<i>quælibet,</i>	<i>quodlibet or quidlibet ;</i>	<i>cujuslibet,</i>		<i>cuiilibet,</i>	
<i>Quisvis,</i>	<i>quævis,</i>	<i>quodvis or quidvis ;</i>	<i>cujusvis,</i>		<i>cuivis,</i>	

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dative and ablative plural ; thus, *aliquibus, &c.*

Obs. 2. *Quis* and its compounds, in comic writers have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam, quandam, quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the accusative singular ; and *quorundam, quarundam, quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod, quodvis, quoddam, &c.* are used when they agree with a substantive in the same case ; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid, quidvis, &c.* for the most part, have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, the boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence; because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall, I walk, walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk, a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor, -oris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active, Passive, and Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon: or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition, as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litéras*, I write letters; but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run; which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse*, or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund* or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices, Modes, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First, Second, Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object; whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābō*, I shall love: or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verbs, and cannot make a full meaning by itself as, *si me obsecrat redibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter*.

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.



Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribebam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scriperam*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [then] be writing; *scripsero*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns, in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished:

The First has a long before *re* of the Infinitive; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dare*, to give, which has *a* short, and also its compounds; thus, *Circumdare*, to surround; *circundamus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conjugations.	Singular. Persons.			Plural. Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
1.	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
4.	-io,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3. -ībam,	-ības,	-ībat;	-ībāmus,	-ībātis,	-ībant.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

FUTURE.

1. -ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2. -ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3. -ābo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
4. -iābo,	-iēbis,	-iēbit;	-iēbīmus,	-iēbītis,	-iēbunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

1. -em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2. -eā,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3. -am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4. -iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

IMPERFECT.

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-irent.
4. -iērem,	-iēres,	-iēret;	-iērēmus,	-iērētis,	-iērent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. -a	or	-āto,	3. -āto ;	2. -āte or	-ātōte,	3. -anto.
2. -e	or	-ēto,	-ēto ;	-ēte or	-ētōte,	-ento.
3. -e	or	-īto,	-īto ;	-īte or	-ītōte,	-unto.
4. -i	or	-ito,	-ito ;	-ite or	-itōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

1. -or,	-āris	or	-āre	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris	or	-ēre	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ēris	or	-ēre	-ītur ;	-īmur,	-īmīni,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris	or	-īre	-ītur ;	-imur,	-imīni,	-iuntur.

IMPERFECT.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris	or	-ābāre,	-ābātur ;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris	or	-ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris	or	-ēbāre,	-ēbātur ;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris	or	-iēbāre,	-iēbātur ;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmīni,	-iēbantur.

FUTURE.

1. -ābor,	-ābēris	or	-ābēre,	-ābītur ;	-ābīmur,	-ābīmīni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris	or	-ēbēre,	-ēbītur ;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīmīni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris	or	-ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris	or	-iēre,	-iētur ;	-iēmur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

1. -er,	-ēris	or	-ēre,	-ētur ;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-ēāris	or	-ēāre,	-ēātur ;	-ēāmur,	-ēāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris	or	-āre,	-ātur ;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris	or	-iāre,	-iātur ;	-iāmur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

IMPERFECT.

1. -ārer,	-ārēris	or	-ārēre,	-ārētur ;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris	or	-ērēre,	-ērētur ;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
3. -ēre,	-ērēris	or	-ērēre,	-ērētur ;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
4. -irer,	-irēris	or	-irēre,	-irētur ;	-irēmur,	-irēmīni,	-irentur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. -āre	2. -ātor,	3. -ātor ;	2. -āmīni,	3. -āntor.
2. -ēre	or -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.
3. -ēre	or -ītor,	-ītor ;	-īmīni,	-untor,
4. -ire	or -itor,	-itor ;	-imīni,	-iuntor

Observe, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plural of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative, they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MODE.

	Sing.			Plur.	
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf. -i,	-isti,	-it ;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt or ēre.
Plu. -ēram,	-ēras,	-erat ;	-ērāmus,	-ērātis,	-erant.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Perf. -ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit ;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
Plu. -issem,	-issem,	-issent ;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
Fut. -ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit ;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active. See conjugation of the verb *sum*, in page 9.

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are, &c. So, *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or *much oftener*, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c. So, *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

For examples of the variation of regular verbs in the different conjugations, see pages 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.

2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ese*, and *seem*.

3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are form'd from *um*.

4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

Am-o, -em; *Am-avi*, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse; *Amat-um*, -u, -urus, -us; *Am-are*, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ams, andum, di, do, -andus.

Doc-eo, -eam; *Doc-ui*, -ueram, &c. *Doct-um*, -u, -urus, -us; *Doc-ere*, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

Leg-o, -am; *Leg-i*, -eram, &c. *Loct-um*, -u, -urus, -us; *Leg-ere*, -ebam, -eram, -e, -ens, -endum, &c. *Aud-io*, -iam; *Aud-ivi*, -iveram, &c. *Audit-um*, -u, -urus, -us; *Aud-ire*, -iebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.—So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, *Cap-io*, -iam; *Cep-i*, -eram, &c. *Capt-um*, -u, &c. *Cap-ere*, -iebam, -erem, -e, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine; thus,

Am-o, -abam, -abo, -em, -arem, -a or -ato, -äre, -ans, -andum, di, do, &c. -andus:

Amav-i, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse: *Amat-um*, -us, -urus.

So *Doc-eo*, -ebam, -ebo, -eam, -erem, -e or -eto, -äre, -ens, -endum, di, &c. -endus; *Docu-i*, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse: *Doct-um*, -us, -urus.

Lëg-o, -ebam, -am, -es, -et, &c. -am, -as, -at, &c. *ërem*, -e or -ito, -äre, -ens, -endum, &c. -endus:

Lëg-i, -eram, &c. *Lect-um*, -us, -urus:

Cap-io, -iebam, -iam, -ies, -iet, &c. -iam, -ias, &c. *ërem*, -e or -ito, -äre, -iens, -iendum, -iendus:

Cep-i, -eram, &c. *Capt-um*, -us, -urus.

Aud-io, -iebam, &c. *Audiv-i*, -eram, &c.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am* in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-äre*, *-äre*, *-äre*, or *-ire*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MODES.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express act action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or *oftener*, I was loved.

Amatus fui, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was, or had been loved.

Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be, or may have been loved.

Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be, or have been loved.

Amatus fuissim, I might, could, would, or should have been loved, or had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love.

We chiefly use this form when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*; so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar* and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer* and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is, &c. *In facinus iurâtes putes*, You would think, &c. *Ov. Eloquar en sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec nos arguerim, Teucri, for arguam, Virg. Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim, for peribit, Ter. Hunc ego si potui tantum operare dolorem; Et preferre, soror, potero: for potuissim, and possem, Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? *Id. Prædiceres mihi*, You should have told me before hand, *Ter. At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word, *Virg. Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, *Juv. Hauserit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, *Virg. Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, &c. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, lucisque refugit*, for *refugit, Virg. Fuerat melius, for fuisset, Id. Invidiæ dilapsa erat, for fuisset, Sall. Quamvis in portum venis?* for *venisti, Plaut. Quam mox navigo Ephesum, for navigabo, Id. Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, *Ter. for esses and sentire. Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare, for triumphaturum esse, Cic. Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet, for occupet, Cæs.*

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet, or fecerit*, unless he do this, *Ter.*

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis, neque amabis*, farewell, and love me, *Cic.*

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them; thus,

Dicit me scribere; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.

Dixit me scribere; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.

Dicit me scripsisse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.

Dixit me scripsisse; he said that I had written.

Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I will write.

Dixit nos scripturos esse; he said that we would write.

Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says that we would have written.

Dicit literas scribi; he says that letters are written, writing, a writing, or in writing.

Dixit literas scribi; he said that letters were writing, or written.

Dicit literas scriptas esse; he says that letters are, or were written.

Dixit literas scriptas fuisse; he says that letters have been written.

Dixit literas, scriptas fuisse; he said that letters had been written.

Dicit literas scriptum iri; he says that letters will be written.

Dixit literas scriptum iri; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a periphrasis or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant, ut literæ scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent, ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that they

would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed: *Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c. literas*; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.

Scio scribendum esse mihi literas; I know that I must write letters.

— *scribendum fuisse mihi*; —that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mihi; He said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus*.

Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or a me, puero, &c.; Letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. *So literæ scribendæ erunt, fuerunt, erunt, &c. Si literæ scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c. Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; *eram amans*, for *amabam*, &c. *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut sis sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner: because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression, however, does not often occur.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE,

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as, *Voco, vocavi, vocatum*, to call: so, *revoco, revocavi, revocatum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpuli*, to beat; *repello, rēpuli*, never *repēpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *ēdisco, ēdidici*, to get by heart; *dēposco, dēpōposci*, to demand: so, *præcurro, præcūcurri*; *rēpungo, rēpūpugi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, fēci, factum*, to make; *perficio, perfecti, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo, placeo, sapio, salio*, and *statuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *avi* in the preterite, and *atum* in the supine; as, *Creo, creavi, creatum*, to create; *pæro, pæravi, pæratum*, to prepare.

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdi, dātum, dāre*, to give: so, *venundo*, to sell; *circundo*, to surround; *pessundo*, to overthrow; *satisdo*, to give surety; *venundēdi, venundātum, venundāre, &c.* The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, stēti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti, stitum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto, præstīti, præstitum*, or *præstātum*, to excel, to perform. So *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lāvātum*, to wash.

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or pōtātum, to drink.

Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. *juvaturus*. So *adjūvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbitum*, to lie. So, *ac-, ex-, oc-, rē-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dōmo, dōmui, dōmitum, to subdue. So *ē-, per-dōmo*.

Sōno, sōnui, sōnitum, to sound. So *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-sōno*.

Tōno, tōnui, tōnitum, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnatus*.

Vēto, vētui, vētītum, to forbid.

Crēpo, crēpui, crēptum, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, rē-crēpo: discrēpo* has rather *discrēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frico, fricui, frictum*, to rub. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frico*. But some of these have also *atum*.

Sēco, sēcui, sectum, to cut. So *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, rē-, sub-sēco*.

Nēco, nēcui, or nēcapi, nēcātum, to kill. So *inter-, ē-nēco*: but these have oftener *ectum; enectum, internectum*.

Mīco, mīcui, — to glitter, to shine. So *inter-, prō-mīco*. *Emīco*, has *ēmīcui, ēmicātum; dimīco, dimīcāvi, dimīcātum*, rarely *dimīcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine; *labo*, to fall or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plico*, to fold.

Plico, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions, *re-, sub-*, has *āvi, ātum*; as, *duplico, duplicavi, duplicātum*, to double. So *multi-, sup-, re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum*; as, *applico, applicui, applicitum*, or *-āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *im-, com-plico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explicitum*; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi, explicātum*.

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum*; as, *hābeo, habui, habitum*, to have. So,

Adhībeo, to admit, to use.
Cohībeo, inhībeo, to restrain.
Exhībeo, to show, to give.
Pērhībeo, to say, to give out.
Prohībeo, to hinder.
Posthabeo, to value less.
Præbeo, to afford.

Rēdhībeo, to return, or take back
a thing that was sold for
some fault.
Dēbeo, to owe.
Mēreo, to deserve: Com-, de-,
e-, per-, pro-mēreo, or me-
reor.

Mōneō, to admonish: Ad-, com-,
præ-mōneō.
Terreo, to terrify: Abs-, con-,
de-, ex-, per-terreo.
Dirībeo, to count over, to distri-
bute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *āreo, ārui*, to be dry. So,

Acēo, and -sco, to be sour.
Albeo, to be white.
Candeo, to be white.
Calleo, to be hard.
Cāneo, to be hoary.
Clāreo, to be bright.
Ēgeo, indigeo, to want.
Ēmīneo, to stand above others.
Flacceō, to wither.
Flōreo, to flourish.
Fōsteo, to stink.
Frendeō, to gnash the teeth.
Frondeō, to bear leaves.
Horreo, to be rough.

Hūmeo, to be wet.
Immlneo, to hang over.
Langueo, to languish.
Liqueo, licui, to melt to be clear.
Māceo, to be lean.
Mādeo, to be wet.
Marceo, to wither.
Mūceo, to be mouldy.
Niteo, to shine.
Palleo, to be pale.
Pāteo, to be open.
Pūteo, to stink.
Putreo, to rot.

Ranceo, to be mouldy.
Rigeo, to be stiff.
Rūbeo, to be red.
Squāleo, to be foul.
Sordeo, to be nasty.
Stūdeo, to favour.
Stūpeo, to be amazed.
Splendeo, to shine.
Tēpeo, to be warm.
Torpeo, to be benumbed.
Tūmeo, to swell.
Vigeo, to be strong.
Vireo, to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Vāleo*, to be in health; and *aequi-, con-, e-, in-, prae-valeo*: *Plāceo*, to please; and *com-, per-placeo*: *Displaceo*, to displease: *Cāreo*, to want: *Pāreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-, com-pāreo*: *Jāceo*, to lie; and *ad-, circum-, inter-, ob-, prae-, sub-, super-jāceo*: *Caleo*, to be warm; and *con-, in-, ob-, per-, re-cāleo*: *Nōceo*, to hurt; *Dōleo*, to be grieved; and *con-, de-, in-, per-doleo*: *Cōdūleo*, to grow together; *Līceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Lāteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delīteo, inter-, sub-lateo*, as likewise do those of *Tāceo, -cui, -cītum*, to be silent, *con-, ob-, rē-tāceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tīmeo, -ui*, to fear; *Sīleo, -ui*, to conceal; *Arceo, -cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo, exercui, exercitum*, to exercise. So *coerceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jūbeo, jussī, jusum, to order. So *fidē-jūbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.
Sorbeo, sorbui, sorptum, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex-, rē-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi, exsorpsi*; *Exsorptum, rēsorptum*, are not in use.

Dōceo, dōcui, doctum, to teach. So, *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, sub-dōceo*.

Misceo, miscui, mistum, or mixtum, to mix. So *ad-, com-, im-, inter-, per-, rē-misceo*.

Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, to stroke, to soothe. So *ad-, circum-, com-, de-, per-, rē-mulceo*.

Luceo, luxi, — to shine. So *at-, circum-, col-, di-, ē-, il-, inter-, per-,* or *pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, trans-luceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

Video, vidi, visum, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-video*.

Sedeo, sedi, sessum, to sit. So *as-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, re-, sub-sedeo*: *Circumsedeo*, or *circumsedeo*, *supersedeo*. But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-sedeo*, seem to want the supine.

Strideo, stridi, — to make a noise.

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

Spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsam, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi*, &c.

Rideo, risi, risum, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, in-, sub-rideo*.

Suadeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So *dis-, per-suadeo*.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO*:

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augeo*.

Lugeo, luxi, — to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lugeo*.

Frigeo, frixi, — to be cold. So *per-, re-frigeo*.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

Mulgeo, mulsī, mulsum, or *multum*, to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, ursi, — to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo*.

Fulgeo, fulsi, — to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo*.

Turgeo, tursi, to swell. *Algeo, alsi*, to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO*:

Vieo, viēvi, viētum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cieo, (civi) citum, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cieo*. *Civi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo*.

Compleo, complēvi, complētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo*.

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

Ōleo, to smell, has *ōlui, ōlitum*. So likewise its compounds, which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus, *exōleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum*, to fade. So *insōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, or *-itum*, to grow into use; *obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *abōlēvi, abōlītum*; and *adōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi, adūlitum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO*, *QUEO*, *REO*, and *SEO*.

Maneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So *per-, re-māneo*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So *per-neo*.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, to hold. So *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tineo*. But *attineo, pertinēo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstineo*.

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo*.

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo*.

Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast. So *extorreo*.

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So *ac-, per-, re-censeo*, to review; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum*; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum*, to move; *Fōveo, fovi, fōtum*, to cherish. So *con-, re-foveo*. So *vōveo*, to vow or wish, and *dēvoveo*.

Faveo, to favour; has *fāvi, fautum*; and *cāveo*, to beware of; *cāvi, cautum*. So *præ-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *pāveo, pāvi*, to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui*. So *de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-ferveo*.

Conniveo, to wink, has *connixi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk; *līreo*, to be black and blue; *scāteo*, to abound; *renideo*, to shine; *mareo*, to be sorrowful; *āveo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flāveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

IO.

1. *Fācio, fēcī, factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-, magnī-, arē-, cālē-, mādē-, tēpē-, bēnē-, mālē-, sātis-fācio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum*; as, *afficio, affēcī, affectum*. So *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, suf-fācio*. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifico, sacrifico, terrifico, magnifico; gratificor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *ludificor*, to mock.

Jācio, jēcī, jactum, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jicio*; in the supine, *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *ectum*; as, *aspicio, aspexi, aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, sus-picio*.

Allicio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So *il-, pel-licio*; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *ēlēcui, ēlēcītum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdī, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, re-, suf-, trans-fōdio*.

Fūgio, fūgī, fugitum, to fly. So *au-, (for ab-) con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, trans-fūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, prae-, re-, sus-cipio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

Rāpio, rāpui, raptum, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, prae-, pro-, sur-rāpio, -rāpui, -reptum*.

Sāpio, sāpui, — to favour, to be wise. So *consipio*, to be well in one's wits; *desipio*, to be foolish; *resipio*, to come to one's wits.

Cūpio, cupivi, cupitum, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pēperi, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quātio, quassi, quassum, to shake; but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*; as, *concutio, concussi, concussum*. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-, suc-cutio*.

UO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to show, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

Acuo, Exācuo, to sharpen.

Batuo, vel battuo, to beat, to fight, to fence with foils.

Induo, to put on clothes.

Exuo, to put off clothes.

Imbuo, to wet or imbue, to season or instruct.

Minuo, to lessen: *Con-, de-, di-, im-minuo*.

Spuo, to spit: *Con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo*.

Stātuo, to set or place, to ordain.

Con-, de-, in-, prae-, pro-, re-, sub-stātuo.

Sternuo, to mense.

Suo, to sew or stitch, to tack together: *As-, cir-*

cum-, con-, dis-, prae-, re-, suo.

Tribuo, to give, to divide: *At-, con-, dis-, re-tribuo*.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-fluo*.

Struo, struxi, structum, to put in order, to build. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, prae-, sub-, super-struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lūi, lūtum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its com-

pounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo*, -ui, -ūtum, to wash away, to purify. So *al*-, *circum*-, *col*-, *de*-, *di*-, *e*-, *inter*-, *per*-, *pol*-, *pro*-, *sub*-, *tu*o.

Ruo, *ru*i, *ruitum*, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *diruo*, *dirui*, *dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *ē*-, *ob*-, *prō*-, *sub*-, *ruo*. *Corruo* and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise do *mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod, or beckon with the hand; *rēnuo*, to deny; all of which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi*, *bitum*; as,

Bibo, *bibi*, *bibitum*, to drink. So *ad*-, *com*-, *e*-, *im*-, *per*-, *præ*-, *bibo*.

Exc. 1. *Scribo*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, to write. So *ad*-, *circum*-, *con*-, *de*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *inter*-, *per*-, *post*-, *præ*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *sub*-, *super*-, *supra*-, *trans*-, *scribo*.

Nūbo, *nupsi*, *nuptum*, to veil, to be married. So *de*-, *e*-, *in*-, *ob*-, *nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo*, *accūbui*, *accūbitum*, to recline at table. So *con*-, *de*-, *dis*-, *in*-, *oc*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *suc*-, *superin*-, *cumbo*, -*cūbui*, -*cūbitum*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo*, *scābi*, to scratch; *lambo*, *lambi*, to lick. So *ad*-, *circum*-, *dē*-, *præ*-, *lambo*.

Glūbo and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both preterite and supine.

CO.

1. *Dico*, *dixi*, *dictum*, to say. So *ab*-, *ad*-, *con*-, *contra*-, *e*-, *in*-, *inter*-, *præ*-, *pro*-, *dico*.

Dūco, *duxi*, *ductum*, to lead. So *ab*-, *ad*-, *circum*-, *con*-, *de*-, *di*-, *e*-, *in*-, *intro*-, *ob*-, *per*-, *præ*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *se*-, *sub*-, *tra*-, or *trans*-, *dūco*.

2. *Vinco*, *vici*, *victum*, to overcome. So *con*-, *de*-, *e*-, *per*-, *rē*-, *vinco*.

Parco, *pēperci*, *parsum*, seldom *parsi*, *parsitum*, to spare. So *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, *ici*, *ictum*, to strike.

SCO has *vi*, *tum*; as,

Nosco, *nōvi*, *nōtum*, to know; future participle, *nosciturus*. So,

Dignosco, to distinguish; *ignosco*, to pardon; also *Scisco*, -*ivi*, *itum*, to ordain; *ad*-, or *ascisco*, *inter*-, *per*-, *præ*-, *nosco*. to take, to associate; *conscisco*, to vote, to

Cresco, -*ēvi*, -*ētum*, to grow: *Con*-, *de*-, *ex*-, *re*-, to commit; also *præ*-, *re*-, *scisco*; *descisco*, to

and without the supine, *ac*-, *in*-, *per*-, *pro*-, *suc*-, *super*-, *cresco*. *revoll*.

Quiesco, -*ēvi*, -*ētum*, to rest: *Ac*-, *con*-, *inter*-, *re*-, *quiesco*. *Suesco*, to be accustomed; *ac*-, *con*-, *de*-, *in*-, *suesco*, -*ēvi*, -*ētum*.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco*, *agnōvi*, *agnitum*, to own; *cognosco*, *cognovi*, *cognitum*, to know. So *recognosco*, to review.

Pasco, *pāvi*, *pastum*, to feed. So *com*-, *dē*-, *pasco*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine:

Disco, *didici*, to learn. So *ad*-, *con*-, *de*-, *e*-, *per*-, *præ*-, *disco*, -*didici*.

Posco, *pōposci*, to demand. So *ap*-, *dē*-, *ex*-, *rē*-, *posco*.

Compesco, *compescui*, to stop, to restrain. So *dispesco*, *dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to grow; *fatisco*, to be weary; and likewise inceptive verbs want both preterite and supine: as, *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardesco*, to grow hot, *ars*i, *arsum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *sum*; as,

Scando, *scandi*, *scansum*, to climb; *ēdo*, *ēdi*, *ēsum*, to eat. So,

Ascendo, to mount.

Descendo, to go down.

Con-, *e*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *trans*-, *ascendo*.

Accendo, to kindle: *In*-, *suc*-, *cendo*.

Cudo, to forge, to stamp, or coin:

Ex-, *in*-, *per*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *cudo*.

Defendo, to defend.

Offendo, to strike against, to offend, to find.

Mando, to chew: *Præ*-, *re*-, *mando*.

Prehendo, to take hold of: *Ap*-, *com*-, *de*-, *prehendo*.

Exc. 1. *Divido, divisi, divisum*, to divide.

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, to shave. So *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, præ-, sub-rādo*.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, to close. So *circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-, se-clūdo*.

Plaudo, plausi, plausum, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-, circum-plaudo*: also *com-, dis-, ex-, sup-plādo, -plosi, -plosum*.

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, to play. So *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo*.

Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, to thrust. So *abs-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo*.

Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt. So *al-, col-, e-, il-līdo-, -lisi, -lisum*.

Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, to gnaw. So *ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rodo*.

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have *si, sum*; as, *invādo, invāsi, invāsum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-, ē-, super-vādo*.

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, to yield. So *abs-, ac-, antē-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, rē-, retro-, se-, suc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-, ex-, op-, præ-, rē-pando*.

Cōmēdo, comēdi, comēsūm or *comestum*, to eat. But *ēdo* itself, and the rest of its compounds, have always *ēsum*; as, *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-ēdo, -ēdi, -ēsum*.

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, to pour forth. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, trans-fundo*.

Scindo, scīdi, scissum, to cut. So *as-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scīdo*.

Fīdo, fīdi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-, dif-, in-fīdo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo*.

Cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cādo, -cīdi*: — except, *incīdo, incīdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *recīdo, recīdi, recāsum*, to fall back; and *occīdo, occīdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cēcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accisum*, to cut about. So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cīdo*.

Tendo, tētēdi, tensum or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, ob-, præ-, prō-tēdo-, -tēdi, -tensum*, or *tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, to show; which has commonly *ostensum*.

Pēdo, pēpēdi, pēditum, to break wind backward. So *op-pēdo*.

Pendo, pēpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensum*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *ḍīdi*, and *ḍitum*; as, *abdo, abḍīdi, abḍitum*, to hide. So *ad-, con-, dē-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, tra-do*: also, *decon-, re-condo*: and *coad-, superad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do*. To these add *crēdo, crēḍīdi, crēḍitum*, to believe; *vendo, vendīdi, venditum*, to sell. *Abcondo*, to hide, has *abscondi, absconditum*, rarely *abscondīdi*.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo, strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo, rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo, sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, consessum*, to sit down. So *as-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo*.

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concīdo, concēdo, concido*; *consīdo* and *consīdeo*; *conscīdo, conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO, has *xi, ctum*; as,

Rēgo, rexi, rectum, to rule, to govern; *dirīgo, -exi, -ectum*, to direct; *arigo* and *ērigo, -exi, -ectum*, to raise up; *corrigo*, to correct; *porrigo*, to stretch out; *subrigo*, to raise up. So,

Cingo, cixi, cinctum, to gird, to surround : Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, suc-cingo.

Fligo, to dash, or beat upon : Af-, con-, in-fligo ; also pro-fligo, to rout, of the first conjugation.

Jungo, to join : abjungo, to separate : Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, se-, sub-jungo.

Lingo, to lick : de-, è-lingo ; and pollingo, to anoint a dead body.

Mungo, to wipe, or clean the nose.

Emungo, to wipe, to cheat.

Plango, to beat, to lament.

Stingo, or Stinguo, to dash out, to extinguish : Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-stinguo.

Tëgo, to cover : Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-tëgo.

Tingo, or Tinguo, to dip, or dye : Con-, in-tingo.

Ungo, or Unguo, to anoint : Ex-, in-, per-, super-ungo.

Exc. 1. Surgo, to rise, has surrexi, surrectum. So as-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-surgo.

Pergo, porrexi, perrectum, to go forward.

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, to bind, to strain, to lop. So ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-stringo.

Fingo, finxi, fictum, to feign. So af-, con-, ef-, re-fingo.

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint. So ap-, de-pingo.

Exc. 2. Frango, frëgi, fractum, to break. So con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-fringo, -frëgi, -fractum.

Ägo, ëgi, actum, to do, to drive. So ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-ägo, and circum-, per-ägo : cögo, for eögo, coëgi, coactum, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of ägo want the supine : sätägo, satëgi, to be busy about a thing ; prödigo, prodëgi, to lavish, or spend riotously ; dëgo, for deägo ; dëgi, to live or dwell. Ambigo, to doubt, to dispute, also wants the preterite.

Lëgo, lëgi, lectum, to gather, to read. So at-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-lëgo : also, col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-lëgo, which change ï into è.

Diligo, to love, has dilexi, dilectum. So negligo, to neglect ; and intelligo, to understand ; but negligo has sometimes neglëgi, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. Tango, tëtigi, tactum, to touch. So at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo ; thus attingo, attigi, attactum, &c.

Pungo, püpügi, punctum, to prick, or sting. The compounds have punxi ; as, compungo, compunxi, compunctum. So dis-, ex-, inter-pungo ; but repungo has repunxi, or repüpügi.

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compose : or pëgägi, which comes from the obsolete verb pago, to bargain, for which we use paciscor. The compounds of pango have pëgi ; as, compingo, compëgi, compactum, to put together. So im-, ob-, sup-pingo.

Exc. 4. Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, to spread. So ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo.

Mergo, mersi, merum, to dip, or plunge. So de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo.

Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe, or clean. So ab-, de-, ex-, per-tergo.

Figo, fixi, fixum, to fix, or fasten. So af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-figo.

Frigo, frixi, frixum or frictum, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine : clango, clanxi, to sound a trumpet ; ningo, or ninguo, ninxi, to snow ; angio, anxio, to vex. Vergo, to incline, or lie outwards, wants both preterite and supine. So e-, de-, in-vergo.

HO, JO.

1. Träho, traxi, tractum, to draw. So ab-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-träho.

Vëho, vexi, vectum, to carry. So a-, ad-, circum-, con-, di-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-vëho.

2. Mëjo, or mingo, minxi, mictum, to make water. So immejo.

LO.

1. Cölo, cöhi, cultum, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cölo : and likewise occölo, occuhi, occultum, to hide.

Consülo, consului, consultum, to advise or consult.

Älo, ähui, alitum, or contracted, altum, to nourish.

Mōlo, molui, molitum, to grind. So *com-, e-, per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello-, cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli, perculsum*.

Pello, pēpūli, pulsum, to thrust. So *ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-pello; appūli, appulsum, &c.*

Fallo, fēfelli, falsum, to deceive. But *rēfello, refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum*, to pull, or pinch. So *a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello*. But *de-, di-, per-vello*, have rather *veli*.

Sallo, salli, salsum, to salt. *Psallo, psalli, —*, to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustūli*, and *sublātum*; *extollo, extūli, elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui, itum*; as,

Gēmo, gēmui, gemitum, to groan. So *ad-, or ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gēmo*.

Frēmo, fremui, fremitum, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frēmo*.

Vōmo, evōmo, -ui, -itum, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsi, demptum*, to take away.

Promo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out. So *de-, ex-promo*.

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take. So *ab-, as-, con-, de-, in-, præ-, re-, tran-sūmo*.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as, *demsi, demtum*; *sumsi, sumtum, &c.*

Exc. 2. *Emo, ēmi, emptum or entum*, to buy. So *ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-imo* and *co-ēmo, -emi, -emptum or -entum*.

Prēmo, pressi, pressum, to press. So *ap-, com-, de-, ex-, in-, op-, per-, re-, sup-primo*.

Trēmo, trēmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-, circum-, con-, in-trēmo*.

NO.

1. *Pōno, posui, pōsitum*, to put, or place. So *ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, trans-pōno*.

Gigno, gēnuī, gēnitum, to beget. So *con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno*.

Cāno, cēcini, cantum, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *centum*; as, *accino, accinui, accentum*, to sing in concert. So *con-, in-, præ-, suo-cino; oc-cino, and oc-cāno; re-cino, and re-cāno*. But *occanui, recanui*, are not in use.

Temno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi, contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contemsi, contemtum*.

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, sub-sterno*.

Sino, sivi or sii, situm, to permit. So *desino, desivi, oftener desii, desitum*, to leave off.

Līno, līvi, or lēvi, litum, to anoint or daub. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, superil-līno*.

Cerno, crēvi, seldom crētum, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, se-cerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, præ-cerpo, -cerpei, cerptum*.

Clēpo, -psi, -ptum, to steal.

Scalpo, to scratch or engrave: So *circum-, ex-scalpo*.

Rēpo, to creep: *Ad-, v. ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-rēpo, -psi, -ptum*.

Sculpo, to grave or carve. So *ex-, in-sculpo*.

Serpo, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo, strēpui, strēpitum*, to make a noise. So *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strepo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum*, to break. So *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cōquo, cozi, coctum, to boil. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cōquo*.

Linguo, liqui, —, to leave. The compounds have *lictum*; as, *rēlinquo, reliqui, relictum*, to forsake. So *de-, and dēre-linguo*.

RO.

1. *Quæro*, makes *quæsiui, quæsitum*, to seek. So *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-qui-ro, -quisiui, -quisitum*.

Tëro, trivi, tritum, to wear, to bruise. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-tëro*.

Verro, verri, versum, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-, con-, dē-, ē-, præ-, rē-verro*.

Ūro, ussi, ustum, to burn. So *ād-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, pēr-, sub-ūro*.

Gëro, gessi, gestum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, di-, in-, prō-, rē-, sug-gëro*.

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum*, to run. So *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, prō-curro*, which sometimes doubles the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accurri*, or *accūcurri*, &c. *Circum-, rē-, suc-, trans-curro*, hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sëro, sēvi, sātum*, to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi, sātum*; as, *consëro, consēvi, consitum*, to plant together. So *as-, circum-, dē-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, rē-, sub-, tran-sëro*.

Sëro, —, to knit, had anciently *sēruī, sertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *assëro, asserui, assertum*, to claim. So *con-, circum-, dē-, dis-, ēdis-, ex-, in-, inter-sëro*.

4. *Fūro*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sivi, sītum*; as,

Arcesso, arcessiui, arcessitum, to call, or send for. So *cāpesso*, to take; *fācesso*, to do, to go away; *lācesso*, to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Viso, visi, —*, to go to see, to visit. So *in-, rē-viso*. *Incesso, incessi, —*, to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsui, depstum*, to knead. So *con-, per-depso*.

Pinso, pinsui or pinsi, pinsum, pistum or pinsitum, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto*, has *flexi, flectum*, to bow. So *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-flecto*.

Plecto, plexi and plexui, plexum, to plait. So *implecto*.

Necto, nexi and nexui, nexum, to tie, or knit. So *ad-, vel an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto*.

Pecto, pexi and pexui, pexum, to dress, or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-pecto*.

2. *Mëto, messui, messum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-, e-, præ-mëto*.

3. *Pëto, pëtivi, pëtītum*, to seek, to pursue. So *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, sup-pëto*.

Mitto, misi, missum, to send. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, dē-, di-, ē-, im-, inter-, intro-, o-, per-, præ-, præter-, prō-, rē-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto*.

Verto, verti, versum, to turn. So *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, en-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, trans-vertō*.

Sterto, stertui, —, to snore. So *de-ster-to*.

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stīti, stātum*; but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti, stātum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stīti*, and *stītum*; as, *assisto, astīti, astītum*, to stand by. So *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum*, to live. So *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-vivo*.

Solvo, solvi, sōlūtum, to loose. So *absolvo*, to acquit, *dis-, ex-, per-, re-solvo*.
Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*), has *texui, textum*. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, sub-texo*.

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; as,

Munio, munivi, munitum, to fortify.

Exc. 1. *Singultio, singultivi, singultum*, to sob.

Sēpēlio, sepēhvi, sepultum, to bury.

Vēnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, prae-, sub-, super-vēnio*.

Vēneo, vēnii, —, to be sold.

Salio, sālui, and sālīi, saltum, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sīhui*, sometimes *sīli*, or *sīlivi* and *sultum*; as, *transilio, transilui, transilii* and *transilivi, transultum*, to leap over. So *ab-, as-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-silio*.

Exc. 2. *Amīcio, has amīcui, amictum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, to tie. So *circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio*.

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum; and *sancīvi, sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campsi, campsum*, to change money.

Sēpio, sepsi, septum, to hedge or enclose. So *circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, prae-sēpio*.

Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely *hausum*, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So *de-, ex-haurio*.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel, to perceive, to think. So *as-, con-, dis-, per-, prae-, sub-sentio*.

Raucio, rausi, rausum, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio, sarsi, sartum*, to mend or repair. So *ex-, re-sarcio*.

Farcio, farsī, fartum, to cram. So *con-fercio*; *ef-fercio*, or *ef-farcio*; *in-fercio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio*.

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, to prop or uphold. So *con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pārio* have *pēruī, pertum*; as, *āpērio, apēruī, āpertum*, to open. So *ōpērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio* has *compēri, compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Rēpērio, repēri, repertum*, to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cēcūtio, cēcūtivi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestivi*, to show one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio, glōcivi*, to cluck or cackle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptivi*, to play the fool. *Prōsilio, prosilui*, to leap forth. *Fērōcio, ferōcivi*, to be fierce.

Ferio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *rēfērio*, to strike again.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crimīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old, were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lātor, latātus, latāri*, to rejoice; *vēreor, veritus, vēreri*, to fear; *fungor, functus, fungi*, to discharge an office; *pōtior, pōtitus, potiri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *lātor*, of the first conjugation, like *amor*:

Indicative Mode.

Present. *Lātor*, I rejoice; *latāris, vel -are*, thou rejoicest, &c.

Imperfect. *Latabar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *latabaris*, &c.

- Perfect.** *Lætatus sum vel fui,** I have rejoiced, &c.
Plu-perf. *Lætatus eram vel fueram,* I had rejoiced, &c.
Future. *Lætabor,* I shall or will rejoice; *lætaberis,* or *-abere,* &c.
Lætaturus sum, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

Subjunctive Mode.

- Present.** *Læter,* I may rejoice; *lætēris,* or *-ere,* &c.
Imperfect. *Lætarer,* I might rejoice; *lætārēris,* or *-rēre,* &c.
Perfect. *Lætatus sim vel fuerim,* I may have rejoiced, &c.
Plu-perf. *Lætatus essem vel fuisset,* I might have rejoiced, &c.
Future. *Lætatus fuero,* I shall have rejoiced, &c.

Imperative.

- Present.** *Lætare vel -ālor,* rejoice thou: *lætator,* let him rejoice, &c.

Infinitive.

- Present.** *Lætari,* to rejoice.
Perfect. *Lætatus esse vel fuisse,* to have rejoiced.
Future. *Lætaturus esse,* to be about to rejoice.
Lætaturus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

- Present.** *Lætans,* rejoicing.
Perfect. *Lætatus,* having rejoiced.
Future. *Lætaturus,* about to rejoice.
Lætandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate in the First Conjugation,

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <i>Abōmīnor,</i> to abhor. | <i>Grātīlor,</i> to rejoice, to wish one joy. | <i>Palpor,</i> or <i>-o,</i> to stroke or soothe. |
| <i>Adūlor,</i> to flatter. | <i>Grāvior,</i> to grudge. | <i>Pātrōcinor,</i> to patronise. |
| <i>Emūlog,</i> to vie with, to envy. | <i>Hārīdīlor,</i> to conjecture. | <i>Percontor,</i> to inquire. |
| <i>Altercor,</i> to dispute, to make a repartee. | <i>Helluor,</i> to guttle or gormandise, to waste. | <i>Peregrīnor,</i> to go abroad. |
| <i>Aprīcor,</i> to bask in the sun. | <i>Hortor,</i> to encourage. | <i>Pēriclīlor,</i> to be in danger. |
| <i>Arbitror,</i> to think. | <i>Hallūcinor,</i> to speak at random, to err. | <i>Pignēror,</i> to pledge. |
| <i>Aspernor,</i> to despise. | <i>Imāginor,</i> to conceive. | <i>Piscor,</i> to fish. |
| <i>Aversor,</i> to dislike. | <i>Imītor,</i> to imitate. | <i>Popūlor,</i> and <i>-o,</i> to lay waste. |
| <i>Auctionor,</i> to sell by auction. | <i>Indignor,</i> to disdain. | <i>Prædor,</i> to plunder. |
| <i>Aucūpor,</i> and <i>-o,</i> to hunt after. | <i>Infīcor,</i> to deny. | <i>Prælior,</i> to fight. |
| <i>Augūror,</i> and <i>-o,</i> to forebode, or presage by augury. | <i>Insector,</i> to pursue, to inveigh against. | <i>Præstōlor,</i> to wait for. |
| <i>Auspīcor,</i> to take an omen, to begin. | <i>Insīdior,</i> to lie in wait. | <i>Prævarīcor,</i> to go crooked, to shuffle or prevaricate. |
| <i>Auxīlor,</i> to assist. | <i>Interprētor,</i> to explain. | <i>Prēcōr,</i> to pray. |
| <i>Bacchor,</i> to rage, to revel, to riot. | <i>Jāctīlor,</i> to dart. | <i>Deprēcōr,</i> to entreat, to pray against. |
| <i>Calumniōr,</i> to accuse falsely. | <i>Jōcor,</i> to jest. | <i>Prēcōr,</i> to ask, to woo. |
| <i>Cāvīllor,</i> to scoff. | <i>Lāmentor,</i> to bewail. | <i>Rēcōrdor,</i> to remember. |
| <i>Caupōnor,</i> to huckster, to retail. | <i>Lacror,</i> to gain. | <i>Refrāgor,</i> to be against. |
| <i>Causōr,</i> to plead in excuse, to blame. | <i>Luctor,</i> to wrestle. | <i>Rīnor,</i> to search. |
| <i>Circūlor,</i> to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk. | <i>Māchīnor,</i> to contrive. | <i>Rīxor,</i> to scold or brawl. |
| <i>Cōmēssor,</i> to revel. | <i>Mēdīteor,</i> to cure. | <i>Rustīcor,</i> to dwell in the country. |
| <i>Cōmītor,</i> to accompany. | <i>Mēdītor,</i> to muse, or ponder. | <i>Scrūtōr,</i> to search. |
| <i>Commentor,</i> to meditate on, or write what one is to say. | <i>Mercor,</i> to purchase. | <i>Sōlor,</i> to comfort. |
| <i>Conciōnor,</i> to harangue. | <i>Mētor,</i> to measure. | <i>Spātīor,</i> to walk abroad. |
| <i>Confīctor,</i> to struggle. | <i>Mīnor,</i> to threaten. | <i>Spēcūlor,</i> to view, to spy. |
| <i>Cōnor,</i> to endeavour. | <i>Mīror,</i> to wonder. | <i>Stīpūlor,</i> to stipulate or agree. |
| <i>Conspīcor,</i> to spy, to see. | <i>Mīsēror,</i> to pity. | <i>Stōmāchōr,</i> to be angry. |
| <i>Contēplor,</i> to view. | <i>Mōdēror,</i> to rule. | <i>Suāvīor,</i> to kiss. |
| <i>Convīvor,</i> to feast. | <i>Mōdōlor,</i> to play a tune. | <i>Suffrāgor,</i> to vote for one, to favour. |
| <i>Cornīcor,</i> to chatter like a crow. | <i>Mōrgeror,</i> to humour. | <i>Suspīcor,</i> to suspect. |
| <i>Crimīnor,</i> to blame. | <i>Mōror,</i> to delay. | <i>Tergīversor,</i> to boggle, to put off. |
| <i>Cunctor,</i> to delay. | <i>Mūnēror,</i> to present. | <i>Testor,</i> to witness. |
| <i>Dētestor,</i> to abhor. | <i>Mūtuor,</i> to borrow. | <i>Tātōr,</i> to defend. |
| <i>Dōmīnor,</i> to rule. | <i>Nāgor,</i> to trifle. | <i>Vādōr,</i> to give bail, to force to give bail. |
| <i>Epūlor,</i> to feast. | <i>Obtestor,</i> to beseech. | <i>Vagor,</i> to wander. |
| <i>Exsecror,</i> to curse. | <i>Odōror,</i> to smell. | <i>Vātīcīnor,</i> to prophesy. |
| <i>Fāmūlor,</i> to serve. | <i>Opēror,</i> to work. | <i>Velltor,</i> to skirmish. |
| <i>Fērior,</i> to keep holy-day. | <i>Opīnor,</i> to think. | <i>Vēnēror,</i> to worship. |
| <i>Frustror,</i> to disappoint. | <i>Opītīlor,</i> to help. | <i>Vēnor,</i> to hunt. |
| <i>Fīror,</i> to steal. | <i>Oscūlor,</i> to kiss. | <i>Versor,</i> to be employed. |
| <i>Glōrior,</i> to boast. | <i>Ōtīor,</i> to be at leisure. | <i>Vocīfēror,</i> to brawl. |
| | <i>Pālōr,</i> to stroll or straggle. | |

* *Fui, fueram,* &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs, as, *sum, eram,* &c.

In the Second Conjugation,

Méteor, méritus, to deserve.

Tueor, tuſtus, or tutus, to defend.

Pollicéor, pollicitus, to promise.

Liceor, licitus, to bid at an auction.

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.

Revertor, reversus, to return.

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to soothe, to flatter.

Mentior, to lie.

Molior, to attempt something difficult.

Partior, to divide.

Sortior, to draw or cast lots.

Largior, to give liberally.

Participle Perfect, *Blanditus, mentitus, molitus, partitus, sortitus, largitus.*

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Reor, rátus, to think.

Misereor, misertus, or not contracted, miseritus, to pity.

Fáteor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of *fáteor* have *fessus*; as, *prófíteor, professus, to profess.* So *confíteor, to confess, to own or acknowledge.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Lābor, lapsus, to slide. So *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor.*

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Utor, ūsus, to use. So *ab-, de-utor.*

Lōquor, lōquutus, or locutus, to speak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lōquor.*

Sēquor, sēquutus, or aēcutus, to follow. So *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor.*

Quēror, questus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, præ-quēror.*

Nitor, nisus, or nixus, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *ad-, vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nitor*: but the compounds have oftener *nixus*.

Pāciscor, pactus, to bargain. So *de-peciscor.*

Grādior, gressus, to go. So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grēdior.*

Prōficiscor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nariscor, nactus, to get.

Patiōr, passus, to suffer. So *per-pētiōr.*

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So *adipiscor, adeptus*; and *indipiscor, indeptus.*

Commīniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, frūitus or fructus, to enjoy. So *per fruor.*

Obliviscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Morior, mortuus, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-mōrior.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.*

Orior, ortus, oriri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ōrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *itūrus*; thus, *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Mētiōr, mensus, to measure. So *ad-, com-, di-, ē-, præ-, re-mētiōr.*

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So *ex-, red-ordior.*

Expēriōr, expertus, to try.

Oppēriōr, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vescor, vesci, to feed.

Liquor, liqui, to melt or be dissolved.

Mēdeor, mederi, to heal.

Rēmīnscor, reminisci, to remember.

Irascor, irasci, to be angry.

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.

Prævertor, præverti, to get before, to outrun.

Diffiteor, Diffiteri, to deny.

Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to take lodging.

Dēfēticor, dēfētisci, to be weary or faint.

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular.*

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight : *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *fēro*, and *fio*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six : *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo*.

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *ob-*, *sub-*, *super-**sum*, and *in-**sum*, which wants the preterite ; thus, *adsum*, *adsum*, *adesse*, &c.

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e* ; as,

Ind. Pr. Pro- <i>sum</i> ,	prod- <i>es</i> ,	prod- <i>est</i> ;	pro- <i>sūmus</i> , &c.
Im. Pro- <i>eram</i> ,	prod- <i>eras</i> ,	prod- <i>erat</i> ;	prod- <i>eram</i> us, &c.
Sub. Im. Prod- <i>essem</i> ,	prod- <i>esses</i> ,	prod- <i>esset</i> ;	prod- <i>esse</i> ^{mus} , &c.

Imperat. Prod-*esto*, prod-*este*. Infinit. Pres. Prod-*esse*.

In the other parts it is like *sum* : Pro-*sim*, -*sis*, &c. Pro-*fui*, -*fueram*, &c.

POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum* ; and is thus conjugated :

Possum, pōtui, posse, To be able.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Possum,	pōtis,	pōtest ;	possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Im. Pot- <i>eram</i> ,	- <i>eras</i> ,	- <i>erat</i> ;	- <i>eram</i> us,	- <i>eratis</i> ,	- <i>erant</i> .
Per. Pot- <i>ui</i> ,	- <i>uisti</i> ,	- <i>uit</i> ;	- <i>uimus</i> ,	- <i>uistis</i> ,	- <i>uerunt</i> .
Plu. Pot- <i>uēram</i> ,	- <i>ueras</i> ,	- <i>uerat</i> ;	- <i>ueramus</i> ,	- <i>ueratis</i> ,	- <i>uerant</i> .
Fut. Pot- <i>ēro</i> ,	- <i>eris</i> ,	- <i>erit</i> ;	- <i>erimus</i> ,	- <i>eritis</i> ,	- <i>erunt</i> .

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Pos- <i>sim</i> ,	- <i>sis</i> ,	- <i>sit</i> ;	- <i>sim</i> us,	- <i>sitis</i> ,	- <i>sint</i> .
Im. Pos- <i>sem</i> ,	- <i>ses</i> ,	- <i>set</i> ;	- <i>sem</i> us,	- <i>sētis</i> ,	- <i>sent</i> .
Per. Pot- <i>uērim</i> ,	- <i>ueris</i> ,	- <i>uerit</i> ;	- <i>uerimus</i> ,	- <i>ueritis</i> ,	- <i>uerint</i> .
Plu. Pot- <i>uissem</i> ,	- <i>uisset</i> ,	- <i>uisset</i> ;	- <i>uissem</i> us,	- <i>uissetis</i> ,	- <i>uisissent</i> .
Fut. Pot- <i>uēro</i> ,	- <i>ueris</i> ,	- <i>uerit</i> ;	- <i>uerimus</i> ,	- <i>ueritis</i> ,	- <i>uerint</i> .

Infinitive.

Pres. Posse. Per. Potuisse. The rest wanting.

EO, Ivi, itum, Ire, To go.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Eo,	is,	it ;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
Im. Ibam,	ibas,	ibat ;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Per. Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit ;	ivimus,	ivistis,	iverunt, ivere.
Plu. Iveram,	iveras,	iverat ;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut. Ibo,	ibis,	ibit ;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Eam,	eas,	eat ;	eamus,	eatis,	cant.
Im. Irem,	ires,	iret ;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
Per. Iverim,	iveris,	iverit ;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Plu. Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset ;	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
Fut. Ivero,	iveris,	iverit ;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

Imperative.

Pres. { I, Ito ;

{ ite, eunto.
{ itote,

Infinitive.

Pres. Ire.
Perf. Ivisse,
Fut. Esse iturus, -a, -um.
Fuisse iturus.

Participles.

Pr. Iens, Gen. euntis.
Fut. Iturus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Eundum.
Eunti.
Eundo, &c.

Supines.

1. Itum.
2. Iu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner ; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *pēr-*, *cō-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *prōd-eo* : only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted ; thus, *adeo*, *adii*, seldom *adivi*, *aditum*, *adire*, to go to ; perfect, *adii*, *adiisti*, or *adieti*, &c. *adiēram*, *adiērim*, &c. So likewise *veneo*, *venii*, —, to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *ambio*, -*ivi*, -*itum*, -*ire*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form ; thus, *it*, he is going ; *itū*, he is gone ; *ivērat*, he was gone ; *iderit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *venit*, he is coming ; *venit*, he is come ; *venērat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs, for the most part, are only used impersonally ; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going ; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally ; as, *pericula aditumtur*, are undergone, Cic. *Libri Sibyllini inaditi sunt*, were looked into, Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*, Cæs. *Inimicitia subeantur*, Cic.

QUEO, I can, and **NEQUEO**, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO, völuī, velle, *To will, or to be willing.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Vol-o,	vis,	vult;	vultūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamūs,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimūs,	-uistis,	-uerunt, -uere.
<i>Plu.</i>	Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramūs,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velimūs,	velitis,	velint.
<i>Im.</i>	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellemūs,	velletis,	vellent.
<i>Per.</i>	Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimūs,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Vol-uissem,	-uisset,	-uisset;	-uissemūs,	-uissetis,	-uiscent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vol-uerō,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimūs,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Pres. Velle.

Infinitive.

Perf. Voluisse.

The rest not used.

Participle.

Pres. Volens.

NOLO, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nolo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolūmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamūs,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimūs,	-uistis,	-uerunt.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramūs,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	-nolemūs,	noletis,	noletent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolimūs,	nolitis,	nolint.
<i>Im.</i>	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollemūs,	nolletis,	nollient.
<i>Per.</i>	Nol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimūs,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nol-uissem,	-uisset,	-uisset;	-uissemūs,	-uissetis,	-uiscent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Nol-uerō,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimūs,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative.

	2. Sing.	2. Plur.
<i>Pr.</i>	{ Noli, vel	{ nolite, vel
	{ Nolito;	{ nolitote.

Infinitive.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nolle.
<i>Per.</i>	Noluisse.

Participle.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nolens.
	<i>The rest wanting.</i>

MALO, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Māl-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Mal-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamūs,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimūs,	-uistis,	-uerunt.
<i>Plu.</i>	Mal-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramūs,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Mal-am,	-es,	-et; &c. this is scarcely in use.			

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Malim,	malis,	malit;	malimūs,	malitis,	malint.
<i>Im.</i>	Mallet,	malles,	mallet;	malletmūs,	malletis,	malletent.
<i>Per.</i>	Mal-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimūs,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Mal-uissem,	-uisset,	-uisset;	-uissemūs,	-uissetis,	-uiscent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Mal-uerō,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimūs,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Malle.

Per. Maluisse.

The rest not used.

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *To carry, to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Fēro,	fers,	fert;	ferimūs,	fertis,	ferunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Fer-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamūs,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulimūs,	tulistis,	tulerunt, -ere.
<i>Plu.</i>	Tul-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramūs,	-eratis,	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Feram,	feres,	feret;	feremūs,	feretis,	ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Feram,	feras,	ferat;	feramūs,	feratis,	ferant.
<i>Im.</i>	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferremūs,	ferretis,	ferrent.
<i>Per.</i>	Tul-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimūs,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Tul-issem,	-isset,	-isset;	-issemūs,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Tul-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimūs,	-eritis,	-erint.

<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
Pr. { Fer, fertor ;	{ ferte, fertote,	Pr. Ferre.	
{ Fertor, fertor ;	{ fertote, ferunto,	Per. Tulisse.	
		Fut. Esse laturus, a, um.	
		Fuisse laturus, a, um.	
<i>Participles.</i>		<i>Gerunds.</i>	
Pres. Ferens,		Ferendum.	<i>Supines.</i>
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.		Ferendi.	1. Latum.
		Ferendo, &c.	2. Latu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fëror, lätus, ferri, *To be brought.**Indicative Mode.*

Pr. Fëror,	ferris,	fertur ; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
	vel ferre,	
Im. Fer-ebat,	-ebaris,	-ebatur ; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
	vel -ebare,	
Per. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.		
Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.		
Fut. Ferar,	ferëris,	feretur ; feremur, feremini, ferentur.
	vel ferere,	
<i>Subjunctive Mode.</i>		
Pr. Ferar,	feraris,	feratur ; feramur, feramini, ferantur
	vel ferare,	
Im. Ferrer,	ferreris,	ferretur ; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
	vel ferrere,	
Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.		
Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuisset, &c.		
Fut. Latus fuero, &c.		

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Ferre vel fertor, fertor ; ferimini, feruntor.

Infinitive.

Pr. Ferri.	
Per. Esse vel fuisse, latus, -a, -um.	
Fut. Latum iri.	

Participles.

Per. Latus, -a, -um.	
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.	

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fero* ; as, *affero, attuli, allatum ; aufero, abstuli, ablatum ; differo, distuli, dilatatum ; conféro, contuli, collatum ; infero, intuli, illatum ; offero, obtuli, oblatum ; effero, extuli, elatum*. So *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, præ-fero*. In some writers we find, *adfero, adiuli, adlatum ; conlatum, inlatum ; obfero, &c. for affero, &c.*

Oss. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo ; malo* for *magis volo ; fero, fers, fert, &c. for feris, ferit, &c. Feror, ferris, v. ferre, fertur, for ferëris, &c.*

Oss. 2. The imperatives of *dico, dūco, and facio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer* : thus we say, *dīc, dūc, fac*, instead of *dīce, dūce, face*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fieri, *To be made or done, to become.**Indicative Mode.*

Pr. Fio,	fīs,	fit ;	fīmus,	fītis,	fīunt.
Im. Fiebam,	fiebas,	fiebat ;	fiebatis,	fiebatis,	fiebant.
Per. Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.					
Plu. Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.					
Fut. Fiam,	fies,	fiet ;	fīemus,	fietis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Fiam,	fias,	fīat ;	fīamus,	fīatis,	fīant.
Im. Fiërem,	fieres,	fīeret ;	fīeremus,	fīeretis,	fīerent.
Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.					
Plu. Factus essem, &c. factus fuisset, &c.					
Fut. Factus fuero, &c.					

Imperative.

Pr. { Fī,	{ fīte,	{ fūnto.
{ Fīto,	{ fīote,	

Infinitive.

Pr. Fieri.	
Per. Esse vel fuisse factus, -a, -um.	
Fut. Factum iri.	
<i>Supine.</i>	
Factu.	

Participles.

Per. Factus,	-a,	-um.
Fut. Faciendus,	-a,	-um.

The compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active ; as, *calefacio*, to warm, *calefio, calefac* : but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative ; as, *conficio, confice ; conficior, confectus, confici*. We find, however, *confil*, it is done, and *confiteri ; defil*, it is wanting ; *infil*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called *Neuter Passive Verbs*, which like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *solco, solitus, solere*, to use ; *audeo, ausus, audere*, to dare ; *gaudeo, gavisus, gaudere*, to rejoice ; *fido, firus, fidere*, to trust : So *confido*, to trust ; and *diffido*, to distrust ; which also have

confidi and *diffidi*. Some add *maereo*, *mæstus*, *mærere*, to be sad; but *mæstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *juratus sum* and *cænatus sum*, for *juravi* and *cænavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vāpilo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exīlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, and numbers and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cæpi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus*; *exosus*, *perosus*.

Cæpi, I begin, or have begun, *cæperam*, -*erim*, -*issem*, -*ero*, -*isse*. Supine, *cæptu*. Participles, *cæptus*, *cæpturus*.

Mēmīni, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram*, -*erim*, -*issem*, -*ero*, -*isse*. Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *onus sum*; and always *exonus*, *peronus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say, *opus capiti fieri*, or *capitum ed*.

To these some add *novi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Fūro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der*, and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say; *inquam*, I say; *fōrem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *ave*, and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr.	Aio,	ais,	ait:	—	—	aiunt.
Im.	Aiebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	—	aiisti,	—	—	—	—
Sub. Pr.	—	aias,	aiat:	—	aiatis,	aiant.
Imperat.	Ai.	—	—	—	Particip. Pres.	Aiens.
Ind. Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit:	-quimus,	-quitis,	-quint.
Im.	—	—	inquiebat:	—	—	inquiebant.
Per.	—	inquisti,	—	—	—	—
Fut.	—	inquies,	inquiet:	—	—	—
Imperat.	Inque, inquito.	—	—	—	Particip. Pres.	Inquiens.
Sub. Im.	{ Fōrem,	fores,	foret	foremus,	foretis,	forent.
Plu.	{ —	—	—	—	—	—
Inf. Fore,	to be hereafter, or to be about to be,	the same with <i>esse futurus</i> .				
Sub. Pr.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit:	—	—	—
Per.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	—	—	faxint.
Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit:	—	faxitis,	faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *fazo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imper. Ave vel aveto; plur. avete vel avetote. Inf. avere. — salve v. salveto; — salvete v. salvetote. — salvere.

Indic. Fut. — Salvebis.

Imperat. second person sing. Cedo, plur. cedite.

Indic. pres. first person sing. Quæso, plur. quæsumus.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found but among the poets; as, *infû*, he begins; *defû*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, if thou wilt: *sultis* for *si vultis*; *sodes* for *si audes*: equivalent to *quæso*, I pray; *capis* for *cap si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evēnit*, it happens:

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind. Pr.	Dēlectat,	Dēcet,	Contingit,	Evēnit,
Im.	Dēlectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,
Per.	Dēlectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evēnit,
Plu.	Dēlectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,
Fut.	Dēlectabit.	Decebit.	Continget.	Eveniet.

Sub. Pr. Dēlectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat.
Im. Dēlectaret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniret.
Per. Dēlectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit.
Plu. Dēlectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset.
Fut. Dēlectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
Inf. Pr. Dēlectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Evenire,
Per. Dēlectāvise.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *vēnītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind. Pr. Pugnātur,	Fāvētur,	Curritur,	Vēnītur,
Im. Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
Per. Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
Plu. Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
Fut. Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub. Pr. Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curritur,	Veniatur,
Im. Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curretur,	Veniretur,
Per. Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
Plu. Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
Fut. Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
Inf. Pr. Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Veniri,
Per. Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
Fut. Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Oss. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight, &c. nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pēnitens, -dum, -dus*, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum*, Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Oss. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dīcet*, it becomes; *pēnitēt*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *pīget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *libet*, it pleaseth; *tēdet*, it wearie; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miserum est*; *pīget*, *pīguit*, or *pīguitum est*; *pūdet*, *pūduit*, or *pūdūm est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tēdet*, *tēdūm est*, *oftener pēnitum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Jūvat*, *spēdat*, *vācat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nācet*, *lālet*, *liquet*, *pālet*, *plācet*, *displīcet*, *ēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accidit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pōtest*, *intēret*, *supēret*; *sit*, *præterit*, *nequit* and *nequitur*, *subit*, *confert*, *refert*, &c.

Oss. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat*, *fulminat*, *tonat*, *grandinat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *adverseracit*, &c.

Oss. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur, venitur, a me, a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Oss. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs* which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrico* and *fabricor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavas*, *lavare*; and *lavo*, *lavis*, *lavare*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as, *Ferveo*, *ferves*, and *ferro*, *fervis*, to boil.

Fulgeo, *fulges*, and *fulgo*, *fulgis*, to shine.

Strideo, *strides*, and *strido*, *stridis*, to make a hissing noise, to creak.

Tueor, *tuēris*, and *tuor*, *tuēris*, to defend.

To these add *tergeo*, *terges*; and *tergo*, *tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, *fodis*, *fodère*, and *fodio*, *fodis*, *fodire*, to dig.

Sallo, *sallis*, *sallère*, and *sallio*, *sallis*, *sallire*, to salt.

Arcesso, -is, *arcessere*, and *arcessio*, *arcessire*, to send for.

Morior, *morëris*, *mori*, and *morior*, *moriris*, *moriri*, to die.

So *Orior*, *orëris*, and *orior*, *oriris*, *oriri*, to rise.

Potior, *potëris*, and *potior*, *potiris*, *potiri*, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cio*, *cies*, *ciere*; and *cio*, *cis*, *cire*, to rouse; whence, *accire*, and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo*, *edis* or *es*, *edit* or *est*; — *editis* or *etis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essem*, *ederes* or *esses*, &c.

Imp. *Ede* or *es*, *edito* or *esto*; *edite* or *este*, *editote* or *estote*.

Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and the others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated :

<i>Aggëro</i> , -as, to heap up.	<i>Aggëro</i> , -is, to bring together.
<i>Appello</i> , -as, to call.	<i>Appello</i> , -is, to drive, to arrive.
<i>Compello</i> , -as, to address.	<i>Compello</i> , -is, to drive together.
<i>Colligo</i> , -as, to bind.	<i>Colligo</i> , -is, to gather together.
<i>Consterno</i> , -as, to astonish.	<i>Consterno</i> , -is, to strew.
<i>Efferô</i> , -as, to enrage.	<i>Efferô</i> , -fers, to bring out.
<i>Fundo</i> , -as, to found.	<i>Fundo</i> , -is, to pour out.
<i>Mando</i> , -as, to command.	<i>Mando</i> , -is, to chew.
<i>Obsëro</i> , -as, to lock.	<i>Obsëro</i> , -is, to beset.
<i>Volo</i> , -as, to fly.	<i>Volo</i> , vis, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

<i>Côlo</i> , -as, to strain.	<i>Côlo</i> , -is, to till.
<i>Dico</i> , -as, to dedicate.	<i>Dico</i> , -is, to say.
<i>Edûco</i> , -as, to train up.	<i>Edûco</i> , -is, to lead forth.
<i>Lêgo</i> , -as, to send on an embassy.	<i>Lêgo</i> , -is, to read.
<i>Vâdo</i> , -as, to wade.	<i>Vâdo</i> , -is, to go.

2. The following Verbs agree in the Preterite :

<i>Acëo</i> , <i>acui</i> , to be sour.	<i>Acuo</i> , <i>acui</i> , to sharpen.
<i>Cresco</i> , <i>crëvi</i> , to grow.	<i>Cerno</i> , <i>crëvi</i> , to see.
<i>Frigeo</i> , <i>frixi</i> , to be cold.	<i>Frigo</i> , <i>frixi</i> , to fry.
<i>Fulgeo</i> , <i>fulsi</i> , to shine.	<i>Fulcio</i> , <i>fulsi</i> , to prop.
<i>Lûceo</i> , <i>luxi</i> , to shine.	<i>Lûgeo</i> , <i>luxi</i> , to mourn.
<i>Pâveo</i> , <i>pâvi</i> , to be afraid.	<i>Pasco</i> , <i>pâvi</i> , to feed.
<i>Pendeo</i> , <i>pëpendi</i> , to hang.	<i>Pendo</i> , <i>pëpendi</i> , to weigh.

3. The following agree in the Supine :

<i>Cresco</i> , <i>crëtum</i> , to grow.	<i>Cerno</i> , <i>cretum</i> , to behold.
<i>Mâneo</i> , <i>mansum</i> , to stay.	<i>Mando</i> , <i>mansum</i> , to chew.
<i>Sto</i> , <i>statum</i> , to stand.	<i>Sisto</i> , <i>statum</i> , to stop.
<i>Succenseo</i> , -censum, to be angry.	<i>Succendo</i> , -censum, to kindle.
<i>Tëneo</i> , <i>tentum</i> , to hold.	<i>Tendo</i> , <i>tentum</i> , to stretch out.
<i>Verro</i> , <i>versum</i> , to sweep.	<i>Vertô</i> , <i>versum</i> , to turn.
<i>Vinco</i> , <i>victum</i> , to overcome.	<i>Vivo</i> , <i>victum</i> , to live.

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audibam*, *scibam*, for *audiëbam*, *sciëbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ibor* in the passive voice; as, *dormibo*, *dormibor*, for *dormiam*, *dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*; as, *edim* for *edam*, *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levasim*, *levasso*, for *levaverim*, *levavero*; *capim*, *capso*, for *caperim*, *capero*. Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levassere*, for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as, *famino*, for *fare*; and *progrëdîminor*, for *progrëdîmini*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *fariër* for *fari*; *diciër*, for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable; thus, *credo inimicos dicturum esse*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missus*, Cic. ad Attic. iiii. 12.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Cæno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *opëror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cæna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrio*, *Græcor*, *bibbilo*, *cornicor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *corniz*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *du* into *ito*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamito*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *territo*; *verto*, *verso*; *dormio*, *dormilo*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minitor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscito* from *nosco*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor* from *scio*; *pavito* from *paveo*; *seclor* from *sequor*; *loquitor* from *loquor*. So *querito*, *fundito*, *agito*, *stulto*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *currito*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulatio*, or by contraction, *pulio*; *capio*, *capto*, *capito*; *cano*, *canlo*, *canito*; *defendo*, *defensi*, *defensito*; *dicō*, *dicto*, *dictito*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito*; *verio*, *ventito*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutito*) *musstio*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*; as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations; *labasco* from *labo*; *tremisco* from *tremo*; *obdormisco* from *obdormio*. *Hisco* from *hio* is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco* from *puer*; *dulcesco* from *dulcis*; *juvenesco* from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *cenâturio*, I desire to sup, from *cenatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esurio*, *-ivi*, *-itum*, to desire to eat; *parturio*, *-ivi*, —, to be in travail: *nupturio*, *ivi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantillo*, *sorbillo*, *-are*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albico*, and *candico*, *-are*, to be or to grow whitish; also, *nigrico*, *fodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive*; as, *Capesso*, *facezzo*, *petezzo* or *petizzo*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of these simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fûto*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo*: or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejoro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *dehabeo*, *præhabeo*, &c. So *demo*, *premo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified to take, or to take away. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed; as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *conculco*; *laedo*, *collido*; *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Affero*, *aufero*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *inplico*, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *du*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amâturus*, about to love: and the perfect and future passive; as, *amâtus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens*, *sessurus*; *stans*, *staturus*.

From some neuter verbs, are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus, festinatus, juratus, laboratus, vigilatus, cessatus, sudatus, triumphatus, regnatus, decursus, destitus, emeritus, emeritus, obitus, placitus, successus, occisus, &c.* and also of the future in *dus*; as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, serubescendus, &c.* Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle; *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fidus*; *soleo*, *solens*, and *solitus*; *capulo*, *vapularis*, and *vapularurus*; *Gaudeo*, *gaudens*, *gavisus*, and *gavisurus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *aumus*, *aumurus*, *audendus*. *Auri* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Auri omnes immane nefas, ausoque politici*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus, conatus, confensus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largitus, mentitus, oblitus, testatus, veneratus, &c.*

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition: as, *Insucens, insuperans, indicens* for *non dicens*, *inopinans*, and *neopinans*, *inmerens*; *Illæsus, impræparatus, inconsultus, incusoditus, immelatus, impunitus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatus, indolatus, incorruptus, interritus, and imperterritus, inelatus, inausus, inopinatus, inultus, incensus* for *non census*, not registered; *infectus* for *non factus*, *intinus* for *non ritus*, *indictus* for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficere*; *inivisus* from *invidere*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior, amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissimus*: or a substantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *littera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS, ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus, barbatus, cordatus, caudatus, cristatus, auritus, pellitus, turritus*; *astutus, cornutus, nanutus, &c.* winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus, æratus, argentatus, ferratus, plumbatus, gypsatus, calceatus, clypeatus, galeatus, tunicatus, larvatus, palliatus, lymphatus, purpuratus, prætextatus, &c.* covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled; *crinitus*, having long hair; *peritus*, skilled, &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitare*, avoiding much. *Sal. Jug.* 60, and 101. *Liv. xxv.* 13. So *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus, &c.*

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used however in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *to*, and some others, often take *u*, instead of *e*; as, *faciundum, di, do, dus*; *experiundum, potiundum, gerundum, potundum, ducundum, &c.* for *faciendum, &c.*

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds, and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum, dudum conductus fuit*, i. e. *ut vapularem, v. verberarer*, to be beaten. *Plaut.*

ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, Manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time, and Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place*, are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. Motion or rest in a place.

Ubi ?	Where ?	Illorsum,	Thitherward.
Hic,	Here.	Sursum,	Upward.
Illic,		Deorsum,	Downward.
Isthic,	There.	Antrorsum,	Forward.
Ibi,		Retrorsum,	Backward.
Intus,	Within.	Dextrorsum,	Towards the right.
Fôris,	Without.	Sinistrorsum,	Towards the left.
Ubique,	Every where.		
Nusquam,	No where.		
Allicubi,	Somewhere.		
Alibi,	Elsewhere.		
Obivis,	Any where.		
Ibidem,	In the same place.		

4. Motion from a place.

Quo ?	Whither ?	Unde ?	Whence ?
Huc,	Hither.	Hinc,	Hence.
Illuc,		Illinc,	
Isthuc,	Thither.	Isthinc,	Thence.
Intrô,	In.	Inde,	
Fôras,	Out.	Indidem,	From the same place.
Ed,	To that place.	Aliunde,	From elsewhere.
Aliô,	To another place.	Allicunde,	From some place.
Aliquo,	To some place.	Sicunde,	If from any place.
Eodém,	To the same place.	Utrinque,	On both sides.
		Sûperne,	From above.
		Inferne,	From below.
		Cœlitus,	From heaven.
		Funditus,	From the ground.

5. Motion through or by a place.

Quorsum ?	Whitherward ?	Quâ ?	Which way ?
Versus,	Towards.	Hâc,	This way.
Horsum,	Hitherward.	Illâc,	That way.
		Isthâc,	Another way.
		Aliâ,	

2. Adverbs of Time are three-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.

Nunc,	Now.	Interim,	In the mean time.
Hôdie,	To-day.	Quôtidie,	Daily.
Tunc,	Then.		2. Continuance of time.
Tum,		Diu,	Long.
Hêri,	Yesterday.	Quamdiu ?	How long ?
Dûdum,	Heretofore.	Tamdiu,	So long.
Fridem,		Jamdiu,	
Fridie,	The day before.	Jamdiûdum,	Long ago.
Nûdiustertius,	Three days ago.	Jampridem,	
Nûper,	Lately.		3. Vicissitude or repetition of time.
Jamjam,	Presently.	Quôties ?	How often ?
Mox,	Immediately.	Sæpe,	Often.
Stâtîm,	By and by.	Rârô,	Seldom.
Prôtînus,	Instantly.	Tôties,	So often.
Illico,	Straightway.	Allquôties,	For several times.
Cras,	To-morrow.	Vicissim,	
Postridie,	The day after.	Alternatim,	By turns.
Pèrendie,	Two days hence.	Rursus,	Again.
Nondum,	Not yet.	Itêrum,	
Quando ?	When ?	Sûbînde,	Ever and anon, now and then.
Aliquando,		Identidem,	
Nonnunquam,	Sometimes.	Sêmel,	Once.
Interdum,		Bis,	Twice.
Semper,	Ever, always.	Ter,	Thrice.
Nunquam,	Never.	Quâter,	Four times, &c.

3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde,	Then.	Dênique,	Finally.
Deinde,	After that.	Postremô,	Lastly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Primò, -um,	First.
Porro,	Moreover.	Sêcundò, -um,	Secondly.
Deinceps,	So forth.	Tertiò, -um,	Thirdly.
Dênuo,	Of new.	Quartò, -um,	Fourthly, &c.

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*. Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. **QUALITY**, simply ; as, *benè*, well ; *malè*, ill ; *fortiter*, bravely ; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.
2. **CERTAINTY** ; as, *profectò*, *certè*, *sànè*, *plànè*, *nè*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes ; *quidni*, why not ? *omnino*, certainly.
3. **CONTINGENCE** ; as, *fortè*, *forsan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. **NEGATION** ; as, *non*, *haud*, not ; *nequàquam*, not at all ; *neutiquam*, by no means ; *minime*, nothing less.
5. **PROHIBITION** ; as, *ne*, not.
6. **SWEARING** ; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edepol*, *mecastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. **EXPLAINING** ; as, *utpòte*, *videbcel*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.
8. **SEPARATION** ; as, *seorsum*, apart ; *separatim*, separately ; *sigillatim*, one by one ; *virilim*, man by man ; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.
9. **JOINING TOGETHER** ; as, *simul*, *undè*, *pariter*, together ; *generaliter*, generally ; *universaliter*, universally ; *plèrumque*, for the most part.
10. **INDICATION or POINTING OUT** ; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.
11. **INTERROGATION** ; as, *cur*, *quàre*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore ? *num*, *an*, whether ? *quomodo*, *quò*, how ? To which add *Ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quò*, *quando*, *quandiu*, *quoties*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative*, denote,

1. **EXCESS** ; as, *Valdè*, *maximè*, *magnopère*, *maximopere*, *summpere*, *admodum*, *oppidò*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly ; *nimis*, *nimum*, too much ; *prorsus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly ; *magis*, more ; *melius*, better ; *pejus*, worse ; *fortius*, more bravely ; and *optimè*, best ; *essimè*, worst ; *fortissimè*, most bravely ; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.
2. **DEFECT** ; as, *Fermè*, *ferè*, *propemodum*, *penè*, almost ; *parum*, little ; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.
3. **PREFERENCE** ; as, *potius*, *aditius*, rather ; *potissimum*, *præcipuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially ; *imò*, yes, nay, nay rather, yea rather.
4. **LIKENESS or EQUALITY** ; as, *ita*, *sic*, *adèd*, so ; *ut*, *utì*, *sicut*, *sicùti*, *vèlut*, *velutì*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, as, as if ; *quemadmodum*, even as ; *satis*, enough ; *ibidem*, in like manner ; *juxta*, alike, equally.
5. **UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY** ; as, *aliter*, *secus*, otherwise, *aliòqui* or *aliòquin*, else ; *nedum*, much more or much less.
6. **ABATEMENT** ; as, *sensim*, *paulatim*, *pedetentim*, by degrees, piece-meal ; *vix*, scarcely ; *ægrè*, hardly, with difficulty.
7. **EXCLUSION** ; as, *tantum*, *solum*, *modò*, *tantummòdò*, *duntaxat*, *dènum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived,

1. From substantives, and end commonly in **TIM** or **TUS** ; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts ; *nominatim*, by name ; *generatim*, by kinds generally ; *speciatim*, *vicalim*, *gregatim* ; *radicitus*, from the root, &c.
2. From adjectives, and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from adjectives of the first and second declension, usually end in **E** ; as, *liberè*, freely ; *plenè*, fully : some in **O**, **UM**, and **TER** ; as, *fulsò*, *tantum*, *gratiter* : a few in **A**, **ITUS**, and **IM** ; as, *rectè*, *antiquitus*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, v. -ò ; *purè*, -iter ; *certè*, -ò ; *cautè*, -tim ; *humanè*, -iter, -itus, *publicè*, *publicitùs*, &c. Adverbs from adjectives of the third declension commonly end in **TER**, seldom in **E** ; as, *turpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*, *pariter* ; *facilè*, *repente* ; one in **O**, *omnino*. The neuter of adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially ; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter* ; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, to speak loud, high, &c. for loudly, highly, &c. In many cases a substantive is understood ; as, *primò*, sc. loco, *optatò advenis*, sc. tempore ; *hàc*, sc. vià, &c.
3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *ide*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place ; as, from *ille*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illiuc*, and *illac*. So from *quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsam*, *unde*, and *quò*. Also of time ; thus, *quando*, *quandiu*, &c.
4. From verbs and participles ; as, *cæsim*, with the edge ; *punctim*, with the point ; *strictim*, closely ; from *cædo*, *pungo*, *stringo* ; *amanter*, *præperanter*, *dubitanter* ; *distinctè*, *emandatè* ; *meritò*, *inopinatò*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.
5. From prepositions ; as, *inlus*, *intro*, from in ; *clanculum*, from *clam* ; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter* ; as, *durè*, *facilè*, *acriter* ; the *comparative*, in *ius* ; as, *durius*, *facilius*, *acrius* ; the *superlative*, in *ime* ; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too ; as, *benè*, *melius*, *optimè* ; *malè*, *pejus*, *essimè* ; *parim*, *minus*, *minimè*, and -um ; *multim*, *plus*, *plurimum* ; *prope*, *propius*, *proximè* ; *ocysus*, *ocysime* ; *prius*, *primò*, -um ; *nuper*, *nuperrimè* ; *novè* and *noviter*, *novissimè* ; *meritò*, *meritissimò*, &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete ; as, *sæpè*, *sæpius*, *sæpissimè* ; *penitus*, *penitius*, *penitissimè* ; *satis*, *satiùs* ; *secus*, *secius*, &c. *Magis*, *maxime* ; and *potius*, *potissimum*, want the positive.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postriedie*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *tantopere*, *multimodis*, *omnimodis*, *quomodo*, *quare*; of *postero die*; *magno opere*, &c. *Illicet*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, of *ire*, *scire*, *videre*, *licet*; *illico*, of *in loco*; *quorum*, of *quo verum*? *comminus*, hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus*; *emtnus*, at a distance, of *e* and *manus*; *quorum*, of *quo verum*; *denuo*, anew, of *de novo*; *quin*, why not, but, of *qui ne*; *cur*, of *cui rei*; *pedetentim*, step by step, as it were, *pedem tendendo*; *perendie* for *perempto die*; *nimirum*, of *ne*, i. e. *non*, and *mirum*; *antea*, *postea*, *præterea*, &c. of *aule*, and *ea*, &c. *Ubiuis*, *quovis*, *undelicet*, *quousque*, *sicut*, *scilicet*, *velut*, *veluti*, *desuper*, *insuper*, *quamobrem*, &c. of *ubi*, and *vis*, &c. *nudiustertius*, of *nunc dies tertius*; *identidem*, of *idem et idem*; *impræsentiarum*, i. e. *in tempore rerum præsentium*, &c.

Obs. 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *his*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Mercurule*, for *Hercules*, *me juret*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *ubi*, where or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future*; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection, *so ever*; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quocquò*, *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; as, *quotquot*, or *quocunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c.

PREPOSITION. • •

A Preposition is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight prepositions, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	To.	Infra,	Beneath
Apud,	At.	Juxta,	Nigh to.
Ante,	Before.	Ob,	For.
Adversus,	} Against, towards.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Adversum,		Per,	By, through.
Contra,	Against.	Præter,	Besides, except.
Cis,	} On this side.	Pænes,	In the power of.
Citra,		Post,	After.
Circa,	} About.	Pone,	Behind.
Circum,		Sæcus,	By, along.
Erga,	Towards.	Sæcundum,	According to.
Extra,	Without.	Supra,	Above.
Inter,	Between, among.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intra,	Within.	Ultra,	Beyond.

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

A,	} From or by.	De,	Of, concerning.
Ab,		E,	Of, out of.
Abs,	} Without.	Ex,	For.
Absque,		Pro,	Before.
Cum,	With.	Præ,	With the knowledge of.
Clam,	Without the knowledge of.	Pålám,	Without.
Coram,	Before, in the presence of.	Sine,	Up to, as far as.
		Ténus,	

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative.

In, In. info. Sub, Under. Súper, Above. Subter, Beneath.

Obs. 1. Prepositions, are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some however, are put after; as, *cum*, when joined with *me*, *te*, *se*, and sometimes with *quo*, *qui*, and *quibus*; thus, *mecum*, *tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mentotenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque*.

Obs. 2. Prepositions are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *subire*, to undergo.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propålám*, *profinus*, *insuper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification; as, *adéo*, to go to; *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions; 1. *IN* joined with adject-

tives generally denotes privation ; as, *infidus*, unfaithful : but when joined with verbs, increases their signification ; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses ; as, *inodatus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrenatus*, *immolatus*, *insuetus*, *impensus*, *inhumatus*, *intentatus*, &c. 2. **PER** commonly increases the signification ; as, *Percarus*, *perceler*, *percomis*, *percuriosus*, *perdifficilis*, *perelegans*, *pergratus*, *pergravis*, *perhospitatis*, *perillustis*, *perletus*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. **PRÆ** sometimes increases ; as, *Præclarus*, *prædives*, *prædulcis*, *præditus*, *præpinguis*, *prævalidus* ; *prævideo*, *præpolleo* : and also **EX** ; as, *Exclamo*, *exaggero*, *exaugeo*, *excalefacio*, *extenuo*, *exhilaro* ; but **EX** sometimes denotes privation ; as, *Exanguis*, bloodless, pale ; *exors*, *exanimis*, -mo, &c. 4. **SUB** often diminishes ; as, *Subalbidus*, *subabsurdus*, *subamarus*, *subdulcis*, *subgrandis*, *subgravis*, *subniger*, &c. a little white or whitish, &c. **DE** often signifies downward ; as, *Decido*, *decurro*, *degravo*, *despicio*, *delabor* : sometimes increases ; as, *dedmor*, *demiror* : and sometimes expresses privation ; as, *Demens*, *decolor*, *deformis*, &c.

Oss. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words : however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded ; thus,

Am,	}	round about ;	}	as,	{	Ambio,	to surround.
Di,		asunder ;				Divello,	to pull asunder.
Dis,						Disträho,	to draw asunder.
Re,		again ;				Rêlêgo,	to read again.
Se,		aside, or apart ;				Sêpôno,	to lay aside.
Con,		together ;				Concreasco,	to grow together.

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages ; as, *Oh ! Ah !*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them ; thus,

1. **JOY** ; as, *evax* ! hey, brave, lo !
2. **GRIEF** ; as, *ah*, *hei*, *heu*, *chu* ! ah, alas, wo is me !
3. **WONDER** ; as, *papæ* ! O strange ! *vah* ! hah !
4. **PRaise** ; as, *euge* ! well done !
5. **AVersion** ; as, *apæge* ! away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush !
6. **EXCLAIMING** ; as, *Oh*, *proh*, O !
7. **SURPRISE** or **FEAR** ; as, *aiat* ! ha, aha !
8. **IMPRECATION** ; as, *væ* ! wo, pox on't !
9. **LAUGHTER** ; as, *ha*, *ha*, *he* !
10. **SILENCING** ; as, *au*, 'st, *pax* ! silence, hush, 'st !
11. **CALLING** ; as, *eho*, *chodum*, *io*, *ho* ! soho, ho, O !
12. **DERISION** ; as, *hui* ! away with !
13. **ATTENTION** ; as, *heh* ! ha !

Some interjections denote several different passions ; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections ; as, *Malum* ! with a mischief ! *Infandum* ! O shame ! fy, fy ! *Miserum* ! O wretched ! *Nefas* ! O the villany !

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes :

1. **COPULATIVE** ; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*, and ; *etiam*, *quodque*, *item*, also ; *cum*, *tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec*, *nèque*, *neu*, *neve*, neither, nor.
2. **DISJUNCTIVE** ; as, *aut*, *ve*, *vel*, *seu*, *sive*, either, or.
3. **CONCESSIVE** ; as, *etsi*, *etiâmsi*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quâquam*, *quâvis*, though, although, albeit.
4. **ADVERSATIVE** ; as, *sed*, *verùm*, *autem*, *at*, *ast*, *atqui*, but ; *tamen*, *attâmen*, *verumtâmen*, *verumenimvero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
5. **CAUSAL** ; as, *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, for ; *quia*, *quippe*, *quantum*, because ; *quod*, that because.
6. **ILLATIVE** or **RATIONAL** ; as, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *itâque*, therefore ; *quapropter*, *quocirca*, wherefore ; *proinde*, therefore ; *cum*, *quum*, seeing, since ; *quondòquidè*, forasmuch as.
7. **FINAL** or **PERFECTIVE** ; as, *ut*, *utî*, that, to the end that.
8. **CONDITIONAL** ; as, *si*, *sin*, if ; *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, provided, upon condition that ; *siquidè*, if indeed.
9. **EXCEPTIVE** or **RESTRICTIVE** ; as, *nî*, *nîsi*, unless, except.
10. **DIMINUTIVE** ; as, *saltem*, *certè*, at least.
11. **SUSPENSIVE** or **DUBITATIVE** ; as, *an*, *anne*, *num*, whether ; *ne*, *anon*, whether, not ; *neque*, or not.

12. **EXPLETIVE**; as, *autem, vero, now, truly*; *quidem, equidem, indeed*.

13. **ORDINATIVE**; as, *deinde, thereafter*; *denique, finally*; *insuper, moreover*; *cæterum, moreover, but, however*.

14. **DECLARATIVE**; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. to wit, namely*.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative adverbs*; as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*; as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, si, siquidem, præterquam, &c.* Some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quancquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctusque pilæ, disctæ, trochæ, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbutos fetus montanæque fraga legebat. Ovid.

SENTENCES.

A **SENTENCE** is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *Ego lego*, I read. *Puer legit Virgilium*, the boy reads Virgil.

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another: namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement*; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

All sentences are either **SIMPLE** or **COMPOUND**.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb; *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The **SUBJECT** is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The **ATTRIBUTE** expresses what we affirm concerning the subject; as,

The boy reads his lesson: Here "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of; "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent" added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period as many prepositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in a sentence : 1. An adjective with a substantive. 2. A verb with a nominative. 3. A relative with an antecedent. 4. A substantive with a substantive.

1. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

RULE I. The adjective agrees with its substantive, in number, case, and gender; as,

<i>Bonus vir</i> , a good man;	<i>Boni viri</i> , good men.
<i>Femina casta</i> , a chaste woman;	<i>Feminae castae</i> , chaste women.
<i>Dulce pomum</i> , a sweet apple.	<i>Dulcia poma</i> , sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to pronouns and participles; as, *Meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled; Plur. *Mei libri*, *agri colendi*, &c.

Obs. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, *Virg.* *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, *Pers.* We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores seram*, sup. *partes*, Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferina*, good venison; *Summum bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, caro to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, *Ovid Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cetera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing: as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res praestantissima*, &c.

2. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

II. The verb agrees with its nominative case, in number and person; as,

<i>Ego lego</i> , I read;	<i>Nos legimus</i> , We read.
<i>Tu scribis</i> , Thou writest or you write;	<i>Vos scribitis</i> , Ye or you write.
<i>Præceptor docet</i> , the master teaches;	<i>Præceptores docent</i> , Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille*, and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *tu es patronus*, *tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*, the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time, *Liv. vii. 8.* Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet*, *id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere cæperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*, the multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an

adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars obnixæ trudent, sc. formicæ, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. Magna pars raptae, sc. virginæ, Liv. i. 9* Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus, Virg. Æn. vii. 624.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

3. Agreement of the Relative with the Antecedent.

III. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.

Singular.

Vir qui,
Fœmina quæ,
Negotium quod,
Ego qui scribo,
Tu qui scribis,
Vir qui scribit,
Mulier quæ scribit,
Animal quod currit,
Vir quem vidi,
Mulier quam vidi,
Animal quod vidi,
Vir cui parei,
Vir cui est similis,
Vir a quo,
Mulier ad quam,
Vir cujus opus est,
Vir quem miserror,
cujus miserror, vel miserescor,
cujus me miseret,
cujus vel cujâ interest, &c.

The man who.
The woman who.
The thing which.
I who write.
Thou who writest.
The man who writes.
The woman who writes.
The animal which runs.
The man whom I saw.
The woman whom I saw.
The animal which I saw.
The man whom he obeys.
The man to whom he is like.
The man by whom.
The woman to whom.
The man whose work it is.

Plural.

Viri qui.
Fœminæ quæ.
Negotia quæ.
Nos qui scribimus.
Vos qui scribitis.
Viri qui scribunt.
Mulieræ quæ scribunt.
Animalia quæ currunt.
Viri quos vidi.
Mulieræ quas vidi.
Animalia quæ vidi.
Viri quibus parei.
Viri quibus est similis.
Viri a quibus.
Mulieræ ad quas.
Viri quorum opus est.

} The man whom I pity.

whose interest it is, &c.

IV. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative to the verb; but when a nominative intervenes, the relative is governed by the verb, or some other word in the sentence.

Oss. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit; vir quem (virum) amo: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nôrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat, Cic. Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit, Ter. sc. Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent, Cæs.* Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quos homines, &c. Hor.*

Oss. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur, Sal. Animal, quem vocamus hominem, Cic. Cogito id quod res est, Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afficit, quod mihi est summo dolori, scil. Pompeium se affigere, Cic.* Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui for sceleratus, Ter. Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant, scil. negotia, Sall. Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitia pulo, facit ut te moneam, scil. negotium, Ter. In omni Africa, qui agebant, for in omnibus Afris, Sallust. Jug. 89. Non dissidentia futuri, quæ imperavisset, for quod, lb. 100.*

Oss. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio, scarcely facit.*

Oss. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur; i. e. pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem, &c. Liv. Si tempus est ullum jure homines necandi, quæ multa sunt, scil. tempora, Cic.*

Oss. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyrii tenuere colenti, scil. quam or eam, Virg.* Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum pedibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt; for quique in priore pugna non adfuerant, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, The letter I wrote, for the letter*

which I wrote; The man I love, to wit, whom. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consulisti*, for *quæ consulisti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consulisti*, Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum*, for *in locum, in quo*, Ter. And. iv. 1. 68. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus, &c.* are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum*, Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo quantum urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas*, Cic.

Obs. 9. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so: not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse*? Who do they say that I am; not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare*? Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 10. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear what you (actually or in fact) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid quæris? Librum, sc. quero. Quotâ horâ venisti? Sextid. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus, not mei. Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus. Damnatus es furti? Imò alio crimine.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur? Statur, sc. a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: atunt Petrum fecisse. Quomodo vales? Bene, male. Scripsistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, imò, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Chærea tuam vestem detraxi tibi? Factum. Et ed est indutus? Factum, Ter.* Most of the Rules of Santax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

V. Any Verb may have the same Case after, as before it, when both words refer to the same person or thing; as,

<i>Ego sum discipulus,</i>	I am a scholar.
<i>Tu vocaris Joannes,</i>	You are named John.
<i>Illâ incedit regina,</i>	She walks as a queen.
<i>Scio illum haberi sapientem,</i>	I know that he is esteemed wise.
<i>Scio vos esse discipulos,</i>	I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex; Evadent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim videri timidus, quàm parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentis*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatiss, Claud.* *Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putari mendacem; Vult esse medium, sc. se*, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem? sc. cum, Ter.* *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse*, Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Stem, fio, forem, and existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appello, vocor, nominor, nuntior; to which add, videor, existimor, creor, constitutor, salutor, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos, scil. se*; it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nominative or accusative promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus or doctum, sc. me dici; Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax; vult esse medius.*

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers,

they commonly agree in number with the former ; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant*, Ovid. But sometimes with the latter ; as, *Amanium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse ; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive ; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative ; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy ; or *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood ; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied ; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, scil. *alicui* or *homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose ; as, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronæpos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*, Ovid's Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari, for sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. i. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero vernibus esse nocens*, Ovid. *Tulumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*, Lucan.

4. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

VI. Substantives signifying the same person or thing, agree in case ; as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the orator ; *Ciceronis oratoris*, of Cicero the orator.
Urbs Athenæ, the city of Athens ; *Urbis Athenarum*, of the city Athens.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VII. One Substantive governs another signifying a different person or thing in the genitive ; as,

Amor Dei, The love of God ; *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature ; *Domus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective ; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house ; *Filius heri*, or *herili*, a master's son : and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis* ; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or passive sense ; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him. So *caritas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense ; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur* ; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil, Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood ; as, *Hecτόris Andromache*, scil. *uxor* ; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum* ; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive particularly among the poets ; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended, Virg. Æn. vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions ; as, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *pax cum aliquo* ; *Amor in vel erga aliquem* ; *Gaudium de re* ; *Cura de aliquo* ; *Mentio illius, vel de illo* ; *Quies ab armis* ; *Fumus ex incendiis* ; *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*, Sallust, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of* ; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernaus ; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

Substantive pronouns are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns ; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also **adjective pronouns**, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood ; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis* : The book of her, or her book, sc. *feminae*. *Libri eorum, v. earum*, their books ; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book ; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei* ; *pater noster*, not *nostri* ; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum* ; but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed ; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved ; *Amor meus*, My love that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively ; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My labour, Plaut.

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive ; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta*

timentis, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*, Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used when the action of the verb is reflected as it were, upon its nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se. Miles defendit suam vitam. Dicit se scripturum esse.* We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut und cum iis proficiscantur, for und secum*, Cæs.

VIII. If the latter of two Substantives have an Adjective of praise or dispraise, joined with it, it may be put either in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indolis, or *probâ indole*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *Vir cum summâ prudentiâ*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant; *Vir imi subseclii, homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war, *Sallust. Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum.* In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mirâ sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rarus*, Id. *Mulier magna natu*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximii spe, summæ virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative; thus we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets, the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum* or *quod ad*, being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdôche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus*, *secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*, Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

IX. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Mulla pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii; quicquid erat patrum, reos diceret*, Liv. *Id loci; Ad hoc ætatis*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns, *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostile timerent, not hostilis*: we find, however, *quicquid civitis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris opera; loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acula belli, cæ. negotia*, Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender, may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

Opus and Usus.

X. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying need, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money. *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro*, or the like understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectonis opus est*, Quinct. *Operæ usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse, Id. Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste; *Opus consullo*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimules*, Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed absolutely, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est; si opus sit, &c.*

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

XI. Verbal adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive ; as,

Avidus glorie, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud.
Memor benefactorum, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong : I. Verbal adjectives in AX ; as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS ; as, *amans appetens, cupiens, insölens, sciens ; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind : 1. Desire ; as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting ; as, *callidus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens*, &c. *Ignarus, incertus, incius, imprudens, imperitus, immemor, rudis ; Ambiguus, dubius, suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary ; as, *Anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens ; Incuriosus, securus, negligens*, &c. 4. Fear, and confidence ; as, *Formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus ; Impavidus, interritus, intrepidus*. 5. Guilt, and innocence ; as, *Noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus ; Innocuius, innocens, insons*.

To these add many adjectives of various significations ; as, *æger animi ; ardens, audax, avarus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, lætus, præstans animi ; modicus voti ; integer vitæ ; seri studiorum*, Hor. But we say, *æger pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinâ, modicus cultu ; Lætus negotio, de re, or propter rem*, &c. and never *æger pedum*, &c.

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles ; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold ; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem* : *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar ; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction ; as, *avidus in pecuniis*, Cic. *Avidior ad rem*, Ter. *Jure consultus et peritus, or juris*, Cic. *Rudis literarum, in jure civili*, Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala*, Ovid. *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis*, Cic. *Assuetus labore, in omnia*, Liv. *Mensæ herili*, Virg. *Insuetus moribus Romanis*, in the dative, Liv. *Laboris, ad onera portanda*, Cæs. *Desuetus bello et triumphis*, in the dative or ablative, rather the dative, Virg. *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua ; diligens in, ad, de*, Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re ; Reus de vi, criminibus*, Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ*, in *re*, or in *negotio*, or some such word understood ; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causâ*, or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive ; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XII. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural ; as,

<i>Aliquis philosophorum,</i>	Some one of the philosophers.
<i>Senior fratrum,</i>	The elder of the brothers.
<i>Doctissimus Romanorum,</i>	The most learned of the Romans.
<i>Quis nostrum ?</i>	* Which of us ?
<i>Una musarum,</i>	One of the muses.
<i>Octavus sapientum,</i>	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among* ; as, *alius, nullus, solus*, &c. *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds : also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals : as, *unus, duo, tres ; primus, secundus*, &c. To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive ; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former ; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter ; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimus*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number ; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex, or in* ; as, *Unus de fratribus* ; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter* ; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *omnium*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed ; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*, Horat. Od. i. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used when we speak of two ; Superlatives, when we speak of more

than two; as, *Major fratrum*, the elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis*, *unus*, *alius*, *nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two*; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three*: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously, the one for the other.

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XIII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

<i>Utilis bello,</i>	Profitable for war.
<i>Perniciosus reipublicæ,</i>	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
<i>Similis patri,</i>	Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong:

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber*.—*Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, grationis, jucundus, lætus, suavis*.—*Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, militis, propitius*.—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, inimicitis, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*.—*Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus*.

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, proprius, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*.—*Ineptus, inhabilis, inportunus, inconveniens*.

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis, levis, obviu, perviu*.—*Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, invidius*. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus*.

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar*.—*Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors*. Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus*.—*Disimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor*.

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguus*; as, *Mari, aer continens, est, Cic.*

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.*—particularly.

Verbals in *BILIS* and *DUS* govern the dative; as,

<i>Amandus vel amabilis omnibus,</i>	To be loved by all men.
--------------------------------------	-------------------------

So *Mors est terribilis malis*; *Optabilis omnibus pax*; *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Cic.* *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi, Hor.* Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata, hated by, Hor.*

Verbals in *DUS* are often construed with the preposition *a*; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis, Cic.* Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis, defleta, rather than multis defleta, Cic.* *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c.* hardly ever *tibi*.

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me; so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c.* *Hor. Exitium pecori, Virg. Virtutibus hostis, Cic.*

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius, and adversus*; as, *Similis tibi, or tui*; *Superstes patri, or patris*; *Consciis facinori, or facinoris*. *Consciis* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, communes, inter se*: *Par et communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia, Liv.*

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei, or ad aliquid. Many other adjectives governing the dative, are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus quaeritis, Hor. Attentus ad rem, Ter.*

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one: I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invidus, iratus, offensus, suspectus, ALICUI*. II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, graciosus, injuriosus, liberalis,*

mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens, IN ALIQUEM. III. Some, either with the dative, or with the accusative and the preposition IN, ERGA, or AD-VERSUS, going before; as, *Contumax, criminosus, durus, excitabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* and *intolerabilis*), *iniquus, ævus, ALICUI* or *IN ALIQUEM*. *Benevolus, benignus, molestus, ALICUI* or *ERGA ALIQUEM*. *Mitis, comis, IN* or *ERGA ALIQUEM* and *ALICUI*. *Pervicax ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. *Crudelis IN ALIQUEM*, seldom *ALICUI*. *Amicus, æmulus, infensus, infestus ALICUI*, seldom *IN ALIQUEM*. *Gratus ALICUI*, or *IN, ERGA, AD-VERSUS ALIQUEM*. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussu magistratum*, Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. *Proprior* and *Proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Proprior montem*, scil. *ad*, Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*, Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem*, Virg. *Eadem illis censemus*, Cic. But in prose we commonly find *idem qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici*, Cic. *Est animus erga te idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam et Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c.* *In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque* or *et*; and so, sometimes, *similis* and *par*.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIV. These adjectives, *Dignus, indignus, præditus*, and *contentus*; also, *natus, satus, ortus, cretus*, and the like, govern the ablative.

Dignus honore, Worthy of honour.

Captus oculis, Blind.

Contentus parvo, Content with little.

Fretus viribus, Trusting to his strength.

Præditus virtute, Endued with virtue.

Ortus regibus, Descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives, is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nymphe*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Macte esto, o macti estote virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Juberem macte virtute esse*, sc. *te*, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XV. Adjectives signifying plenty or want, govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *iræ*, Full of anger.

Inops rationis or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*, Plaut. *Fecunda virore pauperis fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil insidius vacuum*, Id. *Vacua cædis habeat manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed,

1. With the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only; *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, lentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently; *Compos, consors, egenus, exchæres, expertus, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans, cassus, extorris, fetus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunos, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus*.

5. With both promiscuously; *Copiosus, dives, fecundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimis, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua*; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*, Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parvus, in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus, a re aliqua. Potens ad rem, and in re*.

GOVERNMENT OF THE VERB SUM.

§ 1. VERBS governing only one Case.

XVI. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belong to the king; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putâram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est eo*

duci parere, It is the part, or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani*; *vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Homini est errare*; *Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibæi*, Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as,

Tuum est, It is your duty.

Scio tuum esse, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*, Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est principum*; *Tuum est hoc munus*, Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto*, Ter. In some cases, the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli*, scil. *causâ* or *facta*, Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est*, for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*, Liv.

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris*: So *mos est vel fuit*, or *moris*, or in *more*, Cic.

XVII. *Sum*, taken for *habeo*, (*to have*,) governs the dative of a person; as,

Est mihi liber,

A book is to me, that is, I have a book.

Sunt mihi libri,

Books are to me, i. e. I have books.

Dico libros esse mihi,

I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *deest* instead of *carere*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

XVIII. *Sum*, taken for *affero*, (*to bring*,) governs two datives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptati.

It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *fore*, *duco*, and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So *Misit mihi maneri*; *Dedit mihi dono*; *Habet sibi laudi*; *Venire occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecori*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare*, and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei*, sc. *id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere, pignori*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curæ, quæstui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despectui*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

XIX. The compounds of *Sum*, except *Possum*, govern the dative; as,

Præfuit exercitui,

He commanded the army.

Adfuit precibus,

He was present at prayers.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES

XX. Words of the comparative degree govern the ablative when *quam* is omitted in Latin; as,

Dulcior melle, Sweeter than honey.

Præstantior auro, Better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*; and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quàm mel, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quàm illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quàm ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quàm illo*, sc. *ab*.

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as, *Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, Cæs. scil. *quàm*. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, *Ter.* *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quàm*, Liv.

Quàm is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as, *Triumphus clapior quàm gravior*, Liv. Or the preposition *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quàm pro numero pugnantium editur*, Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opiniòne*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto*; as, *Credibili opiniòne major*, Cic. *Credibili fortiori*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. *Dido citius*, Virg. *Majora credibili tulimus*, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *justo*, too freely, *Nepos*.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, for *neminem*, *Ter.* *Crasso nihil perfectius*, Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*. So *quid nobis laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nulla re*, or *quàm pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus pluraque, minus minusque, carior cariorque*; *Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

Obs. 4. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quàm ego*, He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, *Ter.*

Obs. 5. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (or more shortly, the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

Est decem digitis altior quàm frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, he is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipede minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor*, as big again, or a half bigger, Cic. *Ter tanto peior est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quàm prius*, Plaut. *Quingies tanto amplius, quàm quantum licitum sit civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c. thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, Sall. *Multo id maximum fuit*, Liv.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXI. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit, He writes well.

Fortiter pugnans, Fighting bravely.

Servus egregiè fidelis, A slave remarkably faithful.

Satis bene, Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as, *Homerus planè orator*; *planè noster, verè Metellus*, Cic. So *Hodie mane*; *oras mane, heri mane*; *hodie vespere*, &c. *tam mane, tam vespere*.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non senserunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *El senserunt*, And they did perceive; *Non poteram non exanimari metu*, Cic. Examples, however, of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both in English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode, to express a stronger negation. *Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum*, And do not say that you were not forewarned, *Ter.*

But what chiefly deserves attention in adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined:

1. *Apprimè, admodum, vehementer, maxime, perquam, valde, oppiddò*, &c. and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. *perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppiddò pauci*, very few; *persacile est*, &c. In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum*; as, *In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus*; *parum firmus, multum bonus*, Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanà*, Liv.

QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quam familiariter*, very familiarly, *Ter.* So *quam severe*, very severely, Cic. *Quam latè*, very widely, Cæs. *Tum multa, quam*, &c. as many things as, &c. *Quam maximas potest copias armat*, as great as possible, Sall. *Quam maximas gratias agit, agam primum quam sepius*, Cic. *Quam quisque pessime fecit, tam maxime tutus est*, Sall.

FACILE, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to the superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facile doctissimus, facile princeps*, v. *præcipuus*. LONGE to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato*, Cic. *Pedibus longè melior Lycus*, Virg.

2. CUM, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; DUM, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur*; *Ægroto, dum anima est, spes esse*,

dicitur, Cic. Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, Ovid. DUM and DONEC, for usquedum, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, Operior, dum ista cognosco, Cic. Haud desinam, donec perfecero, Ter. So QUOAD, for quamdiu, quantum, quatenus as long, as much, as far as; thus, Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe. Quoad tibi æquum videbitur quoad possem et liceret; quoad progredi potuerit amentia, Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, Thesalonice esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes, Cic. but not always; Non faciam finem regendi, quoad nuntiatum erit te fecisse, Cic. The pronoun ejus, with facere or fieri, is elegantly added to quoad; as, Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri, possit, Cic. Ejus is thought to be here governed by aliquid or some such word understood. Quoad corpus, quoad animam, for secundum, or quoad attinet ad corpus vel animam, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is usually joined with the indicative. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMUL AC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, Antequam dico or dicam, Cic. Simul ac persensit, Virg. Simul ut videro Curionem, Cic. Hæc ubi dicta dedit, Liv. Ubi semel quis perjeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet, Cic. So NÆ, truly; as, Næ ego homo sum infelix, Ter. Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consuluisses, Cic. But NÆ, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, Næ jura, Plaut. Næ post conferas culpam in me, Ter. Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen, Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; Fuit olim quasi ego sum, senex, Plaut. Adversis rupto ceu quondam turbine venti, confugunt, Virg. Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur, Cic.

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for utinam, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit, Cic. O mihi preteritos referat si Jupiter annos, Virg. Ut illum dii deæque perdant, Ter.

6. UT, when, or after, takes the indicative; as, Ut discessis, veni, &c. ¶ Also for quam or quomodo, how! as, Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in oculo latenti! Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse, Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, Ut sementem feceris, ita metes, Cic.

7. QUIN for CUR NON, takes the indicative; as, Quin continetis vocem indicem stultitiæ vestræ? Cic. ¶ For IMO, nay or but, the indicative or imperative; as, Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi, Ter. ¶ For UT, NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the subjunctive; as, Nulla iam facilius res, quin difficilis fiet quum invitus facias, Ter. Nemo est, quin maleat; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam, I cannot help sending; Nihil abest, quin sim miserrimus, Cic.

1. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XXII. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

<i>Pridie ejus diæ,</i>	The day before that day.
<i>Ubique gentium,</i>	Every where.
<i>Satis est verborum,</i>	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time, governing the genitive are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc*; as *Interea loci*, in the meantime; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubi-ubi, &c.* Also *Eo, huc, hucine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*; as, *Ubi, quo, quovis, &c.* also *usquam, nusquam, unde terrarum, vel gentium; longè gentium; ibidem loci, eo aulaciæ, recordiæ, miseriarum, &c.* to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minime*; as, *Abundè gloriæ, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, satis loquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi vel habet.* He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Instar montis*, like a mountain, Virg. But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæque abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res, locus, or negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie, ejus diæ, seldom diem*; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinæ, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus, &c.* rarely *Kalendarum, &c.*

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as, *En hostis, or hostem; Ecce miserum hominem, Cic.* Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato, Ter. Ecce duas (scil. aras) tibi, Daphni, Virg.* In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum, Ter.* But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

Obs. 4. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

<i>Omnium optimè loquitur,</i>	He speaks the best of all.
<i>Convenienter nature,</i>	Agreeably to nature.
<i>Venit obviam ei,</i>	He came to meet him.
<i>Proximè castris or castra,</i>	Next the camp.

2. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

XXIII. The prepositions *ad, apud, ante, &c.* govern the accusative.

AD astra, to the stars; religari ad asserem, to be bound to a plank; ad diem veniam, solvam,

&c. at or on; ad portam, ostium, fores, at, before; ad urbem Tiberim, near, at; ad tem-

PLA supplicatio, *in*; **AD** summum, *at most*, or *to the top*; **AD** summam, *on the whole*; Cic. **AD** ultimum, *extremum, at last, finally*; **AD** v. *in speciem, to appearance*; **MENTIS** ad omnia capacitas; **ANNUS** fatalis **AD** interitum; **LENIUS** **AD** severitatem, *for, with respect to*, Cic. **AD** vivum, *sc. corpus, to the quick*; **AD** judicem agere, *before*; nihil **AD** Cæsarem, *in comparison of*; numero **AD** duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes **AD** unum, *to a man*; **AD** hoc, *besides*; **AD** vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo **AD** unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herbæ **AD** lunam messæ, *by the light of*, Virg. **AD** tempus venit, *at*; ira brevis est **&** **AD** tempus, *for*; **AD** tempus consilium capiam, *according to*, Cic. **AD** decem annos, *after*; annos **AD** quinquaginta natus, *about*, Cic. nebula erat **AD** multum diei, *for a great part of the day*, Liv. **AD** pedes, jacere, provolvi, procumbere, **&** **AD** genua; **AD** manus esse, *at*; **AD** manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; **AD** libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less*; **AD** amussim, *exactly*; **AD** hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and hearing these things*, Liv.

AD seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; **AS**, **AD** duo millia cæsa sunt; **AD** mille hominum amissum est; **AD** ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

APUD forum, *at*; **APUD** me cænabam, *at my house*; **APUD** senatum, **JUDICES**, *v. aliquem dicere, before*; **APUD** majores nostros, *among*; **APUD** Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo apud illum, I have credit with him*; **facio te apud illum deum, Ter.**

ANTE diem, focum, *&c. before*.

ADVERSUS, *v. -um*; **CONTRA** hostes, *against*; **ADVERSUS** infimos justitia est servanda, *toward*; **ADVERSUS** hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. **Lerina adversum Antipolim**, *over against*, Plin.

CIS *vel* **CITRA** flumen, *on this side*; **CITRA** necessitatem, *without*; **Ede citra** crudelitatem, **bibe citra** ebrietatem, *Senec.*

CIRCUM **&** **CIRCA** regem, *about*; **Varia circa** hæc opinio, *Plin.*

ERGA amicos, *towards*. **EXTRA** muros; **Extra** jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without*; **nemo extra te**, *besides*; **extra** conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among*; **inter** **&** **super** cœnam,

during, in the time of; **inter** hæc parata, *during these preparations*, Sall. **Inter** tot annos, *in*, Cic. **Inter** diem, *whence*; **interdiu**, *in the day time*; **inter** se amant, *they love one another*; **Quasi non** norimus nos **inter** nos, *Ter.*

INTRA privatos parietes, *intra paucos annos, within*; **intra** famam est, *less than report*, Quint.

JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles*.

OB lucrum, *for gain*; **ob** oculos, *before*; **ob** industriam *for de industria, on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or quem penes, in the power of*; **Penes te es?** *Are you in your senses?* Hor.

PER agros, *through*; **per** vim, *per scelus, by*; **per** anni tempus, *per ætatem licet, for, by reason of*.

PONE caput, *behind*.

POST hoc tempus, *after*; **post** tergum, *behind*; **post** homines natos, *post hominum memoriam, since the world began*.

PRÆTER te nemo, *nobody besides, or except*; **præter** casam fugere, *beyond*; **præter** legem, *morem æquum et bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. contrary to, against, beyond*; **præter** cæteros excellere, *lamentari, above*; **præter** ripam ire, *along, near*; **præter** oculos, *before*, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of*; **propter** aquæ rivum, *near, hard by*, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta et virtutes tuas, *according to*, Ter. **secundum** litus, **secundum** aurem vulneratus est, *near to*; **in** actione **secundum** vocem, *vultus plurimum valet*; **secundum** patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to*; **Præter** **secundum** me decrevit, *sententiam dedit, for, in my favour*, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along*.

SUPRA terram, *above*.

TRANS mare, *over, beyond*.

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond*.

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added **CIRCITER**, **PROPE**, **USQUE**, **et VERSUS**; **as**, **Circiter** meridiem, *about mid day*; **prope** muros, *near the walls*; **usque** Puteolos, **Tharsum usque**, *as far as*; **Orientem versus**, *towards the east*. But in these **ad** is understood, which we find sometimes expressed; **as**, **Prope** **ad** annum, *Nep.* **Ab ovo usque** **ad** mala, *Hor.* **Ad** oceanum **versus**, *Cæs.* **In** Italiam **versus**, *Cic.*

2. Prepositions governing the Ablative.

XXIV. The prepositions *a, ab, abs, &c.* govern the ablative.

A patre, **ab** omnibus, **abs** te, *by or from*; **a** puero, *vel* **pueris**, *a pueritia, in cunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. from a child, ever since childhood*; **ab ovo usque** **ad** mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper*; **a** manu, *sc. fervus, an amanuensis or clerk*; **ad** manum, *a waiting man*; **a** pedibus, *a footman*; **a** latere principis, *an attendant*. **So** **a** secretis, *rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. a secretary, accountant, &c. fores a nobis, for nostræ*. **Injuria** **ab** illo, *for illius. Ter.* **a** cœna, *after*; **secundus**, **tertius** **a** Romulo; **ictus** **ab** latere, *on or in*; **a** senatu stare, *in defence of*; **ab** oculis doleo, *Plaut.* **ab** ingenio improbus, *a pecunia et militibus imparatus, as to, with respect to*, Cic. **Est calor a sole**; **omissiores** **ab** re, *too careless about money*; **a villa** mercenarium vidi, *Ter.*

ABSQUE causa, *without*; **absque** te esset, *recte ego mihi vidissem i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu*

esses, but for you, had it not been for you, Ter. **Absque** *is chiefly used by comic writers*; **sine**, *by orators*.

CLAM patre **et** patrem, *without the knowledge of*.

CORAM omnibus, *before, in presence of*.

CUM exercitu, *with*; **testis** **mecum** est annulus, *in my possession*, Ter. **cum** prima luce, *at break of day*; **cum** imperio esse, *in*; **cum** primis, *in primis, in the first place*; **cum** metu dicere, *cum* letitia vivere, *cum* cura, *&c. Cic.* *We say, mecum, tecum, secum; nobiscum, vobis cum; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus.*

DE lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning*; **de** tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of*; **de** loco superiore, *from*; **de** die, *by day*; **de** nocte, *by night*; **de** integro, *anew, afresh*; **de**, *v. ex* improvviso, *unexpectedly*; **de**, *v. ex* industria, *on purpose*; **de** meo, *at my expense*; **id** **de** lucro

putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter. de, v. ex compacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *cross-wise, athwart*; de, v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to*; qua, v. hac de causa, *for*; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de filio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, *Nep.* Robur de exercitu, *Liv.* Adolescens de summo loco, *Plaut.* De procul aspicere, *Id.*

E foro, ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, v. contraria parte, *on the contrary*; e regione, *over against*; e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magna ex parte, *for the most part*; ex super vacuo, *superfluously*; ex tua dignitate, v. virtute, ex decreto senatûs, e natura, *according to*; so vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex, v. de more, ad v. in morem alicujus: Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*; ex amicis certis certissimus, *of, or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum, *by, Id.*

PRO gloria certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sall. Hoc est pro me, *Cic.* pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætorē, pro te

molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte, v. facultate, *to one's ability or power*; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*, Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as, so*; pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concessio, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso, relictus est, *Cic.*

PRÆ se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because, of*; illum, præ me contempni, *in comparison of*: So the adverb præut; *as, præut* hujus rabies quæ dabit, *Ter.*

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c. homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sedes, &c. *Cic.*

Capulo TENUS, *up to the hilt*. Tenus is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the singular; as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as *Cuma*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, laborum, lumborum, crurum tenus, up to*. We also find *Coryræ tenus*, et ostiis tenus, *Liv.* Colchis tenus, *Flor.* Pectoribus tenus, *Ovid.*

To prepositions governing the ablative is commonly added PROCLUS; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, *Virg.* *Procul ab ostentatione*, *Quinct.* *Culpa est procul a me*, *Ter.*

3. Prepositions governing the Accusative or Ablative.

XXV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub*, govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in or among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, *into*; amor in patriam, in te benignus, *towards*; in lucem, *until day*; in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on that head*; in rem tuam est, *for your advantage*; in utramque partem disputare, *on both sides, for and against*; litura in nomen, *on*, Cic. potestas in filium, *over*; in aliquem dicere, *against*; mirum in modum, *after*; in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, *on*; in os laudare, *to, before*; in, v. inter patres lectus, *into the number of*; in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. *among*; crescit in dies, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, *every day*; in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, *against*; in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow*; Est in diem, *will happen sometime after*, Ter. Induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for*; Ternis assibus in pedem, v. in singulos pedes, transegit, *He bargained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot*; So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In mediæ singula, *H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.*

IN portu navigo, in tempore, *in*; esse in potestate,

v. in potestatem, honore, v. honorem, mente, v. mentem; in manu, v. manibus esse, habere, tenere, *in one's power, on hand*; in amicis, *among*; in oculis, *before*; Occisus est in provinciam, *far in provincia, Sall.* In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, *for puer or pueri, when a boy or boys, &c.* Hoc in tempore, *Nep.* In loco fratris diligere, *for ut fratrem, Ter.*

SUB terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, *under*; sub ipsum funus, *near, just before*. Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. incipienti luce, &c. *at the dawn of day, &c.* sub idem tempus, *about*; sub eas literas recitatæ sunt tue, sub festos dies, *after, Cic.*

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. *under*; sub urbe, *near*, Ter. sub ea conditione, v. -em, *on or with*.

SUPER Numidiâ, *above, beyond*; super ripas, *upon*; super hæc; super morbum etiam fames affixit, *besides*, Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon*; super hac re scribere, *his accensa*

140 CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

super, concerning; alii super alios trucidantur, tur laude laborem, for, Virg.
Liv. Super coenam, super vinum et epulas, for SUBTER terram vel terra, under.
 inter, during, Curt. Nec super ipse sua moliri-

Obs. 1. When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante*, *circu*, *clam*, *coram*, *contra*, *infra*, *intra*, *juxta*, *palam*, *pone*, *post*, *propter*, *secus*, *subter*, *super*, *supra*, *ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus*, *juxta*, *propter*, *secus*, *secundum*, and *clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the accusative or ablative; as, *Intra cellam*, for *intra*, *Liv.* *Intra templo divum*, sc. *in*, Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, a region; *ab initio*, ab rege; *ex urbe*, *ex parte*; *abs* before q and t; as, *abs te*, *abs quovis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with e; as, *e logiquo*, *e regione*, *e vestigio*, *e re mea est*, &c. Some only with ex; as, *Ex compacto*, *ex tempore*, *magna ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex* Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, scil. *ob vel propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e vel de*, Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias?* *Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*, Sall. *Campum Stellatim divisi extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium milibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Eomere virum*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTION.

XXVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, and some others, govern the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone!* O good man! *Heu me miserum!* Ah wretched me!

So *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. *Heu vanitas humana!* Plin. *Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum!* Cic.

XXVII. The interjections *hei*, and *væ*, govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! Ah me! *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ehe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Pro hominum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu! quam me miserum sentio*; *Hei mihi* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

4. THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

XXVIII. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *aut*, *neque*, and some others, connect like cases and modes; as,

Honora patrem et matrem, Honour father and mother.
Nec legit nec scribit, He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quàm*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c. as, *Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diæ memoriam*, Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*, Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as, *Interest mea et reipublicæ; Constitit ase et pluris; Sive e Romæ, sive in Epiro; Decius cum se devoveret, et in mediâ aciem irruerat*, Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summæque industriæ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis*, Sall. *Tecum habita, et nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex*, Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by both or likewise; *aut* or *vel*, by either; the first *sive*, by whether; and the first *nec*, by neither; as, *Et legit, et scribit*; so *tum legit, tum scribit*; or *cum legit, tum scribit*, He both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit*, Whether he reads or writes; *facere quâ vera, quâ falsa*; *Incepere quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum*, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv.

XXIX. Two, or more substantives singular, connected by a conjunction, may have a verb, adjective, or relative plural to agree with them; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tuilius*

valeis, ego et Cicero valemus, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, *Cic.* In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read*; *Cicero and I are well*: but in Latin, the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*; but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c.* Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. *Cic.* Where *Athenæ et urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, *Liv.*

Obs. 3. If the substantive signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, *Sall.*

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life: because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantive to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin Grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. Sociis et rege recepto, *Virg.* Et ego in culpa sum, et tu, Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina, desunt; or nihil hic deest nisi carmina.* Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat ciuitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo milia et quadringenti cæsi, *Liv.* This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse neque ante Larem proprium vescor, for vescimur, Horat.*

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as, *Remo cum fratre Quirinus iura dabunt, Virg.* The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant, Ter.* *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur, Cic.*

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

XXX. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, &c.* govern the subjunctive mood; as,

Lego ut discam, I read that I may learn.
Utinam sapires, I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter*; pronouns, as, *quis & cuius*; adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, quâ, quorum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, quâ, ut, quam, quantum, &c.* or conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*, I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit*; *Viden' ut alta flet nive candidum Soracte?* *Hor.* But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ago, Plaut.* *Haud scio, an amat, Ter.* *Vide avaritia quid facit, Id.* *Vides quam turpe est, Cic.*

¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* *Cic.* Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur, &c.* *Sall.* But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So *Est qui, eunt qui, est quando v. ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or substantive.

NOTE. *Haud scio an recte dixerim*, is the same with *dico, affirmo, Cic.*

Obs. 2. *ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI, QUAMQUAM*, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive; *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the subjunctive, and *UT, although*, always has it; as, *Ut queras, non reperies, Cic.* *QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM*, are usually construed with the indicative; *SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD, and QUIA*, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. *DUM, for dummodo, provided*, has always the subjunctive; as, *Oderint dum metuant, Cic.* And *QUIPPE, for nam, always* the indicative; as, *Quippe velor fatia.*

Obs. 3. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former; thus, when *cisi, tametsi, or quamvis, although*, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen, yet or nevertheless*, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam-quam; Adeo* or *ita, —ut*: in English, *As, —as, or so*; as, *Etsi sit liberatis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante, —quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 4. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, liceo, oportet, necesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac* or *facito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem; Nolo mentiri; Fac cogites, Ter.* In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias, Cic.* *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat, Liv. iv. 47. scil. post.*

Obs. 5. *Ut* and *Quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam, I read that I may learn; Gaudeo quod legi, I am glad that or because I have read. Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot, &c.*

Obs. 6. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illum, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. *Ut sis vitalis, metuo*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater rival*, will not; —*ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

1. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XXXI. Verbs, signifying actively, govern the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter or *viam*; *Pugnare pugnam* or *prælium*; *Currere cursum*; *Canere cantilenam*; *Vivere vitam*; *Ludere ludum*; *Sequi sectam*; *Somniare somnium*, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alerin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *vehementer amabat*, Virg. *Currimus æquor*, scil. *per*, Id. *So comptos arsit adulteri crines*, Hor. *Sallare Cyclopa*; *olet hircum*; *Sulcos ei vinela crepal mera*, Hor. *Vox hominem sonat*; *Sudare mella*, Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellespontio juncto, et Athone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset*, sc. *per* Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine*, Virg. *Callere jura*; *Mærere mortem*; *Horret iratum mare*, Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere*; *dolere dolore*, *vicem ejus*; *gaudere gaudio*; *mori v. obire morte*; *vivere vird*; *ardet virgine*, Horat. *Ludere aleam* v. -â; *manare, plueret, roraret, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo*. *Erubescere jura*, Virg. *origine*, Tacit. *equo vehi*, Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorreere famam, to dread infamy, Liv. a litibus; *ab uxore ducenda*, to be averse from, Id. a meis moribus abhorret, is inconsistent with, Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish, Virg. *illis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat*, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv.

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg.

Ætas adolevit; *adolevit ad ætatem*, Plaut.

Declinare ictum, to avoid; *loco*; *agmen aliquo*, to remove.

Degenerare animos, to weaken; *patri*, to degenerate from; a virtute majorum.

Durare adolescentes labore, to harden; *Res durat ad breve tempus*, endures; In ædibus durare nequeo, stay or remain, Plaut.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quid*, *aliquid*, *quicquid*, *nihil*, *idem*, *illud*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *multa*, *pauca*, &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrumat*, *Id succenset*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prora avertit*, sc. *se*, Virg. *Flumina præcipitant*, sc. *se*, Id. *Quodcumque intenderat*, sc. *se*, turned or directed himself, Sallust. *Obiit sc. mortem*, Ter. *Cum faciam vitulæ*, sc. *sacra*, Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui*, *reddes ridere decorum*; for *dulcem sermonem*, *decorum risum*, Hor.

2. Verbs governing the Genitive.

XXXII. *Misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive; as,

Misereor civium tuorum, Pity your countrymen.

Satagit rerum suarum, { He has his hands full at home, or has enough to do about his own affairs:

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango*, *decipior*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *excrucio*, *fallo* & *fallor*, *fastideo*, *invideo*, *lætor*, *miror*, *pendeo*, *studeo*, *vereor*; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Laborum decipitur*, Hor. *Discrucior animi*, Ter. *Pendet mihi animus*, *pendeo animi vel animo*; but we always say, *Pendemus animis*, not *animorum*, are in suspense, Cic. *Justitia prius mirer*, Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo*, *desino*, *desisto*, *quiesco*, *regno*; likewise, *adipiscor*, *condico*, *credo*, *frustror*, *funo*, *laudo*, *libero*, *levo*, *participo*, *prohibeo*; as, *Abstineti irarum*; *Desine querelarum*; *Regnavit populorum*, Hor. *Desistere pugnae*, Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*, Liv.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, *Angor*, *desipio*, *discrucior*, *lætor*, *aliquid re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desino aliquid*, *et ab aliquo*, to give over; *Desisto incepto*, *de negotio*, *ab illa mente*; *Quiesco a labore*; *Regnare in equitibus*, *oppidis*, sc. *in*, Cic. *Per urbes*, Virg. *Adipisci id*; *Frustrari in re*; *Furere de aliquo*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causâ*, *Angor animi*, scil. *dolore* or *anxietate*.

3. Verbs governing the Dative.

XXXIII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has *to*, or *for*, after it in English; as,

Finis venit imperio, An end is come to the empire, *Liv.*
Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, *Id.*
Tibi seris, tibi metis, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, *Plaut.*

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus.* *Cic.* *Multa malè eveniunt bonis.* *Id.*
Sol lucet etiam sceleratis. *Sen.* *Hæret lateri lethalis arundo.* *Virg.*

XXXIV. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satiso, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico tibi, &c.

XXXV. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *super*, govern the dative; as,

1. *Præcedo, præcurro, præeo, præideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverta.*
2. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequilo, adhareo, adsto, adstipulo, advolvor, afflugeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appaereo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assuesco, assurgor.*
3. *Colludo, concino, consono, contrivo.*
4. *Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, suberesco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrepro.*
5. *Antecello, anteo, anesto, aneverto.*
6. *Obrepro, obluor, obtrector, obstrepro, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obisto, obvenio.*
7. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insidior, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, intrigilo, illacrymo, illudo, immineo, immorior, immoror, impendeo.*
8. *Intervenio, internico, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.*
9. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

XXXVI. Verbs, signifying, *to profit*, *hurt*, *favour*, *assist*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *trust*, *threaten*, and *be angry with*, govern the dative.

1. *To profit or hurt*; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo, for *prospicio*. Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior.*

2. *To favour or assist, and the contrary*; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulo, plaudo, blandior, lenecino, palpor, assentor, supparasitor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminiculo, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, optulor.* Likewise, *Derogo, detraho, invideo, æmulo.*

3. *To command and obey, to serve and resist*; as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, for *modum adhibeo*. Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morigero, morigeror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor.*

4. *To threaten and to be angry*; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo.

5. *To trust*; as,

Fido, confido, credo, diffido.

To these add, *Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despéro, operor, præstolo, prævaricor, recipio, to promise; renuncio; respondeo,* to answer or satisfy; *tempero, studeo, vaco,* to apply; *convictor.*

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo, and offendo,* govern the accusative.

OBS. 1. Verbs governing the dative only, are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative, have also an accusative expressed or understood.

OBS. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated; because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed: and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, aversor, &c. aliquem,* not *alicui.*

OBS. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed, particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as, *Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui or aliquem, to go before, to excel.*

Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. *Adequitate portæ Syracusas.*

Adjacere, mari, v. mare, to lie near.

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.

Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.

Advolveri genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.

Advolare ei, ad eum, rostra, to fly up to.

Adflare rei, v. homini; rem, v. hominem; aliquid, alicui, to breathe upon.

Adulari ei, *v. eum, to flatter.* Allabi oris; aures ejus, *Virg. ad exta, Liv.*
 Apparere consuli, *to attend;* ad solium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, *appears.*
 Appropinquare Britanniae, portam, ad portam, *to approach.*
 Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, *to agree.*
 Dominari cunctis oris, *Virg. in cætera animalia, to rule over. Ovid.*
 Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, *to trust to, or in.*
 Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, *to pardon me or my fault.*
 Impendêre alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over.*
 Incessit cura, cupidio, timor ei, eum, *v. in eum, seized.*
 Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon;* labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to.*
 Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, *to indulge in, Ter.*
 Inihiare auro, bona ejus, *to gape after.* Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in.*
 Insultare rei et homini, *v. hominem;* fores; patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over.*
 Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on.*
 Latet res mihi, *v. me, is unknown to me.* Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure.*
 Ministrare ei, *to serve;* arma ei, *to furnish.*
 Moderari animo, gentibus: navim, omnia, *to rule.*
 Nocere ei, rarely eum, *to hurt, Plaut.*
 Nubere alicui; in familiam; Nuptiæ ei and cum eo, *to marry, Cic.*
 Obrepere ei and eum, *to creep upon;* in animos; ad honores.
 Obstrepere auribus and aures. Obtrextare ei laudibus, ejus, *to detract from.*
 Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem, nubes, *shades.* Palpari alicui and aliquem.
 Pacisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, *Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.*
 Præstolari alicui and aliquem, *to wait upon.*
 Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, *Ovid. ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, to fall.*

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative; but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coeo alicui, for cum aliquo;* 2. *Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, differre rei alicui, for à re aliqua.* We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se;* and *contendere, pugnare contra and adversus aliquem.*

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, de te, and pro te,* I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but *timeo, horreo te, v. a te,* I fear or dread you as an enemy; *So Consulo, prospicio, caveo tibi, hoc, I foresee this;* *Studere alicui, to desire; alicui, to favour; alicui rei, rem, and in re, to apply to a thing.* *So Æmulor tibi, I envy; te, I imitate; Auscullor tibi, I obey or listen to; te, I hear; Cupio tibi, I favour; rem, I desire; Fenero and -or tibi, I lend you on interest; abs te, I borrow; Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc feneraret, should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter.* And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion or Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad;* as,

Eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, v. hominem. Sometimes, however, in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor cælo, for ad cælum, Virg.*

XXXVII. Recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obliviscor, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis or lectionem, I remember the lesson.

Obliviscor injuriæ or injuriam, I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive, or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem, Ter. Oblitus est, quid paulo ante possuisset, Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies *to make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de;* as, *Memini alicujus, vel de aliquo.* *So recordor*, when it signifies *to recollect;* as, *Velim scire equid de te recordere, Cic.*

4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

XXXVIII. Verbs of abounding and wanting, govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive; as,

Abundat divitiis, He abounds in riches.

Caret omni culpa, He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exuberō, redundo, suppedito, scateo, &c.*—of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo and indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget æris, He needs money, Hor. Non tam artis indigent, quàm laboris, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa, he is free from fault, Liv.*

XXXIX. Utor, abutor, fungor, fruor, potior, vescor, and some others, govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. Abutitur libris, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victio, consto, laboro, for male me habeo, to be ill; pascor, epilor, nilor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus*; *imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior*, *fungor*, *vescor*, *epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers, *utor*, *abutor*, and *fruo*; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor*, always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg.

XL. A verb compounded with a preposition, often governs the case of that preposition; as,

Adeamus scholam, Let us go to the school.

Eceamus schola, Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the word is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam*; *Exire ex schola*; *Aggredi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingredi orationem*, or *in orationem*; *inducere animum*, and *in animum*; *evadere undis* and *ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*, *decedere viâ* or *de viâ*; *expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, extrudere urbem*, and *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari*, *alloqui*, *allatrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So *Alluere urbem*; *accolere flumen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *præterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdicare magistratum*); *transcurrere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adhortari ad aliquid*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire*, *demigrare loco*; and *a*, *de*, *ex loco*; *abstrahere aliquem a*, *de*, *vel e conspectu*; *Desistere sententiâ*, *a vel de sententiâ*; *Excidere manibus*, *de*, *vel e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as, *Egredi urbe* or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis*, or *insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus*; *pugnam, vincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XLI. The infinitive mood may be governed by a verb, participle, adjective, or noun; as,

Cupio discere, I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quintil. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus, equum fumantia solvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *deceat*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. So *Dicere*, *scire*, *fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Lalrociniari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare for cantandi*, or *cantûs*, Virg. 3. In the dative, *Paratus servire, for servituti*, Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere, for artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari, for amore, or qui ametur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitât ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit*; *Dubitât an faceret necne*, *Non dubito quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere, or ut faciam*. *Meluit tangi, or ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. To, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid*, *dare*, *need*, *make*, *see*, *hear*, *feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*; and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum*, or *ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Dontus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

XLII. When *quod*, *quin*, *ut*, or *ne*, is omitted in Latin, the word, which would otherwise be in the nominative, is put in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive mood; as,

Gaudeo te valere, I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem advenire*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a nenter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied; especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum castrum suumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quā*; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem*; *Jubeo res bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis*; *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat*; *non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quā fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*. *Miror si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superaret*, for *populum Romanum superasse*, Nep. *Ex animi sententia juro, ut ego rempublicam non deseram*, for *me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XLIII. Participles, gerunds, supines, and adverbs, govern the same case as the words from which they are derived; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. *Invidus mihi*, hated by me, or hateful to me; *Indies invidior*, Suet. *Occulta, et maribus non invidia solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseem, Cic.

EXOSUS, **PEROSUS**, and often also **PERTÆSUS**, govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exosa jugales*, Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat*, Liv. *Pertæsus ignariam suam*; *semel ipse*, displeased with, Suet. *vitam*, weary of, Justin. *levitatis*, Cic.

Verbals in **BUNDUS** govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Just. *Vilabundus castra hostium*, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. *Invidiæ consuli*, Sall. *Domum reditionis spe sublatâ*, Cæs. *Spectatio ludos*, Plaut.

Obs. 2. These verbs *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, *comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Comperit habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Incentum tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; or *Misi mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo*, *habeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *conduco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *feri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas ædificandas locavi*, Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

Obs. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi, I must study. *Aptus studendo*, Fit for studying.

Tempus studiendi, Time of study. *Scio studendum esse mihi*, I know that I must study.

XLIV. The gerund in *dum*, of the nominative, with the verb *est*, governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.

So *Scio legendum est mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet*, *neceste est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sis mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milites est*, sc. *vobis*, Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

XLV. The gerund in *di*, of the genitive, is governed by nouns, or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Faculas agrorum condandâ*, for *agros*, Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum, for comædias*, Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra renerunt sui purgandi causâ*, Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causâ*, Liv. *Ejus ridendi cupidus*, sc. *femine*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

XLVI. The gerund in *do*, of the dative, is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, &c.; as,

Charta utilis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendo ense*, for wearing, Virg.

XLVII. The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative, is governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *inter*, *ante*, *propter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.
Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Circa movendum*, Quintil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

XLVIII. The gerund in *do*, of the ablative, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*; or without a preposition, as the ablative of *cause*, *means*, or *manner*; as,

Pena a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Defessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidum vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperetur*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius*, *Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi impereetur*. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*, Virg.

Gerunds turned into participles in *dus*.

Obs. 1. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
<i>Petendum est mihi pacem,</i>	} or more frequently	<i>Pax est petenda mihi.</i>
<i>Tempus petendi pacem,</i>		<i>Tempus petendæ pacis.</i>
<i>Ad petendum pacem,</i>		<i>Ad petendam pacem.</i>
<i>A petendo pacem,</i>		<i>A petenda pace.</i>

Obs. 2. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi*, Cic.

Dative. *Perpetiendi labori idoneus*, Colum. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*, Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus v. habilis*, Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis*, Ter. *Literis dandis vigilare*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and Ablative. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos abstrahere*, Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *frutor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*; but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um*.

XLIX. The supine in *um*, is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum, He hath gone to walk.

So *Ducere cohortes prædatum*, Liv. *Nunc venis irriam dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio*, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *ad agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*. He is bent on his own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tua operâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam, domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Canlatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias hiematum*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opemaret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The Supine in *u*.

L. The supine in *u*, is put after an adjective; as,

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu factum, visuque hæc limina tangat; intra quæ puer est*, Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus; Fas v. nefas est dictu; Opus est scitu*, Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u* being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsessus redeo*, from getting provisions, *Plaut.* *Primus cubitu surgat*, (villicus) from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, *Caes.*

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive, or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci, or ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum*, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing.* 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument.* 3. *Measure and Distance.* 4. *Time.*

1. PRICE.

LI. Nouns, signifying the *price* of a thing, are put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus, I bought a book for two shillings.
Constitit talento, It cost a talent.

So *Asse carum est*; *vile viginti minis*; *auro venale*, &c. *Noceat empti dolore voluptas*, *Hor.* *Spem pretio non emam*, *Ter.* *Plurimi auro veneunt honores*, *Ovid.*

¶ These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impense pretio vendere*, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, *acil. pretio*, *Cic.* *Hec quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* *Ovid.* *Fast.* ii. 812. We also say; *Emi carè, carius, carissimè*; *bene, melius, optimè*; *male, pejus, vilis, vilissimè*. *Valde carè estimas: Emit donum prope dimidio carius, quàm estimabat*, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret*, *Liv.*

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

LII. Nouns, signifying the *instrument, cause, means, or manner*, are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu, I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more, He did it after his own way.
Scribo calamo, I write with a pen.

So *Ardet dolore*; *pallescere culpa*; *astuare dubitatione*; *gessere voluptate vel secundis rebus*: *Confectus morbo*; *affectus beneficiis*, *gravissimo supplicio*; *ignisus pietate*; *deterior licentiâ*: *Pietate filius*, *constitit pater*, *amore frater*; hence *Rex Dei gratiâ*. *Paritur pax bello*, *Nep.* *Procedere lento gradu*; *Acceptus regio apparatu*: *Nullo sono convertitur annus*, *Juv.* *Jam veniet tacito curva senectâ pede*, *Ovid.* *Percutere securi, defendere saxi, configere sagittis*, &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some prepositions understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est*, *Virg.* *Magno cum metu*; *Hac de causa*; *Præ morore*; *formidine*, &c. But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio*, not *cum gladio*: unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense*, *Ovid.*

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of *Concomitancy*, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis*; *Ingressus est cum gladio*, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances; as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the *ADJUNCT*, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum*, *Liv.* *Floruit acumine ingenti*, *Cic.* *Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilitate*, &c. *Eger pedibus*. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore*, seldom *marmoris*; *Poculum ex auro factum*, *Cic.*

3. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LIII. Nouns, signifying *measure, or distance*, are put in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative; as,

<i>Murus est decem pedes altus,</i>	The wall is ten feet high.
<i>Urbs distat triginta millia, or triginta</i>	The city is thirty miles distant.
<i>millibus passuum,</i>	
<i>Iter, or itinere unius diei,</i>	One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus*: *Palei, porrigitur, cernit*, &c. The names of measure

are *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, a hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto*, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Oss. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denam pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Oss. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe conedit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quantum miliarium*, v. *miliare conedit*, Cic. *Ad quintum lapidem*, Nep.

Oss. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as, *Hoc lignum excedit illud digito*. *Toto vertice supra est*, Virg. *Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta miliaribus superat*.

4. TIME.

LIV. Nouns, signifying the time *when*, are put in the ablative; those, *how long*, in the accusative—sometimes in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertid, He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies, He staid a few days.

Sex mensibus absuit, He was away six months.

* Or *thus*, Time *when* is put in the ablative; time *how long* is put in the accusative.

Oss. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put, for the most part, in the accusative.

Oss. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsentî*, scil. *tempore*; in *vel ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinam*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturos* ait, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc ætatis, temporis, horæ*, &c. for *hac ætate, hoc tempore*, &c. And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginî*, sc. *ante*. *Sicuti quotannis tributa conferunt* sc. *tot annis, quot vel quotquot sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad, soon*; *Oppidum præcis diebus, quibus ed ventum est, expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*, Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi* tuas literas, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembria*, Id. *Ex ante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus*; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old, Nep.

Oss. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*. It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*: but here, *ea*, or *id*, may be understood.

1. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

LV. Verbs of accusing, condemning, admonishing, and acquitting, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,

He accuses me of theft.

Meipsum inertiae condemno,

I condemn myself of laziness.

Illum homicidii absolvunt,

They acquit him of manslaughter.

Monet me officii,

He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, inquiro, arguo, defero, insimulo, postulo, alligo, astringo*; of condemning, *Damno, condemnno, infamo, noto*; of acquitting, *Absolveo, libero, purgo*; of admonishing, *Moneo, admonceo, commonefacio*.

Oss. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii, or de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti, or de furto*. *De re condemnati sunt*, Cic.

Oss. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis, v. capitis*; and *crimine, v. capite*; also *Absolveo me peccato*, Liv. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and *not capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Oss. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the accusative of a person, and the genitive of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and *not alicujus avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare, inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertia*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

Oss. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, nulla*, &c. as, *Moneo, accuso te istud*. We seldom find, however, *Errorem te moneo*, but *erroris* or *de errore*; except in old writers, as Plautus.

LVI. Verbs of esteeming, govern the accusative of the person, or thing esteemed, and the genitive of the value; as,

Æstimo te magni, I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo.* They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, kujus.*

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo, scil. pretio*; and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo, habeo, puto, duco.*

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio, I take this in good part.*

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti, scil. de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni, scil. pretii, or pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo bono, i. e. status or censeo esse factum, or manus boni viri, or animi*; *Monere aliquem officii, i. e. officii causâ, or de re or negotio officii.*

2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

LVII. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

<i>Compâro Virgilium Homero,</i>	<i>I compare Virgil to Homer.</i>
<i>Suum cuique tribuilo,</i>	<i>Give every one his own.</i>
<i>Narras fabulam surdo,</i>	<i>You tell a story to a deaf man.</i>
<i>Eripuit me morti,</i>	<i>He rescued me from death.</i>

Or rather,—**ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted,) as,**

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. Emit librum mihi, He bought a book for me. Sic vos non vobis feritis aratra boves, Virg. Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominibus, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus, to order them to furnish, Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia, and ad aliam, or comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti, morte, a or ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui, or ad aliquem*; *Intendere telum alicui, or in aliquem*: *Incidere æri, in ær, or in ære*; and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as, *Circumdare mœnia oppido, or oppidum mœnibus, to surround a city with walls.*

Intercludere comæctum alicui, or aliquem comæctu, to intercept one's provisions.

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or aliquem re, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Monare hostiam Deo, or Deum hostid, to sacrifice.

Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or Romanos Gallid, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or se veste, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes, alicui aliquo, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; Cæsari gladio, Sall.

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, and de, hac re, I congratulate you on this. Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur, Liv.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui, or aliquem labe, to put an affront on one; aram sanguine, litare Deum sacris, and sacra Deo, to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui and apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui and apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam saniori locare, to place at interest, Cic.

Opponere se morti, and ad mortem; Renunciare id ei, and ad eum, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipilo, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also *hortor* and *invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesto*; thus, *Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad prætorem hominem trahit, Cic.* But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio, for in Latium, Virg. Invitare aliquem hospitio, or in hospitium, Cic.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui, scil. se*; *Cedere alicui, scil. locum*; *Detrahere alicui, scil. laudem*; *Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum, He gave me a book, for to me.*

3. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

LVIII. Verbs of asking, and teaching, govern two accusatives; the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

<i>Pocimus te pacem,</i>	<i>We beg peace of thee.</i>
<i>Docuit me grammaticam,</i>	<i>He taught me grammar.</i>

Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Docceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo, a v. abs te*; *Perconlor, scilor, sciscilor ex* or *a te*, or *te* without the preposition: *Interrogo, consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum*, for *ditos*, *Virg.* *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the ablative, without a preposition. *Imbuo eum artibus, in v. ab artibus.* Also *instruo ad rem, in re, ignorantiam alicujus.* *Erudire aliquem artes, de v. in re, ad rem.* *Formare ad studium, mentem studii, studia ejus.*

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but 'by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

4. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

LIX. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo.* Of unloading, *levo, exonero, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* Of loosing, *solvio, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c.* Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo.* Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corono, and calceo.* Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. The preposition by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex calenis*, *Cic.* Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves, sc. viris*, mans the ships, *Virg.*

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet*, *Liv.* And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

LX. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

<i>Accusor furti,</i>	I am accused of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparatur Homero,</i>	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Docetor grammaticam,</i>	I am taught grammar.
<i>Navis oneratur auro,</i>	The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*; — *Eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a vel ex morte*; — *pueros doctum iri grammaticam*; — *rem celatum iri mihi vel me*; *me celatum iri de re, &c.*

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis.*

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as, *Tu laudaris a me*, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te.* *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*; *Gaudes meum factum probari a te, or te probare meum factum.* And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet*, *Cic.* *Phalaris non a paucis interit*, *Id.* So *cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a preliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo, &c.* Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe.* Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere, &c. ab aliquo.*

The preposition is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjuge, Ovid.* *Desertus suis, sc. a, Tacit.* *Tabula distinguitur unda, qui navigat, sc. ab unda*, Is kept from the water by a plank, *Juvenal.*

The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est respublica, or a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me v. a me factum est, Cic.* But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores, a rege, sc. a rege vel a legato ejus, Cic. Fam. i. 1.*

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as, *Neque cernitur ulli, for ab ullo, Virg.* *Vix audior ulli, Ovid.* *Scriberis Vario, for a Vario, Hor.* *Honestas bonis viris queruntur, for a viris, Cic.* *VIDEOR*, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sororum, for a me, Virg.*

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicio, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor*, and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem or veste.*

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est, Cic.* *Bellum militabitur, Horat.* Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to

a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur, &c. a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo,* I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optimè a Deo; Reclamatum est ab omnibus,* all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicium miseretur,* Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem,* the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amare; Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus audetur,* Tacit.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

LXI. Impersonal verbs govern the dative; as,

Expedit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego fateor.* So *nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, &c.* We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor; Ego cur invidor;* for *imperatur, invidetur mihi,* Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, capiti, incipit, desinit, debet, and colet,* are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri,* I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute,* Cic. *Per virtutem potest tri ad astra.* *Aliorum laudi et gloriæ invidi solet,* The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse,* Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res vel de hac re, vel hujus rei,* scil. *memoria,* This thing came into my mind. *Est cura mihi hæc res vel de hac re.* *Doleo vel dolet mihi id factum esse.*

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines, &c.* And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *nobis non licet peccare,* the same with *peccatum;* *Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse saluam,* i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis,* Cic. *Accidit, evenit, contigit, ut ibi essemus.* These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c.* are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet,* Cic. *Eadem licent,* Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet,* sc. *sibi,* Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes,* sc. *mihi,* I am resolved, Virg.

LXII. Interest and refert require the genitive; as,

Interest omnium, It is the interest of all. *Refert patris,* It concerns my father.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua sua, &c.* to be in the ablative singular feminine. We say either *cujus interest,* and *quorum interest;* or *cujus interest,* from *cujus, -a, -um.*

Obs. 2. *Interest* and *refert* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris;* as, *Illud mea magni interest,* Cic. *Hoc parvi refert.* *Usque adeo magni refert studium,* Lucret. *Incessus in grvida refert,* Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maxime reipublicæ interesse judicabo,* Cic. Sometimes instead of the genitive, they take the accusative with the preposition *ad;* as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it? &c. *Plaut.* *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest,* Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi,* &c. Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam,* It is of great importance, Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit,* Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat,* Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas,* Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *interest* and *refert* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis,* i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis;* *Refert patris,* i. e. *refert se hæc res ad negotia patris.* So *Interest mea, est inter negotia mea.*

LXIII. Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and piget, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you.

Tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life.

Pœnitet me peccati, I repent of my sin.

Pudet me culpæ, I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *miseret me tui,* that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet*

me peccasse, or quod peccaverim. The accusative is frequently understood as, *Scelerum et bene pœnitel*, scil. nos, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitel*, &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod*, &c. as, *Ipsa sui miseret*, Lucr. *Nonne hæc te pudent*, Ter. *Nihil quod pœnitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*, scil. secundum or quod ad, Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, lædet*, and *piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miserilum est me tuorum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter. *Miseretur te fratrum*: *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

LXIV. *Decet, delectat, juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive mood; as,

Delectat me studere, It delights me to study.

Non decet te rixari, It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These words are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oportet, etiamsi liceat*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ila nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as, *Sibi quisque consulat oportet*, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *manum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nulla esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic.

NOTE. *Attinet, pertinet*, and *spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, Cic.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF PLACES.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particularly questions.

1. The Place WHERE.

LXV. The name of a town, signifying the place *where*, or *in which*, if it be of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; but if it be of the third declension, or plural number, it is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Vixit Romæ,</i>	He lived at Rome.
<i>Mortuus est Londini,</i>	He died at London.
<i>Habitat Carthagine,</i>	He dwells at Carthage.
<i>Studuit Parisiis,</i>	He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself but in its neighbourhood, or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad or apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed; thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthaginis*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative when the question is made by *ubi*?

2. The Place WHITHER.

LXVI. The name of a town, signifying the place *whither*, is put in the accusative; as,

<i>Venit Romam,</i>	He came to Rome.
<i>Profectus est Athenas,</i>	He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom ; as, *Carthagini nuntios mittam*, Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied ; as, *Romam, erat nuntiatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hæc nuntiant domum Albani*, Id. *Messanam literas dedi*, Cic.

3. The Place WHENCE.

LXVII. The name of a town, signifying the place *whence*, or *through what place*, is put in the ablative ; as,

Discessit Corintho, He departed from Corinth.
Laodiceâ iter faciebat, He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used ; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

Domus and *Rus*.

LXVIII. *Domus* and *rus*, signifying the place *where*, are construed like the names of towns ; as,

<i>Manet domi</i> ,	He stays at home.
<i>Domum revertitur</i> ,	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum</i> ,	I am called from home.
<i>Vivit rure</i> , or more frequently <i>ruri</i> ,	He lives in the country.
<i>Rediit rure</i> ,	He is returned from the country.
<i>Abiit rus</i> ,	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns ; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition ; as, *In domo paterna*, not *domi paternæ* ; So *Ad domum paternam* : *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, *vester*, *regius*, and *alienus* ; as, *Domi meæ viri*, Cic. *Regiam domum comportant*, Sall.

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not ; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo*, or *in domo Cæsaris*.

Obs. 4. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added ; as,

When the question is made *by*

Ubi ? *Natus in Italia*, *in Latio*, *in urbe*, &c.
Quo ? *Abiit in Italiam*, *in Latium*, *in* or *ad urbem*, &c.
Unde ? *Rediit ex Italia*, *e Latio*, *ex urbe*, &c.
Qua ? *Transit per Italiam*, *per Latium*, *per urbem*, &c.

Obs. 5. A preposition is often added to names of towns ; as, *In Roma*, for *Romæ* ; *ad Romam*, *ex Roma*, &c.

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb without a preposition ; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 6. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns ; as, *Pompeius Cypri vinus est*, Cæs. *Credâ jussit considerare Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybiæ*, for *in Lybia* ; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*, Id. *Æn. iv. 36. Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinoræ ejus memorat*, Sall.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXIX. A noun, or pronoun, joined with a participle expressed or understood, when its case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute ; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ, The sun rising, or while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.
Opere peracto, ludemus, Our work being finished, or when our work is finished, we will play.

So *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus* ; *Nihil amicitia præstabilius est, exceptâ virtute* ; *Oppressâ libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus, amplius* ; *Nobilitum vitâ victique mutato, mores mutari civitatum pulo*, Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam iniuriis, et dictatore arcent Romanam spectante* ; *at ab auguribus, simul oves rite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum*, Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades*, Ovid. *Fast. iii. 1.*

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place ; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of ; as, *Milites, hostibus*

victis, redierunt. The soldiers having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered*: 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered*: 3. *By conquering the enemy*: 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt*; or, *Romani, libertate adepti floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus*, is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulibus*, scil. *existentibus*. *Invidi Minervæ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassus Minervæ*, without learning, *Hor. Magistræ ac duce naturæ; viris fratribus; te hortatore; Cæsare impulsore, &c.* Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperito, quam regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. *cum nondum comperitum esset*, *Liv. Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*, *Id. Excepit quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, *Hor. Parto quod avebas*, *Id.* In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, *Ovid.*

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*, *Plaut. Absente nobis*, *Ter.* We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, *Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. Lætos fecit se consule fastos*, *Lucan, v. 384. Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*, *Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20.* But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*, *Liv.* The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmilas naturæ accusatur*, *Sall. Jug. i.*

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat. Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently in the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, *He descending*. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at; in curiam, to desire to be admitted, Cic. equis Achilles, to wish for; labori ejus, to favour; amorem dictis, sc. ei, to infuse, Virg.*

DESPERARE sibi de se; salutem, salutem, de salute, *to despair of.*

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador; aliquem sibi, to make his lieutenant; pecuniam alicui, i. e. testamento relinquere N. B. Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur: unde allegati.*

DELEGARE res alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay; laborem alteri, to lay upon; aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in eum transferre, Cic.*

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, eum metu, *to ease.*

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, to exchange; vestem, i. e. sordidam togam induere, Liv. vestem cum aliquo, Ter. fidem, to break.*

OBNUNTIARE comitiis vel concilio, i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, *to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratui; i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat, Cic.*

PRONUNTIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise; aliquid edicto, to order; sententias, to sum up the opinions of the senators, Cic.*

RENUNTIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell; consulem, to declare, to name; vitæ amicitiam ei, to give up; muneri, hospito, to refuse; repudium, to divorce.*

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize; se in aliquo negotio, to be employed; se ad negotium, Plaut. pecuniam alicui, v. apud aliquem grandi sönore, to give at interest, Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, begins first, anticipates, Liv.*

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciciliæ, *to seize beforehand, Nep.*

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial, Cic.*

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose; hence UTI ROGAS, dicere, to pass it; militem sacramento, to administer the military oath; Roget quis? if any one should ask. Comitia rogandis consulibus, for electing, Liv.*

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part; multam, to take off a fine; imperium ei, to take from.*

ABROGARE id sibi, *to claim.*

DEROGARE aliquid legi v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, to hurt one's credit; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, to derogate or take from.*

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong; diem ei ad solvendum, to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute; legi, to add a new clause or to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards; aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome; montes, to pass; superat pars cæpti, sc. operis, remains; Caput superavimus urbi, survived, Virg.*

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate; orbem, to rule; mihi sibi, to restrain, to forbear; alicui, to spare; cædibus, a lacrymis, to obtain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from; animo, sc. in, to be at ease; philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, to apply to; vacat locus, is empty; si vacas v. vacat tibi, if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge; ab interitu, exercitum fame, to free; id sibi, & ad se, to claim; libertatem ejus, to defend; se in libertatem, to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die; animos, to encourage; manus, to yield; manum ei, to shake hands. Plaut. jura, to prescribe laws; literas alicui ad aliquem, to give one a letter to carry to another; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, to fly; hostes in fugam, to put to flight; operam, to endeavour; operam philosophiæ, literis palæstræ, to apply to; operam honoribus, to seek, Nep. veniam ei, to grant his request, Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c. cognitores honestos, to give good vouchers for one's character, Cic. aliquid mutuum, v. utendum, to lend; pecuniam sënori, & collocare, to place at interest; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, to think much of; se ad aliquid, to apply to; se auctoritati sënatus, to yield; fabulam, scripta foras, to publish, Cic. effectum, to perform; senatum, to give a hearing of the senate; actionem, to grant leave to prosecute; præcipitem, to tumble headlong; aliquid paternum, to act like one's father; lectos faciendos, to bespeak, Ter. litem secundum aliquem, to determine a law-suit in favour of one; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, rarely lethum alicui, to kill; aliquid alicui dono, v. muneri, to make a present; criminal, vitio, laudi, to accuse, blame, praise; penas, to suffer; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, to list one's self to be a soldier; se alicui, to be familiar with, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, be directed by me, Id.*

aures, to listen; oblivioni, to forget; civitatem ei, to make one free of the city; dicta, to speak; verba alicui, to impose on, to cheat; se in viam, to enter on a journey; viam ei, to give place; jus gratia, to sacrifice justice to interest; se turpiter, to make a shabby appearance; fundum vel domum alicui, mancipio, to convey the property of, to warrant the title to; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in questionem; to give up slaves to be tortured; primas, secundas, &c. (sc. partes) actioni, to ascribe every thing to delivery, Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, to let them blow loose, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis, tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solertem dabo, I'll warrant him expert, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, to side with, to be of the same party; iudicio ejus, to follow; in sententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, to stand to, to make good an agreement; re iudicata, to keep to what has been determined; stare, v. constare animo, to be in his senses: Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, it is not owing to me that, &c. multorum sanguine ea Pœnis victoria stetit, cost, Liv. Mihi stat alere morbum, desinere, I am resolved, Nep.

ADSTARE mensæ, to stand by; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, to consist of; secum, to be consistent with, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and

goes; auri ratio constat, the sum is right, Constat, impers. It is evident, certain, or agreed on; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, to be above, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, to remain, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

INSTARE victis, to press on the vanquished; rectam viam, to be in the right way; curram Marti, to make speedily, Virg. instat factum, insists that it was done, Ter.

OBSTARE ei, to hinder.

PRESTARE multa, to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv. impensas, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolumentem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, to show; culpam, v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; prestabo de me eum facturum, I will be answerable. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, In recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N.B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.

PRÆSTAT impers. i. e. it is better; Præsto ease alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri præstant venales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, to recline near; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spem, febrem, finem, bonum exitum, tempus; consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi; opus in manibus, v. inter manus, to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; iudicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter. fidem alicui, to trust or believe; curam de v. pro eo; rationem alicuius, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem, v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; aliquem odio, in odium, to hate; ludibrio, to mock; religioni, to have a scruple about it; So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene v. graviter, to be well or ill; se parè et duriter, to live, Ter. aliquid competentem, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum, v. pro certo, to know for certain; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, v. in despiciatui, to despise; excusatum, to excuse; susque deque, to scorn, to slight; Ut res se habet, stands, is; rebus ita se habentibus, in this state of affairs; Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, a form of divorce.

ADHIBERE diligentiam, celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, to use; in convivium v. consilium, to admit; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, to apply; vinum ægrotis, to give; aures versibus, to hear with taste; cultum & præces diis, to offer, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, to cause trouble.

JUBERE legem, to vote for, to pass; regem, to choose; aliquem salvere, to wish one health;

esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, divorced, Cic.

DOCEO te hac rem, & de hac re. Doctus, adj. utriusque lingvæ; ad Latinis & Græcis literis; Latine; & Græce; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re; sibi, de isthoc, to take care of, Ter. plus, to be more wise, Cic. De hoc tu videris, consider, be answerable for, Cic. Videor videre, methinks I see; visus sum audire, methought I heard; mihi visus est dicere, he seemed; Quid tibi videtur? What think you? Si tibi videtur, if you please; videtur fecisse, guilty, &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus; ei, vel eum, to envy.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, to foresee; ei, to provide for; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, to ride; toga bene sedet, fits; Sedet hoc animo, is fixed, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, to sit by, Sall. Assidet insano, is near or like to, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, to disagree.

INSIDERE equo, & in equo; to sit upon; locum, Liv. in animo, memoria, to be fixed.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, to command, Cic. exercitum; Italiam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugnæ, loqui, to forbear, to give over.

PENDERE promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, to

depend; de, ex, ab & in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, *Virg.*

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, *threatens.*

SPONDERE & despondere filiam alicui, to betroth.

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, to be sure of, *Cic. animo & -is, to promise, to hope; animum & -os, to despair, Liv.*

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, to answer; votis ejus, to satisfy his wishes; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace; legem, to speak in favour of.

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro, re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, to be in favour with one; lex valet, is in force; quid verbum valeat, non video, signifies; valet decem talenta, or oftener talentis, is worth; vale vel, valeas, farewell; or ironically, away with you.

EMINERE aliqua re, vel in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cætera, *Liv. super utrumque, Hor. to be eminent, to excel; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, to be above. Imminere* alicui, to hang over, to threaten; in occasionem, exitu alicujus, to seek, to watch for.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, sc. in, to keep; modum, ordinem, to observe; rem, dicta, lectionem, to understand, to remember; linguam, but not suam, silentium, se in silentio, to be silent; ora, to keep the countenance fixed; secundum locum imperii, to hold, *Nep. jura civium, to enjoy, Cic. causam, to gain; mare, to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of; terram, portum, metam, montes, to reach; risum, lachrymas, to restrain: se ab accusando, to get security on; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, I have got security by bail and bond; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, see you don't do it; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, I must take care.*

ASTINERE maledictis, v. a, to abstain; publico, to live retired, *Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, to keep from; jus belli ab aliquo,*

not to treat rigorously, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, concerns me; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Libet ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, for mei fratris est, belongs to; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinet, reach.

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulationis; to bear the character; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, to withhold assent; rem in noctem, to defer.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententiâ, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, to expect, *Liv. promissis, to stand to, to keep, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, awaits, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modò permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.*

MERERE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, to serve as a soldier; fastuarium, to be beaten to death.

HÆRERE lateri; tergis, v. in terga hostium, *Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, I am in doubt; Vide, ne hæreas, lest you be at a loss, Cic.*

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inherere rei; & in re.

MOVERE castra, to decamp; bella, to raise; aliquem tribu, to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe; e senatu, to degrade a senator; risum vel jocum alicui, to cause laughter; stomachum ei, to trouble, *Cic.*

FAVETE ore, vel linguis, sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen.

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, to guard against, to avoid; alicui, to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client; aliquid alicui, *Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per aliquem de re aliqua, to get security on; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, I have got security by bail and bond; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, see you don't do it; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, I must take care.*

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, *Suet. to wink; in hominum sceleribus, to take no notice of, Cic.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vite; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, to make; divortium cum uxore, *Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, to show, Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, to pretend, Cic. æs alienum, contrahere, v. confiare, to contract debt; animos, to encourage; dampnum, detrimentum, jacturam, to lose; naufragium, to suffer; sumptum, to spend; gratum alicui, to oblige; gratiam delicti, to pardon a fault; gratiam legis, to dispense with; justa vel funus alicui, to perform one's funeral rites; rem, to make an estate; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, v. inire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. to make a league; moram alicui, to delay; verba, to speak; audientiam sibi, *Cic. negotium, et facessere, to trouble; aliquid missum, to pass over: aliquem missum, to dismiss or excuse; ad aliquid, rarely alicui, to be fit or useful; ratum, to ratify; platum, to explain; palam suis, to make known, Nep. stipendium pedibus, v. equo, & merere, to serve in the army; sacra, sacrificium, v. rem divinam, to sacrifice;**

reum, to impeach; fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. to write a play, &c. copiam consilii ei, to offer advice; copiam vel potestatem dicendi legatis, to grant leave; fidem, to procure or give credit; periculum, to make trial; potestatem sui, to expose himself, Nep. aliquem loquentem, v. loqui, to suppose or represent, Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, to be a pirate; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. to be an usurer, a physician, &c. versuram, to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, to side with; contra v. adversum, to oppose; nomen, v. nomina, to borrow money; and also, to settle accounts; i. e. rationes acceptarum, sc. pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, to write it where something was before, Cic. pedem, v. pedes, to trim the sails, Virg. Fac ita esse, suppose it is so; obvius fieri alicui, to meet; ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam, not to be tedious; aqua non facit, will not move, Cic. Fac velle, sc. npe, suppose me to be willing, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, &

ignominia, pena, morte, leto, &c. *to praise, honour, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c.* Affectus state, morbo, weakened.

CONFICERE bellum, *to finish; orationes, to compose, Nep. cibum, to chew; argentum, to raise, to get; also to spend, Cic. cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus hostium, to destroy; alterum, Curiatum, to kill, Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, had served out their time, Cic.*

DEFICERE animo, *to faint; ab aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit mihi vel me, fails; Defici viribus, ratione, &c. to be deprived of.*

INFICERE se vitro, *to stain; Infectus, part. stained; infectus, adj. not done. Inficior, -atus, -ari, to deny.*

OFFICERE alicui, *to hinder or hurt; Diogeni apicanti, to stand betwixt him and the sun; auribus, visui, to stop or obstruct; Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.*

PREFICERE aliquem exercitui, *to set over. Proficere alicui, to profit, to do good; in philosophia, & progressus facere, to make progress.*

REFICERE muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, *to repair; animum, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, to refresh, to recover.*

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear; arma v. vires alicui, to afford; Valerius in locum Collatini substitutus est, was substituted, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, having their eyes red and inflamed, Virg.*

SATISFACERE alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to satisfy; fidei, promisso, to perform.*

JACERE aliquem in præcepis; contumelias in eum, *to throw; fundamenta, & ponere, to lay; talos, to play at dice; anchoram, to cast.*

ADJICERE, *to add; oculos alicui roi, to covet; animum studiis, to apply; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.*

CONJICERE se in pedes, v. fugam, *to fly; cætera, to conjecture.*

INJICERE manus ei, *to lay on; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, to inspire; admirationem sui cuius ipso aspectu, Nep.*

OBJICERE se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, *to expose or expose; crimen ei, to lay to one's charge.*

REJICERE tela in hostes, *to throw back; judices, mala, to reject; rem ad senatum, Romam, to refer; rem ad Idus Febr. to delay, Cic.*

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen; se imperio alicujus, to submit; testamenta, to forge; testes, to suborn; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanat, to put or class under; aliquid ei, to suggest; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare: odio hostium, to expose; bona Pompeii v. fortunæ haviæ vel voci & sub voce præconis, to expose to public sale, Cic. sub hasta venire, to be sold, Liv.*

TRAJICERE copias v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, *to transport; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, passed or sailed over. Trajectus ferro, pierced.*

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c. augurium, v. auspiciu, & agere, to take an omen; exemplum de aliquo: locum castris; terram, to alight; insulam, summam, sc. loca, to reach; spolia ex nobilitate, to gain, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, to receive or enjoy; virginem Vestalem, to choose; amentiam,*

spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain; aliquem, consilio, perfidia, to catch; nec te Troja capit, Virg. Aedes vix nos capiunt, the house hardly contains us. Altero oculo capitur, blind of one eye; capitur locis, he is delighted with, Virg.*

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive; Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, two copies of the same letter, Cic. clamorem de Socrate, to hear, id in bonam partem, to take in good part, to understand in a good sense: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum, ac, atque, Ter. rudem r. rude donari, to be discharged as a gladiator; aliquem bene, v. male, to treat; eum male acceptum in Midium hiematum coegit redire, roughly handled, Nep. rogationem, to approve the bill; nomen, i. e. ad pretendum admittere, to allow to stand candidale; omen, to esteem good; satisfactionem, v. excusationem, Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, popular.*

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, to bear enmity to one; aquam, to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct, Frontinus.*

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, *to entertain; fugientes, to catch; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem patērā, to keep or gather; notis, & scribere, to write in short hand; motus futuros, to perceive: Hos homines excipio, I except; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, succeeded; sic excepit regia Juno, replied, Virg.*

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin. Percipere fructus, to reap.*

PÆCIPERE futura, *to foresee; gaudia, spem victoria, to anticipate; pecuniam mutuum, to take before the time, Cæs. lac, to dry up, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, to order; artem ei, to teach.*

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive; urbem, to recover; eum tectis, to entertain; se v. pedem, to retreat; se domum, to return; se, mentem, animum, to come to one's self again; to recover spirits; in se, to take charge; alicui, to promise; se ad frugem, to amend; senem sessum, to give a seat to, Cic.*

RAPERE vel trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense; in jus, to bring before a judge; partes inter se, to share, Liv. Sub divum, to reveal, Horat.*

UO.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off; fidem, sacramentum, to break; mentem, to change, Virg. hostem castris, to beat from.*

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum: cæteros. Ter. apumas, *to drive or lose, Virg.*

LUERE penas capitis, *to suffer; æs alienum, to pay, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, to expiate, to atone, or suffer for.*

FLUERE amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually, Cic.*

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint; exemplum in hominem, vel-ne, to make one a public example; aliquem capite in terram, to set or place, Ter.*

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to settle; agmen paupers, to make, to stop or halt, Sall. in digitis, to count on one's fingers, Cic. urbem, to build, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, appointed, resolved, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam con-*

stituit, tollet eadem, *makes, constitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, *a good constitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, *to forsake*; spem, *to decide*; propositum, *to give over*, Ovid. deos pacta mercede, *to defraud*, Hor.

INSTITUTE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic. collegium fabrorum, *sacra, to institute, to found*, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ Græcis literis, *to instruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæs. sermonem, *to enter upon*, Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to settle*; antequam pro Murenâ dicere instituo, *I begin*, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, *qua actione illum uti oportet, to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*, Cic. tempus ei, *to determine*.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; oppida vicosque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatam, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, *pro altero, to substitute, or put in the place of*, Cic.

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare*; insidias, *men-dacium, to contrive*; odium, *crimen alicui, vel in aliquem, to raise against*.

BO.

SCRIBERE suâ manu, bene, *velociter*, epistolam alicui, *v. ad aliquem*; bellum, *v. de bello*; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v. e, to make free*.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italiæ, *pecuniam, populum ordinibus, to distribute, to divide*; vectigal civitatibus, *i. e. imperare*; jura, *i. e. dare v. constituere*; censores binos in singulas civitates, *i. e. facere*, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, *to correct a letter*; librum, *to entitle or name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, *actionem, to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis *v. ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot-soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join or take part in an accusation*; Cæsaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

CO.

DICERE aliquid, *v. de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad v. apud aliquem*; in aliquem, *against*; ad aliquid, *in answer to*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; jus, *to administer justice, to pronounce sentence*; multam ei, *to amerce or fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; causam, *to plead*; testimonium, *to give evidence*; non idem, *loqui est ac dicere, to horangue*, Cic. sacramento, *seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath*.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell*; servituti, *v. in servitutem, to sentence or adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service*; aves non addixerunt, *v. abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable*

amen; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, *to promise assistance*; cenam alicui, *v. ad cenam, to purpose supping with one without invitation*.

EDICERE alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædam militibus, *to promise by an edict*; justitium, *diem comitiis, vel comitia consulibus creandis, to appoint*.

INDICERE bellum, *justitium, to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cæsus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv. indicare, *to show*; Indictus, *an adj. not said*; causâ indictâ, *v. non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, *hæc non fiunt, not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui, aliquid *v. aliqua re*; feminis usum purpure, *to forbid or debar from*; ei aquâ & igne, *v. aquam et ignem, to banish*; male rem gerentibus, *bonis paternis interdicti solet, Cic. interdicti non poterat socero gener, discharged the company of, Nep.*

PRÆDICERE aliquid alicui, *de aliqua re, id in hac re, to foretel, to forewarn*.

DOCERE in carcerem *v. vincula, to lead*; exercitum, *to command*; spiritum, *animam, vitam, to breathe, to live*; fossam, *murum, sulcum, to make or draw*; bellum, *to prolong, also to carry on*, Virg. ætatem, *diem, to spend*; uxorem, *to take a wife*; in jus, *to summon before a judge*; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ære, *ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue*; genus, *nomen ab v. ex aliquo, to derive*; omnia pro nihilo, *infra se*; id laudi, *laudem, v. in laudem, (offener the first,) to reckon it a praise to him*; in conscientiam, *to impute to a consciousness of guilt*; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, *sc. aureas, vel fœsus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month, or at 12 per cent. per annum*; binis centesimis fœnerari, *to take 24 per cent. per annum*, Cic. docere, *longas voces in fletum, to draw out*, Virg. ordines, *to be a centurion*, Liv. illa, *to pant like a broken-winded horse*, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, arbitrium meum, *to bring to a trial*; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, *to draw in*; habenas, *to straiten the reins*.

CONDOCERE aliquem ex loco, *to convey*; navem, domum, coquos, *to hire*; columnam faciendam, *to engage to make at a certain price*; Conducit hoc tæx laudi, in *v. ad rem, is of advantage*.

DEDUCERE navem, *to launch*; chassem in prælium, *to bring*, Nep. equites, *to make to alight*, Liv. eum domum, *to accompany, to carry home*; de sententiâ, Cic. coloniam, *to transplant*; lacum, *to drain*.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, *to draw*; forem Italiæ, *to lead out*; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, *to educate, oftener educare*; in astra, *to elect*, Hor. cælo, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, *to bring on*, Cic. animum, *v. in animum, to persuade himself*; senta pedibus, *to cover*, Cæs. soleas pedibus, *v. in pedes, to put on*; colorem picturæ, *to varnish*, Plin. nomina, *to conceal or raise, to rub out*.

OBDOCERE exercitum, *to lead against*; callum dolori, *to blunt it*; sepulchrum sentibus, *to cover*.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, *vel alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance*; in gratiam cum aliquo, *to reconcile*. Vallis reducta, *retired or low*.

PRODUCERE testes, *to bring out*; amus, *to*

attend; sermonem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue*; rem in hiemem, *to defer*; servos vendendos, *to bring to market*.

SUBDUCERE se a custodibus, *to steal away*; naves, *to draw up on shore*; cibum ei & deducere, *to take from*; summam, rationes, *to reckon, to cast up accounts*.

PARCERE sibi, labore, *to spare, &c.* a cædibus, *to forbear*; aurum natis, *Virg.*

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, v. re aliqua, in v. ad hoc, *to be accustomed*; mentem, pluribus & assuescere, *Hor.* Animis bella, *Virg. to accustom*. So, inanes rei v. re; insuevit hoc me pater, *Hor.*

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree*; henc plebiscitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to assume*; socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, *to associate*; ritus peregrinos, *to adopt*.

CONSCISCERE mortem v. necem sibi, *to kill one's self*; fugam sibi, *to flee, Liv.*

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, v. apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, or without ex: Dediscere, *to forget what he hath learned*; Ediscere, *to get by heart*.

DESCENDERE de palatio, presidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to, Cic.*

DO.

LUDERE aleâ, v. -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to lose one's labour*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias, -iis, vel ex, *to escape*; in muro, *to mount*: Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*; clarus evasit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, *Cic.* Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum*; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, *to give place*; viâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*: Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proberbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiæ, v. ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*; Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, *Cic.* Animi accessere hosti, *Liv.* Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, *Nep.* Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, ed, *accedit quod, is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitæ, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come into one's measures*; in conditiones, *to agree to, Liv.*

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the least*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, v. murum, *ad urbem*; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast*; in v. sub sensum,

L

oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, *Cic.* Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, *Ter.*

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus v. ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies, Ter.*

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, eursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cælum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*: Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries, Virg.*

ATTENDO te, *Cic.* tibi, *Plin.* de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, *Sall.*

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se; amoris, poet. for cum amore, *to strive*; causas, sc. inter se, *to compare, Cic.* Aliquid ad aliquem, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to understand*; rem pluribus & luculentioribus verbis, *to express*; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, *to gain*; rem fictam, *to discover*.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, *to apply*: Intendi animo in rem, *Liv.* Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem, v. litem alicui v. in aliquem, alio impingere, *to raise a law suit against one*; telum ei, v. in eam, *to shoot at*; inanus v. digitum in aliquem, *to point at*; aliquo, sc. ire, *to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required, Sall.*

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, *to cover, to veil*.

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*; pœnas, *to suffer*; id parvi, *to value it little*.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, *to hang*; expectatione, vel suspensum detinere, *to keep in suspense*; ædificium, *to arch a house*; naso adunco, *to sneer at, Horat.*

ABDERE se literis, in literas, *to hide or shut up one's self among books*; se domum, rus, &c. domo, *Virg.* in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, *to build*; fructus, *to lay up*; in carcerem, *to imprison*; carmen, *to compose*; lumina, *to close, Ov.* Jura, *to establish*; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, *to bury*.

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, *to surrender*: Deditus præceptoris, & studiis, *fond of*; vino epulisque, *engaged in, Nep.* dedita operâ, *on purpose*.

EDERE librum, & in lucem, *to publish*; ovum, *to lay*; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, *to sound, sing, &c.* munus gladiatorum, *to exhibit a show of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; fœtus, *to bring forth*; extremum spiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatû in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture*.

OBDERE pessulum foribus, *to bolt the door*.

PRORDERE arcem hostibus, *to betray*; aliquem posteris, v. memoriæ, *to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interregem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*; Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity, Liv.*

REDDERE animum, se sibi, *to revive*; animam v. vitam, *to die*; Latine, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, i. e. referre, *to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver*.

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage*.

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham,

to lend on bond or bill; rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo, si, &c. I suppose, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, to pour out; hostes, to rout.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, to produce; ærarium, to spend; odium, i. e. dimittere, to drop; gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, to tell.

GO.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ; equos currui; amnem ponte, to make a bridge.

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, to build an addition to one's house; animum ad studia, to apply.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ense, to draw; frondes, to lop off; glandes, baccas, to beat down; rem, to waste one's fortune, Hor. litus, to touch, to brush or graze upon, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, to hit the nail on the head.

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, to reach; res, summas, to mention, Nep. Aliquem cognitione, affinitate, to be related to; forum, to reach manhood, Cic. Res non te attingit, concerns.

FINGERE orationem, to polish; oratorem, to form; se ad arbitrium alterius, to adopt: Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, to break; navem, to suffer shipwreck; fœdus, fidem, to violate; sententiam ejus, to refuse, Cic. hostem, to subdue.

AGERE gratias, to give thanks; vitam, to live; prædas, to plunder; fabulam, to act a play; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, to triumph; nugas, to trifle; ambages, to beat about the bush; stationem, custodiam urbis, to be on guard; rimas, to chink, to leak, to be rent; causam, to plead; de re, to speak; radices, to take root; cuniculos, to undermine; undam, to raise a steam; animam, to be at the last gasp; alias res, to be inattentive; festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. to keep, to observe; actum, v. rem actum, to labour in vain; census, & habere, to make a review of the people, their estates, &c. forum, to hold a court to try causes; lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, to go to law with one; hence actor, a plaintiff; in hereditatem, to claim; cum populo, to treat with, to lay before; decimum agit annum, he is ten years old; id agitur, that is the question; libertas agitur, v. de libertate, is at stake; actum est de libertate, is lost; actum est illicet, all is over; actum est de pace, was treated about; cum illo bene actum est, he has been lucky or well used; hoc age, mind what you are about: Civitas læta agere, for erat, Sall.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad v. in jusjurandum, in sua verba, per jusjurandum, to force to enlist; arbitrium, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrium, to force to submit to an arbitration, Cic.

COGERE copias, to bring together; ad militiam, to force to enlist; senatum, to assemble; in senatum, sc. minis pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend; agmen, to rally, to bring up; lac, to curdle; jus civile diffusum & diffusum, in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange.

EXIGERE foras, to drive out, to divorce; aliquid ab aliquo, to require; sarta tecta, sc. et, i. e. sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good repair, Cic. supplicium de aliquo, to inflict; sua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts; ævum, vitam,

annos, to spend; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine; columnam ad perpendicularum, to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight; monumentum, to finish, Hor. tempus & modum, to settle. Virg. comœdiam, to disapprove, to hiss off, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raise money; hostes sub imperium, to reduce.

LEGERE oram, litus, to coast along; vela, to furl the sails; halitum, to catch one's breath; milites, to enlist; aliquem in senatum, in Patres, to choose; sacra, to steal, to commit sacrilege, Hor.

HO.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bellum, to prolong; purpuras, to spin; aliquid in religionem, to scruple; navem remulco, to tow.

DETRAHERE aliquem, to draw down; alicui vel de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to lessen one's fame; aliquid alicui, to take by force; laudem, v. de laudibus: novem partes multæ, to take from the fine, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, to spin out, to spend; certamen, bellum, judicium, to prolong.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, in vectus curru, quadrigis, &c. riding in a chariot; invehi in portum ex alto, to enter; in aliquem, to inveigh against; provehi longius, to proceed too far.

LO.

CONSULERE rem, v. de re, to consult about; eum, to ask his advice; ei, to consult for his good; de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, to pass a severe sentence against; in commune, publicum, medium, to provide for the common good; verba boni, to take in good part; ego consulor, my advice is asked; mihi consulitur, my good is consulted; mihi consultum ac provium est, for a me, I have taken care, Cic.

APPELLERE classem in Italian, vel classem, to land on; se aliquo, Ter. ad villam nostram navis appelletur, Cic. animum ad philosophiam, to apply.

ANTECELLERE ei, rarely eum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, to excel.

TOLLERE animos suos, to take courage, animos alicui, to encourage; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, to extol; inducias, to break a truce; clamores, to cry; filium, to educate; de vel e medio, to kill.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, to divorce; annulum v. equum equiti, to take away from, a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade.

DIRIMERE litem, controversiam, to determine.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, noxæ e vinculis, a culpa, de numero proscriptorum, obsidione, to free; de dolio, to draw out; diem dicendo, to waste in speaking.

INTERIMERE se, to kill.

REDIMERE captivos, to ransom; pecuaria de censoribus, to take or form the public pastures.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex, v. de eo, to take; poenas, supplicium de aliquo, to punish; pecunias mutuas, to borrow; togam virilem, to put on the dress of a man; sibi inimicitias, to get ill will; operam in re, vel in rem insumere, to bestow pains; sumo tantum, vel hoc mihi, I take this upon me.

PREMERE caseum, to make cheese; vocem, to be silent; dolorem corde, to conceal; vestigia

ejus, to follow; litus, to come near; pollicem, to save a gladiator; librum in nonum annum, to delay publishing, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, *to press out; risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, to force from; effigiem, to draw to the life; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. to translate word for word.*

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, *in animo, v. in animo, to imprint.*

REPRIMERE se, & reprehendere *v. retinere, to check.*

NO.

PONERE spem in homine *v. re, & habere; castra, to pitch; vitem, to plant; vitam, to die; ova, to lay; insidias alicui; panem convivis, not ante; personam amici, to lay aside the character of a friend; præmia, to propose; pocula, to stake or lay; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, to employ, to bestow; aliquid in laude, in vitis, in loco beneficii, to reckon; ferocia corda, to lay aside; aliquid in gratiam *v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic. ventos, to calm; hominem coloribus, saxo, to paint, engrave, Hor. pecuniam in fenore, to lay out at interest; templa, to build, Virg. Venti possuere, are hushed, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.**

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. *to compose; lites, to settle; bellum, to finish by treaty; parva magnis, dicta cum facili, to compare; manus manibus, to join, Virg.*

DEPONERE *v. ponere togam prætextam, to lay aside the dress of a boy; imperium & æmittere, to lay down a command.*

EXPONERE rem, *to set forth or explain; frumentum, to expose to sale, Cic. pueros, fœtus, to leave to perish, Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, to land.*

IMPONERE onus alicui *v. in aliquem; aliquid in equum, to set upon; personam *v. partes* duiores ei, to lay a task or duty on one; alicui, to impose on to deceive, Nep. honorem ei, to confer; addimonium ei, to force to give bail, Nep. manum summam *v. extremam* rei alicui, in aliqua re, to finish; pontem flumini, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to insert, Nep.*

OPPONERE se periculis & ad pericula, *to expose; pignori, to pledge; manum fronti, ante oculos, to put, Ovid.*

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose, to set before; edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda effigere; congiarium, to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money.*

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen; testamentum, v. subicere, to forge.*

CANERE aliquid, *to praise; signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle; receptui, rarely um, to sound a retreat; tibia, to play on the pipe; ad tibia, to sing to it; palinodiam, to utter a recantation.*

STERNERE lectos, *to spread or cover the couches; equos, to harness; viam, to pave; æquora, to calm, Virg.*

PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear; somnos, quietem, to sleep; viam, iter, to go, Virg. opera alterius, to censure; labores, virtutes, to diminish or obscure, Hor.*

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, *to violate; vocem *v. silentium*, to speak, Virg.*

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. *se portis, to break out; stomachum in aliquem, to vent passion; nubem, to break, Virg.*

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam, gratiam sibi, *to seek or gain, Cic. sermonem, to beat about for conversation, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, to make a fortune by merchandise; ex aliquo, & in aliquem, de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack; in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.*

INQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after; aliquid capitæ, v. -te, to accuse or try for a capital crime.*

GERERE res, *to perform; negotium male, to manage; consulatum, to bear, to manage; se bene vel male, to behave; exercitum, to conduct, Sallust. morem ei, vel morigerari, to humour; civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, to pass for, to bear the character of; inimicitias vel simultatem cum aliquo, to be at enmity or variance with.*

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against.*

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, *to suggest, to hint; sumptus his rebus, to supply or afford; Horatium Bruto, to choose in place of, to put after, Liv.*

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations.*

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, *to engage.*

ASSERERE aliquid, *to affirm; aliquid manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, to free; in servitutum, to reduce; divinam majestatem, to claim.*

TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui, id ab eo, *rarely eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. to ask; urbem Romam, murum, montes, to go to, to make for; aliquid sagittâ, lapide, to aim at; consulatum pœnas ab aliquo, repetere, to punish.*

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses; in eum competit actio, an action lies against him, Cic.*

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution; bona lege, *v. prosequi* lite, to recover by law; castra, oppidum, huc, to return to; aliquid memoriâ, to call to mind; altè, to trace from the beginning. Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, I have; si vita suppetit, if life shall remain, Cic.*

MITTERE alicui, *v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, to send the people to vote; aulæum, mappam, to drop the curtain; talos, to throw the dice; senatum, to dismiss; timorem, to lay aside; in acta, to register, to record; sanguinem, vel emittere, to let blood; noxam, to forgive; signa timoris, to show; vocem, to utter, to speak; habenas, v. remittere, to slacken; manu, et emittere, to free a slave; filium, emancipare, to free a son from the power of his father; sub jugum, to make to pass under the yoke; inferias manibus diis, to sacrifice to the infernal gods; rem, *v. de re, to omit; mitto rem, I say nothing of fortune, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, to give the possession of the debtor's effects; misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquid ad orandum, Ter.**

AMITTERE litem, *v. causam; vitam, sedem, lumina, aspectum, to lose, Cic.*

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit; equum immittere, & permittere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admisserunt, have not given a favourable omen, Liv.*

COMMITTERE facinus, *to commit; se alicui, v. in fidem alicujus, to entrust; prælium, to engage; exercitum pugnæ, rem in casum ancipitis eventûs prælii, to risk a battle; Liv. iv. 27. aliquid cum*

aliquo, homines inter se, *to set at variance or by the ears*; rem eo, *to bring that to pass*; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, *to match or pair*; committere, ut, *to cause*; incommoda sua legibus & iudiciis, *to seek redress by law*.

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromise or agreement, &c.*

DIMITTERE exercitum, *to disband*; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium v. repudium ad eam remittere, *to divorce*.

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promise*; capillum, barbam, *to let grow*, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow*; divis cætera, *to leave*, Horat. se in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, *to let the people decide*; tribunatum vexandis consulis, *to give up, to employ*, Liv.

REMITTERE animum, *to ease*; calces, tela, *to throw back*; ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. *to abate*; debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive*; justitium, *to discontinue*; pugnam, *to slacken*; remittit explorare, neglectis, Sallust.

SUBMITTERE fasces populo, *to lower*; se v. animum, *to submit, to humble*; percussores alicui, *to suborn assassins*.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. *to pass over*.

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight*; terga, *to fly*; ab imo, *to overthrow*; solum, *to go into banishment*; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in crimen, *to blame*; in superbiam, *to impute*; Platonem, Latinè Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, *to translate*; pollicem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb*; terram, *to plough*; crateram, *to empty*, Virg. Stilum, *to correct*, Horat. Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, *depends*; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, *prosper*.

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe*; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to punish*.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg. oras, *to arrive at*; aures, mentes, animum v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to*; in aliquem, *often animadvertere, to punish*.

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before*; damnationem veneno, *to prevent*; rem rei, *to prefer*, Plant.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embesle, to cheat*; candelabrum, *to steal, to pilfer*; promissum & receptum, sc. Doblbellâ consulatum intervertit, ad seque transtulit, *treacherously withheld*, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep: ventos cursu, *to outstrip*; destituerum plebis, *to prevent*; metum supplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial*; nec sisti posse, *nor could the state be saved*, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by*; ad fores; contra, *super eum*.

CONISTERE in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe*; in anchoris, ad anchoram, *to ride at anchor*; frigore, *to be frozen*, Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, *depended on*; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon*; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in dolis, negotium, *to insist upon, to urge*, Plaut.

OBISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose*.

RESISTERE ei, *to resist*.

SUBISTERE, *to stand still*; sumptui, *to bear*. VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; versurâ, *to pay a debt by borrowing from another*, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise, or according to others, to perform*, Ter. And. IV. 1. 19. litem æstimatam, *to pay the fine imposed on him*, Nep. Votum, *to discharge*; obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege*; navem e portu, *to set sail*; epistolam, v. resignare, *to break open*; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, *to free from*; solvit in somnos, Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non stricta & devicta, *prose*; solve metus, dissimulatio, Virg.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, v. ora, *to break silence*, Virg. jura, *to violate*; vectigal, *to take off taxes*, Tacit. In pulverem, *to reduce to*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex v. ab aliquo, *to hear from one*; de aliquo, *about one*, also *from one*, as, sæpe hoc audivi de patre, *for ex patre*, Cic. Audire bene v. malè apud socios, ab omnibus, *to be well spoken of, to have a good character*; rexque paterque audisti, *have been called*, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspitionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law*, Liv. in circulum, *into a company*, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate*; ei usu venit, *happened*, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribito, occurs, Cic.

ADVENERE & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to*.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, et antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia et itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to*; ego et frater conveniemus, copie

convenient, *will meet together*; convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, *I and my brother are agreed*; sævis inter se convenit uris, Juv. Ipsi secum non convenit, vel ipse, *he is inconsistent*; pax convenit, vel conventa est, *is agreed upon*; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcet pedibus v. ad pedes conveniunt, *fit, suit*; hoc in illum convenit. Catilinam interficere esse convenit, *ought to have been slain*, Cic. Convenire in manum, *the usual form of marriage, named Coemptio, whereby women were called matres-familias*.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; bene vel malè de eo, *to think well or ill of him*.

CONSENTIRE tibi tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de v. in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree*; So dissentire; et ab aliquo, *to disagree*; ne vita orationi dissentiat, Senec.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly*; se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has*; indicium, *to promise to make a discovery*.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se, *sometimes alicui, ad v. apud aliquem*; aliquid, *de aliqua re*.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Assequi, consequi, *to overtake*; gloriam, *to attain*. Consequi hæreditatem, *to get*, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus consilio, *eo, to depend on*; ad gloriam, *ad v. in summa, to aim at*; in vetitum, *in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, to strive*; gradibus, *to ascend*.

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adversis, *to have have cross winds*; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v. -no -re*; ejus opinionis, *v. ea opinione*; in maxima spe: in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, *in vel cum imperio*; magno periculo, *v. in periculo*; in tuto; apud se, *in his senses*; sui juris, *v. mancipii, sui potens, v. in sua potestate, to be at his own disposal*: Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, *sc. mihi, I have a mind*, Virg. Est ut, cur, quomobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause; bene, male est mihi, with me*; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*: Quid est tibi, *sc. rei, What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see*; religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it*; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admiserit, &c. *for si velit, &c.* Ter. Est ut viro viri latius ordinet arbusta sulcis, *i happens*, Hor. Certum est facere, *sc. mihi, I am resolved*, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Cassius querere solebat, Cui BONO FUERIT: Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

ADDESSE pugne, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, *in tempore, cum aliquo, to be present*; alicui, *eo favour, to assist*; scribendo, *v. esse ad scriben dum, to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate*, Cic. consilio utrique, *to be a counsellor to*, Nep.

ABESSE sse domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, *to be absent = alicui, v. deesse, to be wanting, not to assist*; a sole, *to stand out of the sun*; sumptus-funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*, Liv. Abesse a persona principis, *to be inconsistent with the character*, Nep. Paulum *v. parum absuit* quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being, &c.* Cic. Tantum absuit a cupiditate pecunie, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, *v. in convivio, to be at a feast*; anni decem interfuerent, *intervened*; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus, & pater interest id. Inter hominem & bellum hoc interest, Cic. differ in this, *this is the difference*; multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance*. Pons inter eos interest, *is between*, Cic.

PREESSE exercitui, *to command*; comitiis, judicio, questioni, *to preside in or at*.

OBESSE ei, *to hurt, to hinder*.

SUPPRESSE, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to survive*; modò vita supersit, *sc. mihi, if I live*; super est, ut, *it remains, that*.

IRE ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war*; in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam *v. viâ*; res bepe eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis it, *passes*.

ABIRE magistratu, *to lay down an office*; a conspectu, *to retire from company*; in ora ho-

minum, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain*; decem menses abierunt, *have past*, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, *i. e. non feres hoc impune*, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation*.

ADIRE periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life*.

EXIRE vitâ, *e. v. de vita, to die*; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, *Id. tela, to avoid*, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Veienti populo exierat, *had expired*, Liv.

INIRE magistratum; suffragium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin*; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo, *to gain his favour*: Ineunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of*; but we seldom say, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years*.

OBIRE diem edicti, vel auctionis; judicium, v. dimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through*, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform*; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum *v. diem, to die*.

PREIRE alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, *to repeat or read over before*; alicui voce, quid judicet, *to prescribe or direct by crying, Cic.*

PRODIRE in publicum, *to go abroad*; non præterit te, *you are not ignorant*, Cic. Dies induciarum præterit, *is past*, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again*; ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses*.

SUBIRE muram, vel -o, ad montes, *to come up to*; laborem vel -i, onus, penam, periculum, crimen, *to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into*.

VELLE aliquem, *sc. alloqui vel conventum, to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causa, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny*, Liv. Quid sibi vult; What does he mean? Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri: si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again*, Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nollem huc exitum, *sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here*, Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose or make*; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tributum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*;

repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiā de re, *to rejoice*; prae se, *to pretend or declare openly*; alienam personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter. manus, in prælia, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent*, as Dr. and Cr. Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires*.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in vel erga aliquem, *to shew*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer*, *to lay*; operam, tempus, studium, ad vel in rem, & impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together*, *to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in, vel ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, *to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quinct.

DIFFERE situlam vel sitellam, *to bring the ballot box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula rei publicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*; in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu, nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas, sc. partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERE vel transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funere, &

cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad cœlum laudibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, se, pedem, *to advance*; litem vel periculum capitis alicui, vel in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PERFERRE legem, *to carry through, to pass it*.

PREFERRE faciem ei, *to carry before*; salutem ei reipublicæ suis commodis, & anteferre, antepondere, *to prefer*. Prælatum equo, *riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, pomerium, terminos, *to enlarge*; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish*; nuptias diem, *to delay*; diem Illo, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se, gradum v. pedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, vel ex aliquo, et reportare, *to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; judicium ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging*; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted*; pecunias acceptas & expensas; nomina vel summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in v. inter ærararios, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in vel inter deos, & reponere, *to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resemble*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books, state accounts*; in Latinam linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum & rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbâton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

1. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. homines: *Dic mihi, Damata, cujum pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damata, (eum hominem) cujum pecus*; (est hoc pecus.) *Aberant bidui*, sc. iter vel itinere. *Decies sestertium*, sc. centena millia. *Quid multa?* sc. dicam. *Antiquum obtines*, sc. morem, v. institutum, Plaut. *Hodie in ludum occipi ire literarium, ternas jam scio*, sc. literas, i. e. AMO, Id. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. literas, i. e. epistolam, Cic. *Brevi dicam sc. sermone*: So *Complecti, respondere*, &c. breve. *Dû meliora, sc. faciant*: *Rhodum vult, inde Athenas*, sc. ire, Id. *Bellicum, v. classicum canere*, sc. signum, Liv. *Civicâ donatus*, sc. coronâ; So *obsidionalem, murem adeptus*, &c. Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. scripta, Cic.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called *ASYNDËTON*; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. et; *Sartum tectum, conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum*; So *Abit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. *Ferte citi flammas, date vela, impellite remos*, Virg. *Velis nolis*, sc. seu.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are

called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of ENALLÄGE, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; ANTIPTŌSIS, i. e. the putting of one case for another; HELLENISM or GRÆCISM, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; SYNĒSIS, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is, *Duo millia* (hominum) *Samnitium* (fuerunt homines) *cæsi*, Liv. So *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrum quæ*, scil. mulier, Hor. *Scelus qui*, sc. homo, Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. secundum, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque legati*; i. e. *Missi legati* (et) *uterque* (legatus missus) *de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat ejus*, scil. servitii, Sall. Cat. 51. *Familia nostra*, quorum, &c. sc. hominum, Sall. *Concursus populi*, mirantium, Liv. *Illum ut vivat optant*, for ut ille vivat, Ter. *Populum late regem*, for regnantem, Virg. *Expediti militum*, for milites; *Classis stabat Rhegii*, for ad Rhegium, Liv. *Latium Capuaque agro multati*, sc. homines, Id. *Utraque formosæ*, sc. mulieres, Ovid. *Aperite aliquis ostium*, Ter. *Sensit delapsus*, for *delapsus*, sc. se esse, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est*; *adest præsens*: *Nusquam gentium*; *vivere vitam*; *servire servitutem*; *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* *Fac me ut sciam*, &c. *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Ter. *Suo sibi succo vivant*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRAISIS; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatem*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura*; *Genus piscium*, for *pisces*; *Flores rosarum*, for *rosæ*, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anastrôphe*, *Hystêron protêron*, *Hypalläge*, *Synchêsis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthêsis*.

1. ANASTRÔPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra*; *His accensa super*; *Spemque metumque inter dubii*; for *contra Italiam*, *super his*, *inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are*, for *arefacit*, Lucret.

2. HYSTÊRON PROTÊRON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. HYPALLÄGE is the exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. SYNCHÊSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras*; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes*, sc. oro vos per liberos, &c. Sallust. Jug. 14.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter. *Quem sors dierum cunque dabit*, Iucro Appone, Horat.

6. PARENTHÊSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo*, (brevis est via,) *pasce capellas*, Virg.

III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English, we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin, gives it a great advantage over the English; not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is practice only that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis preceptisque latabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but will be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*, 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipsi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi*: 3. *sed (tu persuade tibi ipsi te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio)*, 4. *si (tu) latabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et (si tu latabere talibus) preceptis*.

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me; 3. but (assure you yourself that you) will be (a son) much dearer (to me) 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur*, &c. thus,

Vale, scil. tu; Fare (thou) well, Second person singular of the imperative mood, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valere, valui, valitum, valere*, to be in health; of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the second rule of syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, Voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 1. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -ni*, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 28. We turn *que* into *et* because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade scil. tu, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persuadeo, -si, sum, dēre*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo, -si, -sum*, to

advise, used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say, however, in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 83.
Te accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 42.

Esse, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be.

Quidem, indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, -a, -um, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -a, -um, dear; Comparative degree, *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 1. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 13.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, -res, -ret, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 42. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 28.

Multo, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 5. Rule 20. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorum, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -or, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before, agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 1. or Rule 5.

Si, if, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60.

Lætari, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætor*, *lætatus*, *lætari*, to rejoice: Future, *lætabor*, *abëris* or *abëre*, *abitur*, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talie*, *tali*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -ti, neut. a monument or writing, of the second declension; derived from *monëo*, -ui, -itum, -ëre, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 52. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -ti, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -cëpi, -ceptum, -cipere, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capio*, -cëpi, -capitum, -capere, to take. The *s* of the simple is changed into *t* short; thus, *præcipio*, *præceptis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Ciceronis*. With Cicero? *Cicerone*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariorum filiorum*, &c.

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you? *te*: Of you? *Vestrum* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadetur*, or *persuadum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*. That he will be persuaded? *Ei persuasum iri*, &c.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made further progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*generæ dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*;) the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*;) and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*.)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity and Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate, and feeble sentence*: 3. *Harmony*, or musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names:

1. A **BARBARISM** is when a foreign or strange word is made use of; as, *croftus*, for *agellus*; *rigorososus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *stani*, for *steti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A **SOLECISM** is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An **IDIOTISM** is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribère*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. **TAUTOLOGY** is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. **BOMBAST** is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLOGY** is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum*), and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum*.) The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. **METAPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard heart*; a *soft temper*; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful crop*; *ridet ager*, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning or spring time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resem-

blance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book 1. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

AN ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs*, *Proverbia* vel *Adagia*; thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far-fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrêsis*, (*abusio*;) as, *a leaf of paper, of gold, &c. the empire flourished*; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir gregi ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis*, (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galatæa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. *Ego Sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:—1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor, for the thing invented; or the author for his works; as, *Bom labores*, for *corn*; *Mars*, for *war*; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for *grain*, or *bread*; *Bacchus*, for *wine*; *Venus*, for *love*; *Vulcanus*, for *fire*; thus, *Sine Cerere, et Baccho, friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a *general* is put for his *army*, *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their *works*; *Moses* and the *Prophets* for their *books*; a beautiful *Raphael*, *Titian*, *Guido*, *Rheni*, *Rembrant*, *Reubens*, *Vandyke*, &c. for their *pictures*.—2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, *Pale death*, because it makes pale; *atra cura*, &c.—3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *drink*: *Secundam mensam servis dispertiit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani*; *Europe*, for the *Europeans*; *Heaven*, for the *Supreme Being*; *Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa*; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum*; *Incolumi Jove*, for *Capitolio*; *Janus*, for the *temple of Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalëgon*, for *domus Ucalegontis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for his *ship*, Id. *Æn.* v. 272.—4. The sign for the thing signified; as, *The crown*, for *royal authority*; *palma* or *laurus*, for *victory*; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as *Cicero* himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv.* v. 1. 82.—5. An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus*, for *sceleratus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi*; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles*; *juventus*, for *juvenes*; *vicinia*, for *vicini*; *vires*, for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid. *Fast.* i. 560.—6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor*, *vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart*; *a warm heart*; *a sound head*, &c. So, *to have a well hung tongue*, for *to speak with ease*, &c.

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead*, *lost*, or *absent*: So *Fuimus Troes, et ingens gloria Dardani*, i. e. *are no more*, Virg. *Æn.* ii. 325.

3. SYNECDOCHE (*comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as, 1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*; *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ, Xanthumque bibissent, for partem pabuli, et fluminis Xanthi*, Virg. *Nat uncta carina, for navis*: *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships; *tectum*, the roof, for the

whole house; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines*; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, Horat. Sat. i. 1. 114; the door, or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, Virg. *Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c. 2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *millies*, a thousand times, for many times. 3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass trumpets, arms, &c. *ferrum*, for a sword; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, Virg.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia*, (*pronominatio*;) as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon*; *Astu*, for *Athens*; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal*; *Nero*, for a cruel prince; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning; as, *Sint Mæcenates, non deerunt, Flacce, Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poetæ*. Martial. viii. 56, 5.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis*; as, *Pelöpis parens*, for *Tantalus*; *Anñti reus*, for *Socrates*; *Trojani belli scriptor*, for *Homer*; *Chironis Alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodāni*, for *Gallus*; *Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, Horat. &c. or by a patronymic noun; as, *Anchisiades*, for *Æneas*; *Tyndāris, -idis*, for *Helēna*, &c.—or by an epithet; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, Virg.—sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatalis et incestus iudex, famosus hospēs*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil*; or of a profligate person, *Tertius a Cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a *SARCASM*; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre, Justin. Italiam metire jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called *LITOTES*; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense*; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis* or *superba*; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called *Antiphrasis*; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called *EUPHEMISMUS*; as, *Vitā functus*, for *mortuus*; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant*; *mactare*, or *ferire*, for *occidere*; *Fecerunt id servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The *PERIPHRAISIS*, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent; and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notā Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same verb is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called *ANAPHORA*; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum prædium palatii, nihil urbis vigilia, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in litore secum, Te veniente dic, te descendente canebat, Virg.*

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called *EPISTROPHE*, or *conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicil, armis vicil, liberalitate vicil, Cic.* Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called *SYMPLOCE*, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus, Cic.*

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called *EPANALEPSIS*; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuam in urbe non vidimus, Cic. pro Marcello.*

The reverse of the former is called *ANADAPLOSIS*, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imò in senatum venit, Cic.*

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called *EPANODOS*, or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer impròbus ille? Impròbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater, Virg.*

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called *EPIZEUXIS*; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis, Cic. Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c. Id. Me, me, adam qui feci, in me convertite ferrum, Virg. Bella, horrida bella, Id. Ibimus, ibimus, Hor.*

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called *CLIMAX*, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria emulos comparavit, Cic.*

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called *POLYPTOTON*; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas, Cic. Littora litioribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecor, arma armis, Virg.* To this is usually referred what is called *SYNONYMIA*, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam, Cic. Promitto, recipio, spondeo, Id. And also EXPOLITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.*

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called *ANTANACLASIS*; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid inuit amari, Cic.* But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the *PARONOMASIA*, or *Agnomination*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo et parvo; De oratore arator factus, Cic. Amantes sunt amantes, Ter. This is also called a PUN.*

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called *HOMOIOTOTON*, i. e. *similiter cadens*; as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfuit opibus, abundat amicis, Cic.* If the words have only a similar termination, it is called *HOMOIOTELEUTON*, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, et vivere turpiter, Cic.*

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbòle*, *Prosopopœia*, *Apostrophè*, *Simile*, *Antithèsis*, &c.

1. *HYPERBÒLE* is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphémus*, says, *Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat sidera.* So *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt, Hor.* When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinòsus*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. *PROSOPOPŒIA*, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit, &c. Cic. Virtus sumit aut ponit secures, Hor. Arbore nunc aquas culpante, Id.*

3. *APOSTROPHE*, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it; as, *Trojaque nunc stares, Priamique arx alta maneres, Virg.*

4. *SIMILE*, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion.*

5. *ANTITHESIS*, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ, Cato, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. Ex hac parte pudor pugnât, illinc petulantia,*

&c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumöron*, i. e. *acutè dictum*; as, *Amici absentes adsunt*, &c. Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Num capti potuerè capi*, Virg.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Ērotēsis*,) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*, Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minimè*, Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION, (*Ecphonēsis*,) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis!* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divum domus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*,) when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Videre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos*, Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence; as, *Hannibal, peto pacem*, Liv. *Proh! Jupiter ibit hic!* Virg.

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habere me? imò habui*, Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMESIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

———*Faces in castra tulissem,
Implessemque foros flammis, natumque, patrumque
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg.

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincere civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called *Auxēsis*, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION (*metabasis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a change of person is sometimes used; as, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. SUSPENSIO, or *Sustentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. CONCESSIO is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus*, &c. *at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. PROLEPSIS, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. ANACONOSIS, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*. LICENTIA, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quàm non reformidem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario. APOSIOPESIS, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. SENTENTIA, (*gnome*,) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adeo in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur & alget; Misera est magni, custodia census; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*, Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof,

and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue* or *Conclusion*.

THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of verse, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common*; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*; and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*; that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*; *relēgo*, *-ēre*; *relēgo*, *-āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as,

Mēus cālūs: so *nihil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crēate*, *bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fīēri*, *fīērēm*; thus,

Omnia jam fient, fīeri quæ posse negabam. Ovid.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āet*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7*.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genitive is always long, as being contracted for *alius*; *alterius*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short: as, *Danæ*, *Idæa*, *Sophia*, *Symphonia*, *Simōis*, *Hjades*, *Phæon*, *Deucalion*, *Pygmalion*, *Thebais*, &c.

Often it is long: as, *Lycæon*, *Machæon*, *Didymæon*; *Amphion*, *Arion*, *Ixion*, *Pandion*; *Nais*, *Lais*, *Achæia*; *Briséis*, *Cadméis*; *Latōis*; & *Latōis*, *Myrtōus*, *Nerēus*, *Priamēus*; *Achelōus*, *Minōus*; *Archelaus*, *Menelaus*, *Amphiaræus*, *Æneas*, *Penæus*, *Epæus*, *Acrisionæus*, *Adamantæus*, *Phæbæus*, *Gigantæus*; *Darius*, *Basirius*, *Eugenius*, *Bacchius*; *Cassiopæa*, *Cæsareæ*, *Chæronæa*, *Cytheræa*, *Galætea*, *Laodicæa*, *Medæa*, *Panthæa*, *Penelopæa*; *Clio*, *Enyo*, *Elegia*, *Iphigenia*, *Alexandria*, *Thalia*, *Antiochia*, *idololatria*, *litania*, *politia*, &c. *Læertes*, *Dêphobus*, *Dêjanira*, *Trões*, *herœs*, &c.

Sometimes it is common: as, *Chorea*, *platea*, *Malea*, *Nereides*, *canopeum*, *Orion*, *Geryon*, *Eos*, *Eous*, &c. So in foreign nouns, *Michael*, *Israel*, *Raphael*, *Abraham*, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphæa*, *Salmonæa*, *Capharæa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomenæa*, *Ilionæa*, *Virg.* Instead of *Elegia*, *Cytheræa*, we find *Elegia*, *Cytheræa*, *Ovid.* But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science*, *idea*.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long; (*by position, as it is called*;) as, *ârma*, *fâllo*, *âxis*, *gâza*, *mâjor*: the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijugus*, *quadrijugus*, &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by the position; as,

Ferte cili flammæ, date vela, scandite muros. Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as in the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebræ*, thus,

Et primò similis volûcri, mox vera volûcris. Ovid.

Nox tenêbras, profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenêbras. Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom; but *a* in *matris acris* is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salubris, ambulærum*, is always long, because they are derived from *salus, salûs*, and *ambulatum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as,

Nîl, for *nîhil*; *mî*, for *mîhi*; *côgo*, for *coâgo*; *alius*, for *aliûs*; *tibicen*, for *tibiûcen*; *êt*, for *ût*; *sôdes*, for *si audes*; *nôlo*, for *non volo*; *bigæ*, for *bijûgæ*; *scîlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, Cæsar, Eubæ, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus*; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præcunte carinâ. Virg.

Stipitibus durus agitur sudibusque præustis. Id.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

—————cum vacuus domino præiret Arion. Statius.

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. CONCERNING THE FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of Two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vêni, vîdi, vîci*.

Except *bîbi*, *scîdi* from *scindo*, *fîdi* from *findo*, *tûli*, *dêdi*, and *stêti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Visum, câsum, môtum*.

Except *sâtum*, from *sêro*; *cîtum*, from *cieo*; *litum*, from *lino*; *sîtum*, from *sîno*; *stâtum*, from *sisto*; *îtum*, from *eo*; *dâtum*, from *do*; *rûtum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quîtum*, from *queo*; *râtum*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the first syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable have both the first syllables short; as,

Cêcîdi, têtîgi, pêpûli, pêpêri, didîci, tûtûdi: except *cêcîdi*, from *cædo*; *pêpêdi*, from *pêdo*; and when two consonants intervene; as, *fêfelli, têtendi*, &c.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, régis*. Here *re* is called the *encrease* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itinêris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular ; as, *gener, genēri, genērōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another ; as, *fructus, fructūi; res, rei* ; which fall under Rule I.

Third Declension.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long ; *e*, *i*, and *u* short ; as,

Pietātis, honoris ; muliēris, lapīdis, murmuris.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive ; as, *dogma, -atis ; poema, -atis*.

O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis* ; as, *Cardo, -inis ; Virgo, -inis ; Anio, -enis ; Cicero, -ōnis*. Gentle or patril nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive ; as, *Macedo, -ōnis ; Saxo, -ōnis*. Some are long ; as, *Suessiones, Vettōnes*. *Brittones* is common.

I, C, D.

I shortens *itis* ; as, *Hydromēli, -itis*. Ec lengthens *-ecis* ; as, *Halec, -ecis*.

A noun in D shortens the crement ; as, *David, -idis*.

L.

Masculines in AL shorten *alis* ; as, *Sal, -alis ; Hannibal, -alis ; Hasdrubal, -alis* ; but neuters lengthen it ; as, *animal, -alis*.

Solis from *sol* is long ; also Hebrew words in *el* ; as, *Michael, -elis*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement ; as, *Vigil, -ilis ; consul, -ūlis*.

N.

Nouns in ON vary their crement. Some lengthen it ; as, *Helicon, -ōnis ; Chiron, -ōnis*. Some shorten it ; as, *Memnon, -enis ; Aëlaon, -enis*.

EN shortens *inis* ; as, *flumen, -inis ; tibicen, -inis*. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *anis* ; as, *Titan, -anis*. En *enis* ; as, *Siren, -enis*. In *inis* ; as, *delphin, -inis*. YN *ynis* ; as, *Phorcyn, -ynis*.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris* ; as, *calcar, -aris*. Except the following, *bacchar, -aris ; jubar, -aris ; nectar, -aris* : Also the adjective *par, -aris*, and its compounds, *impar, -aris ; dispar, -aris, &c.*

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive : *Nar, -aris*, the name of a river ; *fur, -uris ; ver, -eris* : Also *Recimer, -eris ; Byzer, -eris ; Ser, -eris ; Iber, -eris* ; proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris* ; as, *crater, -eris ; character, -eris*. Except *æther, -eris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris* ; as, *amor, -oris*. Except neuter nouns ; as, *marmor, -oris ; æquor, -oris* : Greek nouns in *tor* ; as, *Hector, -oris ; Actor, -oris ; rhetor, -oris* : Also, *arbor, -oris*, and *memor, -oris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive ; AR *aris*, masculine ; as, *Cæsar, -aris ; Hamilcar, -aris ; Iar, -aris*. ER *eris* of any gender ; as, *æter, -eris ; mulier, -eris ; cadaver, -eris ; iter, -eris*, anciently *itiner, -itineris ; verberis*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris* ; as, *vultur, -uris ; murmur, -uris*. YR *uris* ; as, *Martyr, -uris*.

AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement ; as, *pietas, -atis ; Mæneas, -atis*. Except *anas, -atis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement ; as Greek nouns having the genitive in *adis, -atis*, and *anis* ; thus, *Pallas, -adis ; artocreas, -edis ; Melas, -anis*, the name of a river. So *vas, -adis ; mas, -atis* : But *vas, -adis*, is long.

ES.

ES shortens the crement ; as, *miles, -ilis ; Ceres, -eris ; pes, -edis*.

Except *locuples, -etis ; quies, -etis ; mansues, -etis ; hæres, -edis ; merces, -edis*.

IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement ; as, *lapis, -idis ; sanguis, -inis ; Phyllis, -idis*.

Except *Glis, -gliris* ; and Latin nouns which have *itis* ; as, *lis, -litis ; dis, -ditis ; Quiris, -ilis ; Samnis, -ilis* : But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charitis*.

The following also lengthen the crement : *Crenis, -idis ; Psophis, -idis ; Nesis, -idis* ; proper names : And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in* ; as, *Salamis, or in, Salaminis*.

OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement ; as, *nepos, -otis ; flos, -floris*.

Except *Bos, -bovis ; compos, -otis* ; and *impos, -otis*.

US.

US shortens the crement ; as, *tempus, -oris ; tripus, -odis*.

M

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *āris*, and *ūtis*; as, *incus*, *-ūdis*; *jus*, *jāris*; *salsus*, *-ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Līgūris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, *-ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius*, *-ōris*.

YS.

YS shortens *ydis* or *ydos*; as, *chlamys*, *ydis* or *ydos*; and lengthens *ynis*; as, *Trachys*, *-ynis*.

BS, PS, MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *caelebs*, *-ibis*; *inops*, *-ōpis*; *hiems*, *hiemis*.

Except *Cyclops*, *-ōpis*; *seps*, *sepis*; *gryps*, *grypsis*; *Cecrops*, *-ōpis*; *plebs*, *plebis*; *hydrops*, *-ōpis*.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, *-itis*.

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux*, *-ūgis*; *remex*, *-igis*; *Allobrox*, *-ōgis*; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*, and *ex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, *-icis*; except *vibex*, *-icis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, *-icis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, *-ūcis*, &c.

Except *facis*, *necis*, *viciis*, *precis*, *calicis*, *cilicis*, *piciis*, *fornicis*, *necis*, *Cappadociis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crucis*, *trūcis*, *onychis*, *Erycis*, *mastyx*, *-ychis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or *mastich-tree*, and many others whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax*, *-ācis*, or *-ācis*; *Sandyx*, *-icis*, or *-icis*; *Bebryx*, *-ycis*, or *-ycis*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O* long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

musārum, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *rēgibus*, *portūbus*: except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *crement*; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third increase*.

X. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u*, short; as,

Amāre, *docēre*, *amātōte*; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēderunt* and *steterunt*; and lengthen *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as, *transieritis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS ON THE QUANTITY OF THE PENULT OF WORDS.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelides*, *Tydidēs*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis*, *Ptolemāis*, *Chryseis*, *Enēis*, *Memphitis*, *Lalōis*, *Icarīotis*, *Nerine*, *Ariōne*. Except *Thebāis*, and *Phocēis*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academicus*, *lepidus*, *legitimus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudicus*, *mendiculus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, (but *perfidus* of *per* and *fides*, is short,) *binus*, *quadrimus*, *poltrimus*, *matrimus*, *optimus*; and two superlatives, *imus*, *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *astivus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *vipipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS*, shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anilis*, *civilis*, *herilis*, &c. To these add *exilis*, *subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis*, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*: Except *humilis*, *parilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis*, are short; as, *versatilis*, *volatilis*, *umbratilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracinus*, *crocinus*, *cedrinus*, *faginus*, *oleaginus*, *adaman-tinus*, *crystalinus*, *crastinus*, *pristinus*, *perendinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agninus*, *austrius*, *binus*, *clandestinus*, *Latinus*, *marinus*, *supinus*, *resperstinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM*; and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus, filiola, museolum*; *lectulus, ratiuncula, corculum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim, viritum, tributum*. Except *affatim, perpetim, and statim*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second or third person is the penult; as, *esurio, esuris, esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio, liguris*; *scalurio, scaluris*, &c.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult: *Abdera, Abydos, Adonis, Æsopus, Ætolus, Ahala, Alaricus, Alcides, Amclæ, Andronicus, Anubis, Archimedes, Ariarathes, Ariobarzanes, Aristides, Aristobulus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabanus*; *Brachmanes, Busiris, Buthrotus*; *Cethægus, Chalcedon, Cleobulus, Cyrene, Cythæra, Curètes*; *Darici, Demonicus, Diomedes, Diôres, Dioscûri*; *Ebûdes, Eriphyle, Eubulus, Euclides, Euphrates, Eumêdes, Euripus, Euxinus*; *Garganus, Gætulus, Granicus*; *Heliogabûlus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippónax, Hispanus*; *Irène*; *Lacædas, Latôna, Leucata, Lugdunum, Lycôras*; *Mandane, Mausolus, Maximinus, Meleager, Messala, Mesasana, Milêtus*; *Nasica, Nicânor, Nicetas*; *Pachynus, Pandora, Pelôris & -us, Pharsalus, Phœnice, Polites, Polyclêtus, Polylices, Priapus*; *Sarpêdon, Serâpis, Sinope, Stratonice, Suffetes*; *Tigrânes, Thessalonica*; *Verôna, Veronica*.

The following are short: *Amâthus, Amphipolis, Anabosis, Anticyra, Antigonus, & -ne, Antilochus, Antiochus, Antiopa, Antipas, Antipater, Antiphânes, Antiphâtes, Antiphila, Antiphon, Anÿtus, Apûlus, Areopâgus, Ariminum, Arménus, Athésis, Attâlus, Attica*; *Bitûrix, Bructeri*; *Calâber, Calicrâtes, Callistratus, Candæa, Cantâber, Carneâdes, Cherilus, Chrysostomus, Cleombrôtus, Cleomènes, Corÿcos, Constantinópolis, Cratêrus, Cratylus, Creméra, Crustumêri, Cybêle, Cyclâdes, Cyzicus*; *Dalmâte, Damôcles, Dardânus, Dejoces, Deiotârus, Democritus, Demipho, Didymus, Diogènes, Drepanum, Dumnôrix*; *Empedocles, Ephesus, Evergetes, Eumènes, Eurymêdon, Euripylus*; *Fucinus*; *Geryônes, Gyârus*; *Hecyra, Heliopolis, Hermiône, Herodôtus, Hesiôdus, Hesione, Hippocrâtes, Hippotâmos, Hypâta, Hypânis*; *Icârus, Icetas, Illyris, Iphitus, Ismârus, Ithaca*; *Laodice, Laomêdon, Lampasacus, Lamyrus, Lapithæ, Leucættis, Libânus, Lipare, v. -a, Lysimachus, Longimânus*; *Marâthon, Mænâlus, Marmarica, Massagète, Matrôna, Megâra, Meltus, & -ta, Metropolis, Mutina, Myconus*; *Neôcles, Neritos, Noricum*; *Omphale*; *Patâra, Pegâsus, Pharnâces, Pistrâtus, Polydamas, Polyzæna, Porsëna, or Porsenna, Praxitêles, Puteoli, Pylâdes, Pythagoras, Sarmâtes, Sarsina, Semêle, Semirâmis, Sequâni, & -a, Seriphos, Sicôris, Socrâtes, Sodôma, Sotâdes, Spartacus, Sporâdes, Strongyle, Stymphâlus, Sybâris*; *Taygetus, Telegônus, Telemachus, Tenêdos, Tarraco, Theophânes, Theophilus, Tomyrus*; *Urbicus*; *Venetî, Vologêsus, Volusus*; *Xenocrâtes, Zoilus, Zopyrus*.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Balâri*, Lucan, *Balâvi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuitus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, Stat. *Patrimus, matrimus, prætolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

XI. *A*, in the end of a word declined by cases, is short; as, *Musâ, templâ, Tydeâ, lampadâ*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musâ, Ænêâ*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Ænêâ, O Pallâ*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amâ, frustrâ, prætereâ, ergâ, intrâ*.

Exc. *Itâ, quîâ, ejâ, postêâ, putâ*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrâ, ultrâ*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintâ*, &c. *Contra*, and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E*, in the end of a word, is short; as,

Natê, sedilê, patrê, currê, nempê, antê.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mê, tê, sê*; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quê, vê, nê*; and these syllabical adjectives, *ptê, cê, tê*; as, *suaptê, hujuscê, tutê*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliôpê, Anchisê, fidê*. So *rê*, and *diê*, with their compounds, *quarê, hodiê, pridê, postridiê, quotidîê*: Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetê, melê, Tempê*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docê, manê*; but *cave, vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidê, pulchrê, valdê*, contracted for *validê*; to these add *fermê, ferê, and ohê*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimê, fortissimê*: but *benê* and *malê* are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long ; as, *Dominī, patrī, docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short ; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common ; as, *Palladī, Minoidī*.

Mihī, tibi, sibi, are also common : so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi* ; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common ; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long ; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*. The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension, are long ; as, *librō, dominō* : also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns ; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō* ; likewise, *illō, idcirco, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short ; *Egō, sciō, cedō* a defective verb, *homō, citō, illucō, imō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō* : but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long ; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long ; *ergo*, therefore is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long ; *Y* final is short ; as, *Vultū, Molī*.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R, and T*, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

Ab, apūd, semēl, precōr, capūt.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nāl* ; *pār*, and its compounds, *impar, dispar*, &c. *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr* ; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive ; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*, likewise *aēr, æthēr* ; to which add Hebrew names ; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, David*.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short ; as, *Militū octo*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel ; thus, *Miliū octo* ; except in compound words ; as, *circimāgo, circimeo*.

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long ; as,

Ac, sic, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n* ; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamin, Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn, Lacedæmōn*, &c.

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc* ; *fōrsitān, in, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn* ; likewise nouns in *en* which have *inis* in the genitive ; as, *carmēn, crimēn* ; together with several Greek nouns ; as, *Ilion, Pylon, Alexin*.

The pronoun *hic*, and the verb *fac*, are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long ; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs*.

The following words are short, *anās, ēs* from *sum*, and *penēs* ; *ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs* ; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations ; as, *Arcūs* and *Arcādās, herōās* ; *Phrygēs* ; *Arcadōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short ; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs*. But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS, US, and YS*, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

Turrīs, legīs, legimūs, annūs, Capys.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long ; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnis* for

omnes, fructus, manus : also the genitive singular of the fourth declension ; as, *portus*. But *bus* in the dative and ablative plural is short ; as, *floribus, fructibus, rebus*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis, inis, or entis* ; as, *lis, Sannis, Salamis, Simois*. To these add the adverbs *gratis* and *foris* ; the noun *glis*, and *vis*, whether it be a noun or a verb ; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis* ; as, *audis, abis, possis*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long ; as, *grus, sus* : also nouns which in the genitive have *uris, udis, utis, untis, or odis* ; as, *tellus, incus, virtus, amathus, tripus*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ; as, *Chius, Sapphus, Mantus* ; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative ; as, *Panthus*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcys, Trachys*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

1. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

<i>Amicus,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>āmo.</i>	<i>Decoro,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>decus, -oris.</i>
<i>Auctionor,</i>		<i>auctio, -onis.</i>	<i>Exulo,</i>		<i>exul, -ulis.</i>
<i>Auctoro,</i>		<i>auctor, -oris.</i>	<i>Pavidus,</i>		<i>pāveo.</i>
<i>Auditor,</i>		<i>auditus.</i>	<i>Quirito,</i>		<i>Quiris, -itis.</i>
<i>Ausplicor,</i>		<i>auspex, -icis.</i>	<i>Radictus,</i>		<i>radix, -icis.</i>
<i>Cauponor,</i>		<i>caupo, -onis.</i>	<i>Sospito,</i>		<i>sospes, -itis.</i>
<i>Compēttor,</i>		<i>compētītum.</i>	<i>Natura,</i>		<i>nātus.</i>
<i>Cornicor,</i>		<i>cornix, -icis.</i>	<i>Māternus,</i>		<i>māter.</i>
<i>Custodio,</i>		<i>custos, -odis.</i>	<i>Lēgebam, &c.</i>		<i>lēgo.</i>
<i>Decōrus,</i>		<i>decor, -oris.</i>	<i>Lēgeram, &c.</i>		<i>lēgi.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from Short.

<i>Dēni,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>dēcem.</i>	<i>Suspicio, from</i>	<i>suspīcor.</i>	<i>Mōbilis, from</i>	<i>mōveo.</i>
<i>Fōmes,</i>		<i>fōveo.</i>	<i>Sēdes,</i>	<i>sēdeo.</i>	<i>Hūmor,</i>	<i>hūmus.</i>
<i>Hūmanus,</i>		<i>hōmo.</i>	<i>Sēcūs,</i>	<i>sēcus.</i>	<i>Jūmentum.</i>	<i>jūvo.</i>
<i>Rēgula,</i>		<i>rēgo.</i>	<i>Pēnuria.</i>	<i>pēnus.</i>	<i>Vox, vōcis.</i>	<i>vōco, &c.</i>

2. Short from Long.

<i>Arena and ārista,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>āreo.</i>	<i>Lūcerna,</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>lāceo.</i>
<i>Nōta and nōto,</i>		<i>nōtus.</i>	<i>Dux, ūcis,</i>		<i>dūco.</i>
<i>Vādum,</i>		<i>vādo.</i>	<i>Stābilis,</i>		<i>stābam.</i>
<i>Fides,</i>		<i>fido.</i>	<i>Ditio,</i>		<i>dis, ditis.</i>
<i>Sōpor,</i>		<i>sōpio</i>	<i>Quāsillus,</i>		<i>quālus, &c.</i>

2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

Dēdūco, of *dē*, and *dūco*. So *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūdīo*, *exūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *pragrāvo*, *prænāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *pragrāvīs*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*, *diffidit* from *diffīndo*, and *diffidit* from *diffīdo*, *indīco*, and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit*, in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect ; so, *exēdit* and *exēdit* ; *devēnit* and *devēnit* ; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus* ; *reperimus* and *reperimus* ; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity ; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo* ; *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo* ; *suffōco* from *sub* and *fauz*, *fauzīs* : unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule ; as, *ādmitto*, *pēcello*, *dēosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnītum*, *cognītum*, *dējēro*, *pejēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nihilum*, *semisōpītus* ; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio* : *ambītus*, a

participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambitus* and *ambitio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpina*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpāro*, *divello*: except *dirīmo*, *disertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmīto*, *rēfēro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trēcenti*, *nēfas*, *nēque*, *patēfacio*, &c. *Capricornus*, *omnipotens*, *agricōla*, *significo*, *biformis*, *aliger*, *Trīvia*, *tubicen*, &c. *Duōdēcim*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quidam*, *quīvis*, *tantidem*, *eidem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrifacio*, *siguis*, &c. *Idem* in the masculine, is long; in the neuter, short: also, *ubique*, *ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphāsīs*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [']; as, *prōfero*, *prōffer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [']; as, *doctē*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

The *circumflex* accent first raises and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is therefore placed only upon *long* syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^]; as, *amāre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as, in these adverbs, *aliquō*, *continuo*, *doctē*, *undē*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poetā*, *gloriā*, in the ablative: *fructūs*, *tumultūs*, in the genitive: *nostrām*, *vestrām*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergō*, on account of; *occidit*, he slew; *Pompiliū*, for *Pompilius*; *amāris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always turn back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two syllables.

<i>Spondēus</i> ,	consists of two long; as, <i>omnēs</i> .
<i>Pyrrhichius</i> ,	two short; as, <i>dēus</i> .
<i>Iambus</i> ,	a short and a long; as, <i>amāns</i> .
<i>Trochæus</i> ,	a long and a short; as, <i>servūs</i> .

2. Feet of three syllables.

<i>Dactylus</i> ,	a long and two short; as, <i>scribēre</i> .
<i>Anapaestus</i> ,	two short and a long; as, <i>pietās</i> .
<i>Amphimæcer</i> ,	a long, a short, and a long; as, <i>charitās</i> .
<i>Tribrachys</i> ,	three short; as, <i>dōminūs</i> .

The following are not so much used :

Molossus,	<i>delectant.</i>
Amphibrachys,	<i>honorē.</i>
Bacchius,	<i>dolōrēs.</i>
Antibacchius,	<i>pelluntur.</i>

3. Feet of four syllables.

Proceleusmaticus,	<i>hominibus.</i>
Dispondeus,	<i>oratorēs.</i>
Dijambus,	<i>amantibus.</i>
Choriambus,	<i>pontifices.</i>
Ditrocheus,	<i>cantilēd.</i>

Antispastus,	<i>Alexander.</i>
Ionicus major,	<i>calcantibus.</i>
Ionicus minor,	<i>properebant.</i>
Pæon primus,	<i>temporibus.</i>
Pæon secundus,	<i>polemibus.</i>
Pæon tertius,	<i>animabus.</i>
Pæon quartus,	<i>celeribus.</i>
Epitritus primus,	<i>volutantes.</i>
Epitritus secundus,	<i>penitentes.</i>
Epitritus tertius,	<i>discordibus.</i>
Epitritus quartus,	<i>fortunatibus.</i>

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus*, or *Acatalecticus*, an *Acatalectic verse* : if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus* : if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermetre*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio*, or *Clausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or Heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee ; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees ; as,

Lūdērē | quæ vël- | lēm cālā- | mō pēr- | misit ā- | grēsti. *Virg.*
Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnā, jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic* : as,

Cārā Dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jōvis | incrē- | mētām. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it : so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel ; as,

Omnā | Mērcūrī- | ō sīmī- | lis vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque
Et flavos crines — *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately ; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
Pinguis et ingratus premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees ; as,

Tityre tu patula recubans sub tegmine fagi. *Id.*

It is esteemed a great beauty in a Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense ; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*
Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse, is the *CÆSURA*.

Cæsura is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable, at the end of a word to begin a new foot ; as,

At rē-ginā grā-vi jā-m-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimeris* : when on the fifth half-foot or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimeris* : when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimeris* : and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennehemimeris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse ; as,

Illē lā-tūs nīvē-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hŷā-cinthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading a hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause* : as,

Tityre dum rede- O, brevis est via, pascere capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long ; as, the last syllable of *fullus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition

of the *Cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rómæ mœnâ térrûit împigêr Hännibâl ârmis. *Ennius*.

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth an anapæstus; as,

Nâtû- | ræ sêquî- | tûr sê- | mînâ quis- | quê sũæ. *Propert*.
Cârminî- | bûs vi- | vês tēm- | pûs in òm- | nê mēis. *Ovid*.

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsura; thus,

Nâtû- | ræ sêquî- | tûr | sēmînâ | quîsquê sũ- | æ.
Cârminî- | bûs vi- | vês | tēpûs in | òmnē mē- | is.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadæan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mœcê- | nâs âtâvis | êdîtê rê- | gîbûs. *Hor*.

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: in the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mœce- | nas ata- | vis | editæ | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nâvis | quæ tibi crê- | dîtum. *Horat*.

Or, it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet; viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intê- | gér vi- | tæ, scêlê- | risquê | pûrûs. *Horat*.

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Jûptêr | ûrgêr. *Horat*.

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nigris | æquôrâ | vëntis. *Horat*.

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet; namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sûmmâm | nêc mêtû- | âs dî- | êm, nêc | òptês. *Martial*.

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The Greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles; as,

Virtûs | rêpûl- | sæ | nêscîâ | sórdidæ. *Horat*.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian Iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsura; as,

Nêc sũ- | mît, aut | pônît | sêcũ- | rês. *Horat*.

10. The LESSER ALCAIC.

The Lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet; namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbitrî- | ò pöpû- | lârîs | aûræ. *Horat*.

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most

commonly measured, such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapæstic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimeter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, i. e. admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inâr- | sît æ- | stûô- | sûis. *Horat.*

Trimeter, Sûis | èt i- | psâ Rô- | mâ vi- | ribûs | rûit. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, i. e. in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cânldî | â trâ- | ctâvit | dâpês. *Horat.*

Vidê- | rê propê- | rântês | dômûm. *Id.*

Trimeter, Quôqu' | scêlê- | stî rûl- | tis aut | cûr dèx- | têris. *Id.*

Pâvdûm- | què lèpô- | r' aut âd- | vènâm | lâquêô | grûem. *Id.*

Altî- | bûs ât- | què càn | bûs hòml- | cid' Hê- | ctorem.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Oclonarius*.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalepha*, *Echthipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Dieresis*, *Systole*, and *Diastrôle*.

1. **SYNALEPHA** is the cutting off a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Côntictî- | êr' ôm- | nês in- | tēnti | qu' ôrâ tē- | nēbant.

The *Synalepha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celeno. *Virg.*

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt? *Id.*

Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Illo alto.

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.

Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. **ECTHLIPSIS** is when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum? O quantum, est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cû- | râs hòml- | n', ô quân- | t' êst in | rêbûs in- | ânê.

Sometimes the *Synalepha* and *Echthipsis*, are found at the end of a verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cælumque

Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*

Jamque iter emensi, turre ac tecta Latinorum

Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. **SYNÆRESIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phaethon*. So, *Êi* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *dèinde*, *Pompei*; *ti*, in *huic*, *cui*; *ti*, in *proinde*; *ed*, in *aurêd*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*

Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi. *Virg.*

Filius huic contrâ, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*

Aurêa percussus virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antichæ*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *antici*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimi*, *semihomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eodémque vid sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*

Seu lento fuerunt alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*

Villis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*

Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*

Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*

Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor.*

Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refuit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*

Inde ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*

Bis patriæ cecidere manus : quin protinus omnia. *Id*
 Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*
 Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*
 Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
 Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
 Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel ; as in *genva*, *tenvis*, *arjetat*, *tenvia*, *abjete*, *pitvia*, *parjetibus*, *Nasidjenus* ; for *genus*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Præpterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Lucr.*
 Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
 Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. *Id.*
 Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*
 Edificant, tectâque intexunt abjete cõstas. *Id.*
 Præcipue sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
 Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
 Ut Nasidjeni jûvit te cœna beati. *Hor.*

4. **DIERESIS** divides one syllable into two ; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ* ; *Troia*, for *Trojæ* ; *Perseus*, for *Perseus* ; *milvus*, for *milvus* ; *soltui*, for *solvit* ; *voluit*, for *voluit* ; *aquæ*, *suetus*, *suavis*, *suevos*, *relanguit*, *reliquas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c. as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
 Stamina non ulli dissolvienda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
 Debuerant fusos evolvisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque stetæ. *Horat.*
 Atque alios alii iridant, Veneremque student. *Lucr.*
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Suevos. *Lucan.*
 Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore. *Ovid.*
 Reliquas tamen ease vias in mente patentes. *Lucr.*

5. **SYSTOLE** is when a long syllable is made short ; as the penult in *tulerunt* ; thus, *Matri longa decem tulerunt fastidia menses. Virg.*

6. **DIASTOLE** is when a syllable usually short is made long ; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse ;

Considant, si tantus amor, et mœnia condant. *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called **PROSTHESIS** ; as, *gnarus* for *navus* ; *tetuli* for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called **EPISTHESIS** ; as, *reliigio*, for *religio* ; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called **PARAGOGÊ** ; as, *dicier* for *dicier*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called **APHÆRESIS** ; as, *natus* for *gnatus* ; *tenderant* for *telenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called **SYNCOPE** ; as, *dixi* for *dixisti* ; *deum*, for *deorum*. If from the end, **APOCOPÊ** ; as, *viden* for *videme* ; *Antoni* for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called **METATHESIS** ; as, *pistris* for *pristis* ; *Lybia* for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called **ANTITHESIS** ; as, *faciundum* for *faciendum*, *olli* for *illi* ; *voltis* for *vultis*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Poema*, or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an **EPITHALAMIUM** ; on a mournful subject, an **ELEGY** or **LAMENTATION** ; in praise of the Supreme Being, a **HYMN** ; in praise of any person or thing, a **PANEGYRIC** or **ENCOMIUM** ; on the vices of any one, a **SATIRE** or **INVECTIVE** ; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an **EPITAPH**, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an **ODE**, whence such compositions are called *Lyric Poems* ; a poem in the form of a letter is called an **EPISTLE** ; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an **EPIGRAM** ; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an **EMBLEM**. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an **ÆNIGMA** or **RIDDLE**.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an **ACROSTIC** as the following on our Saviour :

I nter cuncta micans I gniti vera cæl I,
 E xpellit tenebras E toto Phœbus ut orb E ;
 S ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,
 V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V
 S olem justitiæ, S e se probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical Didactic or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle,) and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral Poems* or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles, in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy, in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man, in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds; the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse; Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name MONOCOLON, sc. *poema*, v. *carmen*; or MONOCÓLOS, sc. *ode*: that which has two kinds, DICOLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICOLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICOLON DISTRÓPHON; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after a HEXAMETER, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (carmen Elegiæcum,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos Elegiæ solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also, for the most part, by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristróphon*: when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetrastróphon*: as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidiâ
Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristróphon*: but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetrastróphon*: as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cælum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Sperrait humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE IN HORACE AND BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See N° 3. p. 208. Hor. I. 1. III. 30. IV. 8.—Buch. Ps. 28. 40. 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus: Hor. I. 11. 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25. 94. 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1. 18. 45. 78. 85. 89. 104. 107. 132. 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11.—Buch. Ps. 13. 31. 37. 47. 52. 54. 59. 86. 96. 98. 117. 148. 149. 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Ps. 26. 29. 32. 49. 61. 71. 73. 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyle, and anapestus.—Buch. Ps. 105. 119. 124. 129.

8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyle; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimæcer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadæan*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3. 13. 19. 36. III. 9. 15. 19. 24. 25. 28. IV. 1. 3.—Buch. Ps. 14. 35. 43.

2. Every first line, (*Dactylico-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of a hexameter verse

then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second-verse, (*Iambic Archilochian*,) consisting of an iambic or spondeeus, an iambus, a cæsura, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line, *Hexameter* ; and the second, *Alemanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of a hexameter. Hor. I. 7. 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Ps. 4. 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer : every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epiritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, *Trochaic*, consisting of three trochees, and a cæsura ; or of an amphimacer, and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second, *Dactylic Archilochian*, two dactyles and a cæsura, Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Ps. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter* ; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter* ; N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Ps. 3. 6. 10. 21. 22. 27. 34. 38. 39. 41. 44. 48. 53. 62. 74. 76. 79. 87. 92. 110. 112. 115. 120. 127. 133. 134. 139. 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter* ; the second *Sapphic*, consists of two dactyles, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondee, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts ; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, N° 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, N° 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 81.

10. *Hexameter and Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16.—Buch. Ps. 2. 20. 24. 57. 60. 69. 83. 93. 95. 97. 108. 109. 118. 126. 136. 147.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, N° 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Ps. 8.

12. *Sapphic and Glyconian*. Buch. Ps. 33. 70. 121. 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter and Pentameter*. Buch. Ps. 36. 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter* ; and the second line, the three last feet of a hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Ps. 68.

15. *Hexameter and Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Ps. 88. 114. 137.

16. The first line, *Trochaic*, three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*. N° 11. Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic* ; and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2. 10. 12. 20. 22. 25. 30. 32. 38. II. 2. 4. 6. 8. 10. 16. III. 8. 11. 14. 18. 20. 22. 27. IV. 2. 6. 11. *Carmen Secul.* Buch. Ps. 5. 17. 51. 55. 65. 67. 72. 90. 101. 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6. 15. 24. 33. II. 12. III. 10. 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23. 42. 75. 99. 102. 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores* ; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyle, &c. The third line, the same ; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, N° 4, admitting also a spondee, or iambus, in the first foot ; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Ps. 116. 122. 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, N° 3, the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6, and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5. 14. 21. 23. III. 7. 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9. 64. 84. 130.

2. The two lines, the *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, the *Lesser Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9. 16. 17. 26. 27. 29. 31. 34. 35. 37. II. 1. 3. 5. 7. 9. 11. 13. 14. 15. 17. 19. 20. III. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 17. 21. 23. 26. 29. IV. 4. 9. 14. 15.—Buch. Ps. 7. 11. 15. 19. 30. 46. 50. 56. 58. 77. 82. 91. 123. 125. 140. 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian* ; the second, *Asclepiadæan* ; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter* ; the second, *Iambic Dimeter* ; and the third, two dactyles and a syllable ; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted ; as, Buch. Ps. 145

APPENDIX.

Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Months.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part or subdivision of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* (.). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other marks made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (""); *Crotchets* []; *Brace* ({}); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (^); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripsi*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem Plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*; A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinae Doctor*; L. L. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Coisules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Imp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratia*; v. g. *verbi gratia*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The Letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

A thousand is marked thus, *C*, which in later times was contracted into *M*. Five hundred is marked thus, *D*, or by contraction, *h*.

The annexing of *c* to *D* makes its value ten times greater; thus, *DC* marks five thousand; and *DCCC*, fifty thousand.

The prefixing of *c*, together with the annexing of *D*, to the number of *C*, makes its value ten times greater; thus, *CCDC* denotes ten thousand; and *CCCCDC* a hundred thousand. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number they did it by repetition; thus, *CCCCDC*, *CCCCDC*, signified two hundred thousand, &c.

We sometimes find thousands expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, *III* denotes three thousand; *x*, ten thousand.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or figures, which from the ten fingers of the hands were called *Digits*; 1 one, 2 two, 3 three, 4 four, 5 five, 6 six, 7 seven, 8 eight, 9 nine, 0 nought, nothing. The first nine are called *Significant figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed one after another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand. 2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; *CDC, DCCCXIII*, or *M, DCCCXIII*, 1822.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months in three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis*, or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the *ides*, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *ides*, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the *nones*, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: the day before the *nones*, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*: and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMque, NOVEMque tricenos;

Unum plus reliqui: FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;

At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.

Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas,

Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,

Quatuor at reliqui: dabit idus quilibet octo.

Omnes post idus lucis dic esse kalendas,

Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of *February*, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

FINIS.

7

